INTRODUCTION TO GEOGRAPHY

Dr. Muralidhar. L. B.
Prof. Rita Arora

ALEXIS PRESS
JERSEY CITY, USA

INTRODUCTION TO GEOGRAPHY

INTRODUCTION TO GEOGRAPHY

Dr. Muralidhar. L. B.
Prof. Rita Arora

ALEXIS PRESS

ALEXIS PRESS

Published by: Alexis Press, LLC, Jersey City, USA
www.alexispress.us

First Published 2022

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication Data

Includes bibliographical references and index.

Introduction to Geography by *Dr. Muralidhar. L. B., Prof. Rita Arora*

ISBN 978-1-64532-853-7

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1

A BRIEF INTRODUCTION TO THE GEOGRAPHY

Dr. Muralidhar. L.B., Assistant Professor,
School of Commerce, Jain Deemed to be University, Bangalore, India,
Email Id- lb.muralidhar@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Geography is the study of diverse people in various parts of the world, including their occupations such as agriculture, mining, trade, fishing, manufacturing, building, and so on. Geography is also concerned with the many peoples of the globe, their jobs, customs, methods of wearing, religion, and so on. Furthermore, Geography is the study of physical objects on Earth, such as rocks, mountains, plains, valleys, rivers, seas, weather, rainfall, soils, vegetation, and so on.

KEYWORDS:

Human Geography, Physical Geography, Rule Geography, Space-Time, Technical Geography.

INTRODUCTION

Geography (from Greek: geographia. Combination of Greek words 'Geo' (The Earth) and 'Graphien' (to describe), literally "earth description") is a field of science devoted to the study of the lands, features, inhabitants, and phenomena of Earth. The first recorded use of the word was as the title of a book by Greek scholar Eratosthenes (276-194 BC). While geography is specific to Earth, many concepts in the field of planetary science can be applied more broadly to other celestial bodies. One such concept, proposed by Waldo Tobler, is "everything is related to everything else, but near things are more related than distant things." Geography has been called "the world discipline" and "the bridge between the human and the physical sciences."

Geography is the systematic study of the Earth's characteristics and the things that occur on it. To be considered geographical, anything must include some form of spatial component that can be plotted on a map, such as coordinates, place names, or addresses. As a result, geography has been intertwined with cartography and place names. Although many geographers are educated in toponymy and cartography, this is not their primary interest. Geographers investigate the spatial and temporal distribution of phenomena, processes, and features on Earth, as well as the interaction of humans with their environment[1]–[3].

Because space and place affect a wide range of topics, including economics, health, climate, plants, and animals, geography is highly interdisciplinary. The geographical approach's interdisciplinary nature is dependent on an attention to the relationship between physical and human phenomena and their spatial patterns. Geography is specific to the planet Earth, and other celestial bodies are specified, such as "geography of Mars," or given another name, such as areography in the case of Mars. Geography has loftier goals: it seeks to classify phenomena (both natural and political, insofar as it deals with the latter), to compare, generalize, and ascend from effects to causes, in order to trace out natural laws and their influences on man. Geography is defined as "a description of the world." In a nutshell, geography is a science a thing of argument and reason, of cause and consequence.

1863 William Hughes

Geography as a discipline can be divided into three major branches: human geography, physical geography, and technical geography. Human geography focuses on the built environment and how humans create, view, manage, and influence space. Physical geography investigates the natural environment and how organisms, climate, soil, water, and landforms produce and interact. For anything to exist in the world of geography, it must be able to be characterized spatially. As a result, space is the most fundamental idea at the basis of geography. The concept is so essential that geographers sometimes struggle to define precisely what it is. Absolute space is the precise location, or spatial coordinates, of items, people, locations, or phenomena under investigation. We exist in space. Absolute space leads to a photograph-like vision of the world, with everything fixed in place the moment the coordinates were recorded. Geographers are now instructed to remember that the world is not a static picture on a map, but rather a dynamic realm in which all activities interact and take place (Figure.1).

Place

In human geography, place is the synthesis of the coordinates on the Earth's surface, the activity and use that occurs, has occurred, and will occur at the coordinates, and the meaning ascribed to the space by human individuals and groups. A place in physical geography includes all of the physical phenomena that occur in space, including the lithosphere, atmosphere, hydrosphere, and biosphere. Places do not exist in a vacuum and instead have complex spatial relationships with each other, and place is concerned with how a location is situated in relation to all other locations.

Figure 1: Physical map of the earth: Diagram showing the Physical map of the earth.

Time

A space-time cube is a three-axis graph in which one axis represents time and the other two axes indicate spatial dimensions. Space-time cube, route, prism, bundle, and other notions are examples of time geography visual language. Time is commonly thought to be the domain of history, but it is of significant concern in the discipline of geography. In physics, space and time are not separated, but are combined into the concept of spacetime. Geography is subject to the laws of physics, and time must be considered when studying things that occur in space. Time in geography is more than just the historical record of events that occurred at various discrete coordinates; it also includes modeling the dynamic movement of people, organisms, and things through space. The amount of time an individual, or group of people, spends in a place will often shape their attachment and perspective to that place.

Scale

A bar or graphical scale. A map's scale is commonly shown mathematically ("1:50,000" signifies that one centimeter on the map represents 50,000cm of actual space, which is 500 meters). In the context of a map, scale is the ratio between a distance measured on the map and the corresponding distance measured on the ground this concept is fundamental to the discipline of geography, not just cartography, in that phenomena under investigation appear differently depending on the scale used (Figure.2). Scale is the frame that geographers use to measure space, and ultimately to try and understand a place.

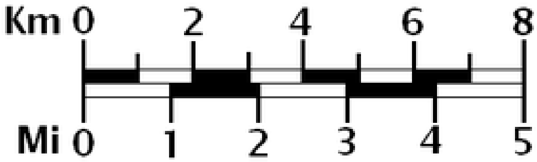

Figure 2: Bar scale: Diagram showing the bar scale.

Geography laws

In general, some criticize the whole notion of laws in geography and the social sciences. Tobler and others have addressed these issues, but this is a continuous topic of controversy in geography and is unlikely to be resolved anytime soon. Several laws have been presented, with Tobler's first law of geography being the most widely acknowledged. Some contend that geographic laws should not be numbered. The presence of a first encourages the possibility of a second, and many have pitched themselves as such. It has also been suggested that Tobler's first rule of geography be shifted to the second and replaced by another. "Everything is related to everything else, but near things are more related than distant things," according to Tobler's first rule of geography.

Tobler's second rule of geography states that "the phenomenon external to a geographical area of interest affects what goes on inside." "Everything is related to everything else," says Arbia's rule of geography, "but things observed at a coarse spatial resolution are more related than things observed at a finer resolution."The uncertainty principle states that "the geographic world is infinitely complex, and thus any representation must contain elements of uncertainty, that many definitions used in acquiring geographic data contain elements of vagueness, and that it is impossible to precisely measure location on the Earth's surface[4], [5]."

Sub-disciplines

Geography is a field of science concerned with geographic information on Earth. It is an extremely broad topic that can be broken down multiple way. There have been several approaches to doing this spanning at least several centuries, including "four traditions of geography" and into distinct branches. The Four traditions of geography are often used to divide the different historical approaches theories geographers have taken to the discipline.

Four geographical traditions

Geography is a rather vast subject. As a result, many people see the numerous definitions of geography presented throughout the years as insufficient. To address this, William D. Pattison proposed the concept of the "Four Traditions of Geography" in 1964. These traditions are the Spatial or Locational Tradition, the Man-Land or Human-Environment Interaction Tradition, the Area Studies or Regional Tradition, and the Earth Science Tradition. They are one of the ways geographers categorize key collections of ideas and ideologies within the subject.

The spatial or locational tradition is focused with using quantitative techniques to characterize the geographic qualities of a location. The spatial tradition tries to analyze and explain a site or phenomenon by using its spatial properties. Historically, cartographers contributed to this legacy, but it today includes technical geography and geographic information science.The area studies or regional tradition is concerned with the description of the unique characteristics of the earth's surface, which result in each area from the combination of its complete natural or elements, such as physical and human environment. Regionalization is also addressed, which provides the right strategies for delimiting space into regions.

The Human Environment Interaction tradition (originally the Man-Land tradition), also known as Integrated geography, is concerned with the description of spatial interactions between humans and the natural world. Because of the growing specialization of the two sub-fields, or branches, integrated geography has evolved as a bridge between human and physical geography. The Earth science tradition is primarily concerned with physical geography. The tradition focuses on comprehending the spatial aspects of natural events. Some believe that the Earth scientific tradition is a subset of the spatial tradition, yet the two are sufficiently distinct in their emphasis and purposes to merit distinction.

Within the traditions mentioned above, geography is divided into applied branches. The UNESCO Encyclopedia of Life Support Systems divides geography into three categories: human geography, physical geography, and technical geography. Some publications limit the number of branches to physical and human, describing them as the principal branches. Individuals outside the subject often ask geographers to define what they do, and they are prone to identify strongly with a single branch, or sub-branch, when identifying themselves to lay people. Human geography is concerned with the study of people and their communities, cultures, economies, and environmental interactions in relation to and across space and place. Physical geography is concerned with the study of processes and patterns in the natural environment such as the atmosphere, hydrosphere, biosphere, and geosphere. Technical geography is concerned with the study of techniques and methods for storing, processing, analyzing, visualizing, and using spatial data. These branches use comparable geographic theories, concepts, and methods, and their applications often overlap considerably.

Physical geography (or physiography) is an Earth science that focuses on the physical difficulties and challenges of the lithosphere, hydrosphere, atmosphere, pedosphere, and worldwide flora and fauna patterns (biosphere). Physical geography is the study of the earth's seasons, climate, atmosphere, soil, streams, landforms, and oceans.Physical geographers are often involved in the identification and monitoring of natural resources.

DISCUSSION

Technical geography is concerned with the study and development of tools, procedures, and statistical approaches used to acquire, analyze, utilize, and comprehend geographical data. Technical geography is the most modern and contentious of the fields. Its usage goes back to 1749, when Edward Cave's book divided the subject into a division covering topics such as cartography procedures and globes. Other terminology that are sometimes used interchangeably with technical geography to classify the subject include "techniques of geographic analysis," "techniques of spatial analysis," and "techniques of spatial analysis." "Geographic Information Technology," "Geography Methods and Techniques," "Geographic Information Science," and “geoinformatics," "geomatics," and "information geography."

Each concept and term has subtle differences; however, technical geography is one of the broadest, is consistent with the naming convention of the other two branches, has been in use since the 1700s, and has been used to divide geography into themes by the UNESCO Encyclopedia of Life Support Systems. Technical geography has arisen as a discipline of geography concentrating in geographic techniques and philosophy as academic subjects increasingly specialize in their nature. By providing a set of distinctive tools for managing the multidisciplinary character of the phenomena under examination, the birth of technical geography has given fresh importance to the wide subject of geography.

While human and physical geographers utilize technical geographers' methodologies, technical geography is more concerned with underlying geographical ideas and technology than the nature of the data. As a result, it is intimately related to the spatial heritage of geography while also being applied to the other two main areas. A technical geographer may work as a GIS analyst, a GIS developer who creates new software tools, or a general reference map creator who incorporates human and natural characteristics[6]–[8].

Because the notion of geography is present in all civilizations, the discipline's history is a succession of conflicting narratives, with conceptions arising at different periods throughout space and time. The earliest known globe maps come from the 9th century BC in ancient Babylon. The best-known Babylonian globe map, however, is the 600 BC Imago Mundi. The map, as rebuilt by Eckhard Unger, depicts Babylon on the Euphrates, surrounded by a circular landmass including Assyria, Urartu, and many towns, which is bordered in turn by a "bitter river" (Oceanus), with seven islands grouped around it to create a seven-pointed star. Seven distant locations beyond the surrounding ocean are mentioned in the preceding text. Five of their descriptions have survived. Unlike the Imago Mundi, an older Babylonian globe map from the 9th century BC represented Babylon as being farther north from the earth's center, however it is unclear what that center was meant to symbolize.

Anaximander's (c. 610-545 BC) theories, believed by subsequent Greek authors to be the genuine creator of geography, are passed down to us via fragments referenced by his predecessors. Anaximander is credited with inventing the gnomon, a basic but effective Greek tool that enabled early latitude measuring. Thales is also credited for forecasting eclipses. Geography's origins may be traced back to ancient civilizations such as ancient, medieval, and early modern Chinese. The Greeks were the first to investigate geography as both an art and a science, and they did it via cartography, philosophy, literature, and mathematics. There is significant disagreement about who was the first to state that the Earth is spherical in form, with either Parmenides or Pythagoras receiving credit. Anaxagoras was able to illustrate the circularity of the Earth's profile by explaining eclipses. However, he, like many of his contemporaries, continued to assume that the Earth was a flat disk. Eratosthenes provided one of the earliest estimations of the radius of the Earth.

Hipparchus is credited with developing the first rigorous system of latitude and longitude lines. He made use of a sexagesimal system borrowed from Babylonian mathematics. The meridians were split into 360° segments, with each segment subdivided into 60 (minutes). He proposed utilizing eclipses to estimate the relative difference in time to measure longitude at various points on Earth. The vast charting done by the Romans as they explored new countries will eventually give Ptolemy with a wealth of information on which to build thorough atlases. He expanded Hipparchus' work by utilizing a grid system on his maps and a length of 56.5 miles for a degree.Chinese techniques of geographical research and creating geographical literature developed much more thorough than those available in Europe at the period (until the 13th century). Although Chinese geographers such as Liu An, Pei Xiu, Jia Dan, Shen Kuo, Fan Chengda, Zhou Daguan, and Xu Xiake authored major treatises, advanced concepts and techniques of Western-style geography were adopted in China by the 17th century.

The collapse of the Roman Empire during the middle Ages caused a change in the development of geography from Europe to the Islamic world. Muslim geographers like Muhammad al-Idrisi created extensive globe maps (such as the Tabula Rogeriana), while other geographers like Yaqut al-Hamawi, Abu Rayhan Biruni, Ibn Battuta, and Ibn Khaldun published thorough descriptions of their trips and the topography of the places they visited. Mahmud al-Kashgari, a Turkish geographer, created a linguistic globe map, and Piri Reis followed suit (Piri Reis map). Furthermore, Islamic scholars translated and interpreted the older works of the Romans and Greeks, and the House of Wisdom in Baghdad was built for this purpose. Ab Zayd al-Balkh, who was born in Balkh, established the "Balkh school" of terrestrial mapping in Baghdad. Suhrb, a late-tenth-century Muslim geographer, provided directions for creating a rectangle globe map with equirectangular projection or cylindrical equidistant projection using a book of geographical data.

Abu Rayhan Biruni (976-1048) was the first to characterize the celestial sphere as a polar equi-azimuthal equidistant projection. He was widely recognized as the most adept at charting cities and calculating distances between them, which he accomplished for numerous towns in the Middle East and the Indian subcontinent. He often used astronomical measurements and mathematical calculations to create ways for determining position by recording degrees of latitude and longitude. He also created comparable procedures for measuring the heights of mountains, valley depths, and horizon extent.

He also spoke on human geography and the Earth's planetary habitability. He also used the highest height of the Sun to determine the latitude of Kath, Khwarezm, and solved a complicated geodesic equation to precisely predict the Earth's circumference, which was near to present estimates. His estimate for the Earth radius of 6,339.9 km was just 16.8 km less than the present number of 6,356.7 km. Unlike his predecessors, who measured the Earth's circumference by simultaneously sighting the Sun from two different locations, al-Biruni devised a new method based on trigonometric calculations based on the angle between a plain and a mountain top, which yielded more accurate measurements of the Earth's circumference and allowed it to be measured by a single person from a single location.

During the 16th and 17th centuries, many new lands were discovered, and accounts by European explorers such as Christopher Columbus, Marco Polo, and James Cook rekindled a desire in Europe for both accurate geographic detail and more solid theoretical foundations. Finding the latitude and longitude of a geographic site was an issue for both explorers and geographers. The issue of latitude was long addressed, but the problem of longitude remained; agreeing on zero meridians was just half of the solution. It was left to John Harrison to address the problem in 1760 by creating the chronometer H-4, and subsequently in 1884 for the International Meridian Conference to establish the Greenwich meridian as the zero meridians by consensus.

Geography became acknowledged as a distinct academic field in the 18th and 19th centuries, and it formed part of a normal university curriculum in Europe (particularly in Paris and Berlin). Many geographic societies were founded during the nineteenth century, including the Société de Géographie in 1821, the Royal Geographical Society in 1830, the Russian Geographical Society in 1845, the American Geographical Society in 1851, and the National Geographic Society in 1888. Immanuel Kant, Alexander von Humboldt, Carl Ritter, and Paul Vidal de la Blache's impact may be considered a crucial turning point in the evolution of geography from philosophy to an academic topic[9], [10].

Over the last two centuries, technological advances with computers have resulted in the creation of geomatics and the incorporation of new approaches such as participant observation and geostatistics into geography's toolbox. The field of geography in the Western world went through four important stages throughout the twentieth century: environmental determinism, regional geography, the quantitative revolution, and critical geography. Strong interdisciplinary ties have also emerged between geography and the disciplines of geology and botany, as well as economics, sociology, and demography, particularly as a consequence of earth system science, which tries to comprehend the world holistically. The fast growth of computers, quantitative tools, and multidisciplinary approaches has resulted in the emergence of new notions and ideologies. Waldo Tobler presented the first geography law in 1970, stating that "everything is related to everything else, but near things are more related than distant things." This rule outlines geographers' initial assumptions about the world.

CONCLUSION

Geography is the study of locations as well as the interactions between people and their surroundings. Geographers study both the physical qualities of the Earth's surface and the human cultures that inhabit it. The significance of geography is related to a wide variety of domains since geography is the study of a wide range of disciplines. It is not only the study of physical geography, but also of culture, society, history, economy, and commerce, to mention a few.Geography enables us to investigate and comprehend space and place by recognizing and investigating the vast diversity in cultures, political systems, economics, landscapes, and ecosystems throughout the globe.It is concerned with the study of the earth's size, shape, and movement, as well as the landmass, bodies of water, temperature, flora, and events in various parts of the planet. It also takes into account the geographical distribution of animal and natural resources, as well as human activity.

REFERENCES

[1] R. Khanal, "Linguistic Geography of Nepalese Languages," *Third Pole J. Geogr. Educ.*, 2019, doi: 10.3126/ttp.v18i0.27994.

[2] S. Cook, "Geographies of mobility: a brief introduction," *Geography*, 2018, doi: 10.1080/00167487.2018.12094050.

[3] P. Bovet, J. Gédéon, M. Louange, P. Durasnel, P. Aubry, and B.-A. Gaüzère, "Health situation and issues in the Seychelles in 2012," *Med. Sante Trop.*, 2019, doi: 10.1684/mst.2013.0222.

[4] J. Aronson, "Desert plants of use and charm from northen Chile," *Desert Plants*, 1990.

[5] D. Simandan, "Distance," in *International Encyclopedia of Human Geography, Second Edition*, 2019. doi: 10.1016/B978-0-08-102295-5.10723-1.

[6] Y. H. Kim and N. K. Jo, "Community-based rehabilitation in South Korea," *Disability and Rehabilitation*. 1999. doi: 10.1080/096382899297297.

[7] D. Ley, "Cultural/humanistic geography," *Prog. Phys. Geogr. Earth Environ.*, 1985, doi: 10.1177/030913338500900306.

[8] D. Willmott, D. Hunt, and D. Mojtahedi, "Criminal Geography and Geographical Profiling within Police Investigations-A Brief Introduction," *Internet J. Criminol.*, 2021.

[9] P. Noxolo, "Introduction: Decolonising geographical knowledge in a colonised and re-colonising postcolonial world," *Area*, 2017, doi: 10.1111/area.12370.

[10] J. J. Ferreira, E. G. Carayannis, D. F. J. Campbell, L. Farinha, H. L. Smith, and S. Bagchi-Sen, "Geography & Entrepreneurship: Managing Growth and Change," *J. Knowl. Econ.*, 2018, doi: 10.1007/s13132-017-0514-9.

CHAPTER 2

A BRIEF DISCUSSION ON THE HISTORIES OF GEOGRAPHY

Dr. Rachana Saxena, Professor,
School of Commerce, Jain Deemed to be University, Bangalore, India,
Email Id- s.rachana@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

As the Greek philosopher and globe traveler Herodotus revealed in the 5th century bce, stores of information were built up concerning such new and exotic regions. That knowledge became known as geography, a term coined in the third century BCE as the title of Eratosthenes of Cyrene's book Geographical. The oldest known globe maps date from the 9th century BC in ancient Babylon. The ancient Greeks chose a poet to be their geography expert. They considered Homer to be the creator of geography and utilized his writings, the Iliad, and the Odyssey, as geography textbooks.

KEYWORDS:

Critical Geography, Environmental Determinism, Geographical Knowledge, Quantitative Revolution, Regional Geography.

INTRODUCTION

Several histories of geography have changed throughout time and amongst different cultural and political groupings. Geography has just emerged as a separate academic field. The term 'geography' comes from the Greek word geographic, which means "Earth-writing," or "description or writing about the Earth. Eratosthenes (276-194 BC) was the first to use the term geography. Prior to the adoption of the word, however, there is evidence for identifiable activities of geography, such as cartography (map-making).

Egypt

The Nile was seen as the center of the known world in Ancient Egypt, and the world was built on "the" river. different oasis were known to the east and west, and were thought to be the locations of different gods (for example, Siwa for Amon). The Kushitic area, known as far as the 4th century, lies to the south. Punt was a territory located south of the Red Sea. Retenu, Kanaan, Que, Harranu, and Khatti (Hittites) were names given to several Asian peoples. Egyptians maintained diplomatic and trading contacts with Babylonia and Elam at different periods, particularly during the Late Bronze Age. The Mediterranean was known as "the Great Green" and was thought to be part of a world-encircling ocean. Europe was unknown, however it may have entered the Egyptian worldview during the Phoenician period. To the west of Asia lay the kingdoms of Keftiu, maybe Crete, and Mycenae (considered to be part of a chain of islands that connected Cyprus, Crete, Sicily, and possibly Sardinia, Corsica, and the Balearics to Africa)[1]–[3].

Babylon

The oldest known world maps date back to ancient Babylon from the 9th century BC. The best known Babylonian world map, however, is the Imago Mundi of 600 BC. The map as reconstructed by Eckhard Unger shows Babylon on the Euphrates, surrounded by a circular landmass showing Assyria, Urartu and several cities, in turn surrounded by a "bitter river" (Oceanus), with seven islands arranged around it so as to form a seven-pointed star. Seven distant locations beyond the surrounding ocean are mentioned in the preceding text. Five of their descriptions have survived. Unlike the Imago Mundi, an older Babylonian globe map from the 9th century BC represented Babylon as being farther north from the center of the world, however it is unclear what that center was meant to symbolize.

World of the Greco-Romans

Homer is regarded as the inventor of geography by the ancient Greeks. His writings, the Iliad and the Odyssey, are works of literary, yet both include a wealth of geographical knowledge. Homer depicts a circular universe surrounded by a single vast ocean. The paintings reveal that by the 8th century BC, the Greeks had a good understanding of the topography of the eastern Mediterranean. The poems feature a significant number of place names and descriptions, although it is unclear which genuine site, if any, is being alluded to.Thales of Miletus was one of the earliest recognized philosophers to ponder the form of the universe. He argued that the world was made out of water and that everything evolved from it. He also established many of the astronomical and mathematical standards that would enable geography to be properly examined. His successor, Anaximander, is credited with creating the first scale map of the known globe and introducing the gnomon to Ancient Greece.

Hecataeus of Miletus pioneered a new kind of geography by eschewing Thales' and Anaximander's mathematical calculations. Instead, he learned about the globe by collecting earlier works and chatting with sailors passing through Miletus' large harbor. He developed a full prose summary of what was known about the globe based on these tales. Herodotus' Histories is a comparable book that has mainly survived to the present day. While the book is essentially a work of history, it offers a plethora of geographic descriptions that encompass most of the known globe. Egypt, Scythia, Persia, and Asia Minor are all described,including a mention of India. The description of Africa as a whole is contentious, with Herodotus describing the land surrounded by a sea. Though he described the Phoenicians as having circumnavigated Africa in the 6th century BC, the Indian Ocean was thought to be an inland sea through much of later European history this was not totally abandoned by Western cartographers until Vasco da Gama circumnavigated Africa. Some argue that the representations of regions like as India are essentially fictitious. Regardless, Herodotus made vital discoveries regarding geography. He was the first to see how major rivers, such as the Nile, build up deltas, and he was also the first to notice that winds tend to blow from colder locations to warmer ones.

Pythagoras was one of the first to advocate for a spherical cosmos, claiming that the sphere was the most ideal shape. Plato supported this theory, and Aristotle provided practical data to back it up. During a lunar eclipse, the Earth's shadow is bent from any angle (near the horizon or high in the sky), and stars rise in height as one approaches north. The concept of a sphere was utilized by Eudoxus of Cnidus to describe how the sun formed different climatic zones dependent on latitude. This caused the Greeks to assume that the globe was divided into five zones. Each pole has an uncomfortably chilly zone. The heat of the Sahara was extrapolated to show that the region surrounding the equator was excessively hot. Both the northern and southern hemispheres possessed a temperate band suited for human settlement between these extreme locations.

Hellenistic era

However, Hanno the Navigator had sailed as far south as Sierra Leone, and Egyptian Pharaoh Necho II of Africa is mentioned by Herodotus and others as having commissioned a successful round of Africa by Phoenician sailors. While sailing west around the southern edge of Africa, they discovered that the sun was on their right (north). In the classical world, this is regarded to have been a major catalyst in the revelation that the globe is round.

Pytheas, a Greek explorer, journeyed across northeast Europe and circled the British Isles in the 4th century BC. He discovered that the area was much more livable than theory predicted, but his findings were generally ignored by his contemporaries as a result. Conquerors also conducted exploration, as evidenced by Caesar's invasions of Britain and Germany, Augustus' expeditions/invasions to Arabia Felix and Ethiopia, and perhaps the greatest Ancient Greek explorer of all, Alexander the Great, who purposefully set out to learn more about the east through his military expeditions, taking a large number of geographers and writers with him who recorded their observations as they moved east.

The earth was split into three continents by the ancient Greeks: Europe, Asia, and Libya (Africa). The Hellespont was the dividing line between Europe and Asia. The Nile River was often assumed to mark the boundary between Asia and Libya, although certain geographers, such as Herodotus, disagreed. The Red Sea, according to Herodotus, was a superior border since there was no distinction between the inhabitants on the east and west banks of the Nile. The relatively limited habitable region was thought to span from the Atlantic Ocean in the west to an unknown sea east of India. Because the southern section of Africa, as well as the northern portions of Europe and Asia, were unknown, it was assumed that they were encircled by a sea. These regions were often regarded as inhospitable.

The Ancient Greeks were interested in the size of the Earth. Because the distance from the Atlantic to India was generally known, Eratosthenes estimated the Earth's circumference with excellent precision. This presented the significant issue of what existed in the enormous territory east of Asia and west of Europe. According to Crates of Mallus, there are four livable land masses, two in each hemisphere. A massive globe showing this planet was made in Rome. Posidonius went out to take a measurement, but his figure was far lower than the true one, and it became recognized that the eastern half of Asia was not far from Europe.

The Roman era

While practically all older geographers' writings have been destroyed, several of them are known in part from quotes in Strabo. Strabo's seventeen-volume geography book is nearly entirely surviving, and it is one of the most significant sources of knowledge on classical geography. Strabo supported the restricted area of residence idea and dismissed Hanno and Pytheas' reports as myths. Although none of Strabo's maps have survived, his thorough descriptions provide an accurate picture of the state of geographical knowledge at the time. Pliny the Elder's Natural History includes geography parts. Ptolemy undertook a similar project a century after Strabo. The Roman Empire had spread over most of Europe by this time, and previously unknown territories such as the British Isles had been visited. The Silk Road was also in use, and for the first time, knowledge of the far east became available. Ptolemy's Geographia begins with a theoretical study of the nature and methods of geographical investigation before moving on to specific depictions of most of the known globe. Ptolemy records and locations a large number of towns, tribes, and landmarks across the globe. It is unknown what Ptolemy's names correlate to in the present world, and much research has been done to attempt to match Ptolemaic descriptions to recognized places.

The Romans were the first to make considerable practical use of geography and maps. The Roman transportation system, which included 55,000 miles (89,000 kilometers) of roadways, could not have been planned without the use of geographical measuring and triangulation technologies. The cursus publicus, a Roman government transportation agency, employed full-time gromatici (surveyors). The surveyors' role was to collect topographical data and then establish the straightest feasible path where a road might be constructed. Sun dials for determining direction, theodolites for measuring horizontal angles, and triangulation, without which it would have been impossible to create precisely straight lengths as long as 35 miles (56 km).

Around AD 400, the Peutinger, a scroll map of the known globe that included the Roman road network, was created. The map covers India, Sri Lanka, and China in addition to the Roman Empire, which at the time stretched from Britain to the Middle East and Africa. Hundreds of symbols are used to demarcate cities. It stands 1.12 feet (0.34 meters) tall and 22.15 feet (6.75 meters) long. The instruments and ideas of geography utilized by the Romans would be faithfully followed for the following 700 years, with little practical progress.

India

The subject of geography was embraced by a wide body of Indian books. The Vedas and Puranas include detailed depictions of rivers and mountains, as well as discussions of the link between physical and human elements. According to religious researcher Diana Eck, one distinguishing trait of Indian geography is its intertwining with Hindu mythology. No matter where one travels in India, one will encounter a landscape in which mountains, rivers, forests, and villages are intricately related to Indian mythology and gods. Every location in this enormous land has a tale, and every Hindu myth and legend has a place[4], [5].

Period of antiquity

Ancient Indian geographers had hypotheses on the genesis of the world. They hypothesized that the earth was formed by the solidification of gaseous matter and that the earth's crust is made up of hard rocks (sila), clay (bhumih), and sand (asma). Theories to explain earthquakes (bhukamp) were also proposed, and it was assumed that earth, air, and water combined to cause earthquakes. Each of the dwipas' climate and geography were described in detail.

Early Middle Ages

Six chapters on physical and human geography are included in the Vishnudharmottara Purana (written between 300 and 350 AD). These chapters discuss the locational attributes of people and places, as well as the various seasons. Varhamihira's Brihat-Samhita provided a thorough treatment of planetary movements, rainfall, clouds, and the formation of water.[20] In his treatise ryabhaya, the mathematician-astronomer Aryabhatiya accurately calculated the Earth's circumference as 24,835 miles, which was only 0.2% smaller than

Late Middle Ages

The Mughal chronicles Tuzuk-i-Jehangiri, Ain-i-Akbari, and Dastur-ul-aml offer rich geographical accounts based on older geographical works of India and the improvements made by medieval Muslim geographers, notably Alberuni's work. The earliest known geographical Chinese writing in China dates back to the 5th century BC, at the start of the Warring States period (481 BC - 221 BC). This work was the Yu Gong chapter of the Shu Jing or Book of Documents, which describes the traditional nine provinces of ancient China, their types of soil, their characteristic products and economic goods, their tributary goods, their trades and vocations, their state revenues and agricultural products,

The Chinese utilized the legendary character of Yu the Great to explain the known world (of the Chinese) in this ancient geographical book, which would substantially impact subsequent Chinese geographers and cartographers. Apart from Yu's appearance, the work was devoid of magic, fantasy, Chinese folklore, or legend. Although Chinese geographical writing in the time of Herodotus and Strabo was of lower quality and contained a less systematic approach, this would change from the 3rd century onwards, as Chinese methods of documenting geography became more complex than those found in Europe, a situation that would last until the 13th century.

The earliest extant maps found in archeological sites of China date to the 4th century BC and were made in the ancient State of Qin. The earliest known reference to the application of a geometric grid and mathematically graduated scale to a map was contained in the writings of the cartographer Pei Xiu. From the 1st century AD onwards, official Chinese historical texts contained a geographical section, which was often an enormous compilation of changes in place-names and local administrative divisions controlled by the ruling dynasty, descriptions of mountain ranges, river systems, taxable products, etc. The ancient Chinese historian Ban Gu most likely started the trend of the gazetteer in China, which became prominent in the Northern and Southern dynasties period and Sui dynasty. Local gazetteers would feature a wealth of geographic information, although its cartographic aspects were not as highly professional as the maps created by professional cartographers.

From the 5th century BC Shu Jing forward, Chinese geographical literature supplied more factual facts and less folklore. This example may be found in the fourth chapter of the Huainanzi (Book of the Master of Huainan), which was produced in 139 BC during the Han dynasty (202 BC - 202 AD) under the editorship of Prince Liu An. The chapter gave general descriptions of topography in a systematic manner, with visual aids provided by the use of maps (di tu) thanks to the efforts of Liu An and his associate Zuo Wu. In Chang Chu's Hua Yang Guo Chi (Historical Geography of Sichuan) of 347, not only rivers, trade routes, and various tribes were described, but it also wrote of a 'Ba Jun Tu Jing' ('Map of Sichuan'

Later stages of the Song and Ming dynasties (960-1279) saw far more structured and professional approaches to geographic writing. The geographical treatise known as the Gui Hai Yu Heng Chi was written by the Song dynasty poet, scholar, and government official Fan Chengda (1126-1193) and focused primarily on the topography of the land, as well as the agricultural, economic, and commercial products of each region in China's southern provinces. The polymath Chinese scientist Shen Kuo (1031-1095) devoted a significant amount of his written work to geography, as well as In his book He Shuo Fang Gu Ji, the 14th-century Yuan dynasty geographer Na-xin wrote a treatise of archeological topography of all the regions north of the Yellow River. The Ming dynasty geographer Xu Xiake (1587-1641) traveled throughout China (often on foot) to write his enormous geographical and topographical treatise, documenting various details of his travels, such as the locations of

The Chinese were likewise interested in recording geographical knowledge of foreign locations distant from China. Although Chinese had been writing about Middle Eastern, Indian, and Central Asian civilizations since the explorer Zhang Qian (2nd century BC), subsequent Chinese would give more clear and accurate information on the topographical and geographical elements of other places. During the 7th century, Tang dynasty (618-907) Chinese ambassador Wang Xuance journeyed to Magadha (present northeastern India). Following that, he authored the book Zhang Tian-zhu Guo Tu (Illustrated Accounts of Central India), which had a wealth of geographical knowledge. Chinese geographers such as Jia Dan (730-805) gave precise accounts of areas far away. In his work written between 785 and 805, he described the sea route leading into the mouth of the Persian Gulf, and that medieval Iranians (whom he called the people of the Luo-He-Yi country, i.e. Persia) had erected 'ornamental pillars' in the sea that acted as lighthouse beacons for ships that might go astray. Arabic writers a century after Jia wrote of the same structures, writers such as The later Song dynasty ambassador Xu Jing wrote his accounts of voyage and travel throughout Korea in his 1124 work, the Xuan-He Feng Shi Gao Li Tu Jing (Illustrated Record of an Embassy to Korea in the Xuan-He Reign Period). Zhou Daguan documented the geography of medieval Cambodia (the Khmer Empire) in his book Zhen-La Feng Tu Ji.

Middle Ages

Following the collapse of the Western Roman Empire, the Eastern Roman Empire, known as the Byzantine Empire and controlled from Constantinople, thrived and produced numerous notable geographers. Stephanus of Byzantium (6th century) was a grammarian at Constantinople who wrote the influential geographical dictionary Ethnica. This book is very valuable since it contains well-referenced topographical and other facts about ancient Greece.

Hierocles, a geographer, wrote the Synecdemus (before to AD 535), in which he presents a table of the Byzantine Empire's administrative divisions and identifies the cities in each. The Synecdemus and the Ethnica were the key sources for Constantine VII's work on the Themes or divisions of Byzantium, and they remain the fundamental sources for sixth-century East political geography.George of Cyprus is best known for his Descriptio orbis Romani (Description of the Roman World), written in the decade 600-610. Beginning with Italy and progressing counterclockwise, George lists cities, towns, fortresses, and administrative divisions of the Byzantine or Eastern Roman Empire.

Cosmas Indicopleustes, also known as "Cosmas the Monk," was an Alexandrian trader who traveled to India, Sri Lanka, the Kingdom of Axum in modern Ethiopia, and Eritrea, according to travel records. Some of the first global maps were included in his book Christian Topography. Though Cosmas thought the globe was flat, most Christian geographers of his day disagreed.Syrian bishop Jacob of Edessa (633-708) used scientific information from Aristotle, Theophrastus, Ptolemy, and Basil to create a meticulously ordered view of the universe. In contrast to Basil's Hexaemeron, he corrects his sources and writes more scientifically.Karl Müller has gathered and published a number of anonymous works of geography from this period, notably the Expositio totius mundi.

Islamic World

Adherents of the nascent religion of Islam rushed northward from Arabia in the late 7th century, taking over territories where Jews, Byzantine Christians, and Persian Zoroastrians had been settled for ages. They found the Greek classics there, carefully preserved in monasteries and libraries, which contained major works of geography by Egyptian Ptolemy's Almagest and Geography, as well as Chinese geographical knowledge and the Roman Empire's great achievements. Arabs who only knew Arabic hired Christians and Jews to translate these and other writings into Arabic.

The principal geographical study of this period took place in Persia, today's Iran, at the great learning hub of Baghdad, today's Iraq. Early caliphs did not adhere to orthodoxy, therefore they fostered scholarship. Under their authority, local non-Arabs functioned as mawali or dhimmi, and most geographers in this time were Syrian (Byzantine) or Persian, i.e. of Zoroastrian or Christian origin.

Ab Zayd al-Balkh, a Persian originating from Balkh, established the "Balkh school" of terrestrial mapping in Baghdad in the early 10th century. The geographers of this school also wrote extensively about the peoples, products, and customs of the Muslim world, with little interest in the non-Muslim realms. Suhrb, a late 10th-century Persian geographer, accompanied a book of geographical coordinates with instructions for making a rectangular world map, with equirectangular projection or cylindrical equidistant projection[6]–[8].

Around 1025, Persian Ab Rayhn al-Brn was the first to describe a polar equi-azimuthal equidistant projection of the celestial sphere. He was also regarded as the most skilled in mapping cities and measuring distances between them, which he did for many cities in the Middle East and western Indian subcontinent. He used astronomical readings and mathematical formulae to record degrees of latitude and longitude as well as mountain heights and valley depths, which he documented in The Chronology of the Ancient Nations. He spoke on human geography and the Earth's planetary habitability, claiming that around a quarter of the Earth's surface is livable by people. In order to precisely measure the Earth's circumference, he solved a difficult geodesic equation. His estimate of 6,339.9 km for the Earth radius was just 16.8 km less than the contemporary number of 6,356.7 km.

The Normans had defeated the Arabs in Sicily by the early 12th century. Palermo had become a crossroads for visitors and merchants from all over the world, and Norman King Roger II, who was fascinated by geography, commissioned the development of a book and map that would consolidate all of this treasure of geographical knowledge. Researchers were sent, and data collecting took 15 years. Al-Idrisi, one of the few Arabs who had ever visited France, England, Spain, Central Asia, and Constantinople, was hired to compile the book from this mountain of material. He drew one of the most accurate maps of the globe to date, the Tabula Rogeriana (1154), using knowledge gained from ancient geographers. The map, which is printed in Arabic, depicts the whole Eurasian continent as well as the northern section of Africa.

The medieval Afro-Arab writer al-Jahiz (776-869), who detailed how the environment might shape the physical traits of a community's residents, was an advocate of environmental determinism. He utilized his early evolutionary theory to explain the origins of varied human skin hues, notably black skin, which he felt was the consequence of environmental factors. As proof for his idea, he highlighted a stony patch of black basalt in northern Najd.

Europe in the Middle Ages

Geographic knowledge in Europe deteriorated throughout the Early Middle Ages (though it is a common misunderstanding that they believed the earth was flat), and the basic T and O map became the typical portrayal of the world.The travels of the Venetian adventurer Marco Polo across the Mongol Empire in the 13th century, the Christian Crusades of the 12th and 13th centuries, and the Portuguese and Spanish voyages of discovery in the 15th and 16th centuries all opened up new vistas and inspired geographic literature. The Mongols also possessed extensive understanding of European and Asian geography as a result of their administration and rule over much of this region, and they utilized this knowledge to plan huge military campaigns.

This is supported by historical texts such as The Secret History of the Mongols and other Persian chronicles produced in the 13th and 14th centuries. For example, a global map was constructed during the reign of the Great Yuan Dynasty and is now housed in South Korea. Yuan Dynasty maps are also available.During the 15th century, Henry the Navigator of Portugal promoted geographic research and financed voyages of the African coast. Giambattista Ramusio's description of a journey and discovery in Venice, Richard Hakluyt's narrative in England, and Theodore de Bry's report in what is now Belgium were among the most significant accounts of voyages and discoveries written throughout the 16th century.

Early modern era

Following Marco Polo's trips, interest in geography expanded across Europe. Around the year c. In 1400, Ptolemy and his successors' publications offered a systematic framework for linking and depicting geographical knowledge. This paradigm was employed by academics for centuries, with the benefits being a precursor to the geographical enlightenment; nonetheless, women and indigenous writers were mostly excluded from the debate. The European global conquests began in the early 15th century with the first Portuguese expeditions to Africa and India, as well as Spain's conquest of America in 1492, and continued until the 18th century with a series of European naval expeditions across the Atlantic and later the Pacific, as well as Russian expeditions to Siberia. European overseas expansion resulted in the formation of colonial empires, with the Columbian Exchange: a large movement of plants, animals, cuisines, human populations (including slaves), contagious illnesses, and culture across the continents. These imperialist ventures in the 16th and 17th centuries reawakened a need for "accurate" geographic information as well as more solid theoretical basis. Bernhardus Varenius' Geographia Generalis and Gerardus Mercator's globe map are prominent examples of the new breed of scientific geography.

The Waldseemüller map Universalis Cosmographia, published in April 1507 by German geographer Martin Waldseemüller, is the earliest map of the Americas in which the term "America" appears. Prior to this, Native Americans referred to their country differently depending on where they were, with one of the most often used phrases being "Abya Yala," which means "land of vital blood." To create room for European ideology, European colonialists mainly disregarded or exploited local geographical discourses.

The Eurocentric map was based on a modification of Ptolemy's second projection, but it was expanded to include the Americas. The Waldseemuller Map has been dubbed "America's birth certificate." Waldseemüller also created printed maps called globe gores, which could be cut out and glued to spheres to form a globe.This has been widely criticized as dismissive of the substantial Native American history that precedes the 16th-century invasion, since the idea of a "birth certificate" suggests a blank past earlier.

The Western 16th and 18th centuries

During the Scientific Revolution and the Protestant Reformation, geography as a science enjoys enthusiasm and exerts influence. Oversea exploration gave it institutional identity during the Victorian era, and geography was "the science of imperialism par excellenceImperialism is an important notion for Europeans, since the institution became engaged in geographical exploration and colonial projects. Utility gained relevance when authority was questioned. Geography developed information and made it cognitively and practically practicable as a university study throughout the Enlightenment period. Natural theology required geography in order to analyze the world as a big Divine mechanism. Scientific expeditions and excursions, partially financed by the Royal Society, built geopolitical influence from geographical knowledge. According to John Pinkerton, the eighteenth century saw "the gigantic progress of every science, and especially of geographical information," and "alteration in states and boundaries."

Many new ideas and theories emerged from the language of geographical history, but the primacy of European male academics led to the marginalization of non-western theories, observations, and knowledges. One such example is the interaction between humans and nature, with Marxist thought criticizing nature as a commodity within Capitalism, European thought viewing nature as either a romanticized or objective concept distinct from human society, and Native American discourse viewing nature and humans as one and the same. The implicit hierarchy of knowledge that pervades these organizations was only recently challenged, with the Royal Geographical Society allowing women to become members in the twentieth century.

Following the English Civil War, Samuel Hartlib and his Baconian group pushed scientific application, demonstrating the utility's appeal. According to William Petty, administrators should be "skilled in the best rules of judicial astrology" in order to "calculate the events of diseases and prognosticate the weather." Institutionally, Gresham College propagated scientific advancement to a larger audience, similar to tradesmen, and this institute later grew into Royal Society. The military use of maps by William Cuningham demonstrated the practical role of cosmography. John Dee employed mathematics to investigate location—his principal focus in geography—and supported resource exploitation using results gathered on trips. The Protestant Reformation encouraged geographical inquiry and study. Philipp Melanchthon separated geography from theology because the "general workings of providence" needed empirical research. Bartholomäus Keckermann separated geography from theology because the "general workings of providence" required empirical investigation. In the 17th century, his disciple Bernhardus Varenius established geography as a science and wrote Geographia Generalis, which was employed in Newton's teaching of geography at Cambridge.

Science evolves in tandem with empiricism. Empiricism gains prominence, as meditation on it expands. Magicians and astrologers were the first to accept and enhance their geographical knowledge. Previously, Reformation Theology centered on providence rather than creation. Instead of being translated from scripture, realistic experience arose as a scientific technique. As part of the Puritan social agenda, geographic knowledge and technique play roles in economic education and administrative application. Foreign travel offered fodder for geographic studies and helped to shape ideologies like environmentalism. Visual representation, mapping, and cartography demonstrated their practical, theoretical, and aesthetic usefulness.

The ideas of "Space" and "Place" are popular in geography. Why things are where they are and not elsewhere is an important question in Geography, as are disputes about space and location. M. recognized such ideas as dating back to the 16th and 17th centuries. Curry (On Space and Spatial Practice) as "Natural Space," "Absolute Space," and "Relational Space" Following Descartes' Principles of Philosophy, Locke and Leibniz believed space to be relative, which had a long-term impact on contemporary perceptions of space. Place is a section of "absolution space" for Descartes, Grassendi, and Newton, which is neural and given. However, according to John Locke, "our idea of place is nothing else, but such a relative Position of anything"[9], [10].

"Distance" is the pivot modification of space because "space considered barely in length between any two Beings, without considering anything else between them" Furthermore, the location was "created by Men for their common use, in order that they might be able to design the particular Position of Things." Leibniz wrote in the Fifth Paper in Reply to Clarke, "Men fancy places, traces, and space, though these things consist only in the truth of relations and not in any absolute reality." Space, as a "order of coexistence," "can only be an ideal thing, containing a certain order, wherein the mind conceives the application of relation," according to the author. Leibniz took the concept "distance" a step further by discussing it with "interval" and "situation," not only as a quantifiable property. Leibniz connected place and space to quality and quantity by stating, "Quantity or magnitude is that in things which can be known only through their simultaneous compresence—or by their simultaneous perception... Quality, on the other hand, is what can be known in things when they are observed singly, without requiring any compresence." "The Supremacy of Space" is noticed by E. Casey when Leibniz's rationality and Locke's empiricism reconcile the place as "position and even point"

During the Enlightenment, advances in science meant broadening human understanding and allowing for greater exploitation of nature, as well as industrialisation and imperial expansion in Europe. According to Leszek Kolakowski, David Hume, "the real father of positivist philosophy," indicated the "doctrine of facts," stressing the value of empirical findings. According to Berkeley, the "fact" is linked with sensationalism since an item cannot be separated from its "sense-perceptions." Scientific materialism was championed by Galileo, Descartes, Hobbes, and Newton, who saw the universe—the whole cosmos, and even the human mind—as a machine. The mechanist world view may also be seen in Adam Smith's work, which is founded on historical and statistical methodologies. Antoine Lavoisier created the "exact science model" in chemistry, emphasizing quantitative approaches from experiment and mathematics. Karl Linnaeus founded his classification of plants and creatures on the idea of fixed species. Later, not only did the concept of evolution evolve for species, but also for society and human intelligence. Kant put forth his notion of cosmic development in General Natural History and Theory of the Heavens, making him "the great founder of the modern scientific conception of Evolution," according to Hastie.

Francis Bacon and his disciples thought that advances in science and technology drove human growth. Jean-Jacques Rousseau, who supported human emotions and morality, attached this idea. His conversation on geography education inspired local regional studies. The primary challenge to mechanical materialism was developed by Leibniz and Kant. Leibniz saw the universe as a dynamic whole, rather than a "sum of its parts" machine. Nonetheless, he recognized that experience requires rational interpretation—the capacity of human reason.

Kant attempted to bridge the separation of sensation and reason by emphasizing moral rationalism as "order, harmony, and unity" based on aesthetic perception of nature. Kant distinguished phenomena (sensible world) and noumena (intelligible world) for knowledge, and he asserted that "all phenomena are perceived in the relations of space and time." Kant regarded Physical geography—associating with space—as natural science, drawing a line between "rational science" and "empirical science." Kant gave lectures on physical geography in Königsberg beginning in 1756 and published the lecture notes Physische Geographie in 1801. Kant's interest in travel and geographical studies, on the other hand, is rather restricted. Kant's work on empirical and rational science had an impact on Humboldt and, to a lesser degree, Ritter. According to Manfred Büttner, this is "Kantian emancipation of geography from theology."

According to D., Humboldt is regarded as a great geographer. According to Livingstone, "modern geography was first and foremost a synthesising science, and as such, if Goetzmann is to be believed, 'it became the key scientific activity of the age.'" At the University of Göttingen, Humboldt met geographer George Forster, whose geographical description and scientific writing influenced Humboldt. His Geognosia, which includes the geology of rocks, animals, and plants, is regarded as "an important model for modern geography." Humboldt established the Free Royal Mining School at Steben for miners as the Prussian Ministry of Mines, which was thereafter recognized as the prototype of similar schools. German Naturphilosophie, particularly the work of Goethe and Herder, influenced Humboldt's concept and pursuit of a universal science. In his letter, he took observations while his "attention will never lose sight of the harmony of concurrent forces, the influence of the inanimate world on the animal and vegetable kingdom."

His scientific emphasis throughout his American tour was the geography of plants. Meanwhile, Humboldt employed empirical methods to investigate indigenous peoples in the New World, which is considered to be one of the most significant works in human geography. Humboldt referred to these findings as physical du monde, Theorie de la Terre, or Geographie physical in Relation Historique du Voyage. Humboldt worked on Kosmos, a book on natural knowledge, from 1825 until 1859. Since then, there has been an increase in the number of works regarding the New World. "American geography was born of the geography of America" during the Jeffersonian period, implying that information discovery contributed to the formation of the science. The Teleological heritage is built on practical knowledge and national pride.Institutions like the Royal Geographical Society recognize geography as a distinct subject. Physical Geography was the "conceptual culmination of. Baconian ideal of universal integration" according to Mary Somerville. According to Francis Bacon, "no natural phenomenon can be adequately studied by itself alone - but, to be understood, it must be considered as it stands connected with all nature."

The nineteenth century

By the 18th century, geography had been acknowledged as a distinct science and was included in most university curricula in Europe (particularly in Paris and Berlin), but not in the United Kingdom, where geography was typically taught as a sub-discipline of other disciplines.The work of the 19th-century polymath Alexander von Humboldt shows a holistic perspective of geography and nature. One of the major works of the period was Humboldt's Kosmos: a sketch of a physical description of the Universe, the first volume of which was published in German in 1845. After reading Kosmos, Dr. Mary Somerville of Cambridge University decided to cancel the publishing of her own Physical Geography. Von Humboldt encouraged her to publish after receiving a copy from the publisher.

Thomas Henry Huxley released his Physiography in 1877, which established the philosophy of universality as an integrated approach to the study of the natural world. The theory of universality in geography was not novel, but rather evolved from the writings of Alexander von Humboldt and Immanuel Kant. Huxley's physiography presented a new type of geography that analyzed and classified cause and effect at the micro-level before applying these to the macro-scale (due to the belief that the micro was part of the macro and thus an understanding of all the micro-scales was required to understand the macro level). This method prioritized empirical data collecting above theoretical research. Halford John Mackinder utilized the same strategy in 1887. However, Davisian geomorphology quickly surpassed the integration of the Geosphere, Atmosphere, and Biosphere under physiography.

The amount of information and technologies available has increased dramatically during the last two centuries. Geography is closely related to the disciplines of geology and botany, as well as economics, sociology, and demography.Although the Royal Geographical Society was formed in England in 1830, the United Kingdom did not get its first official Chair in geography until 1917. Halford John Mackinder, appointed reader at Oxford University in 1887, was the first true geographical mind to emerge in British geography.

In 1888, the National Geographic Society was created in the United States and started publishing the National Geographic magazine, which became and continues to be a major popularizer of geographic knowledge. Geographic research and teaching have long been funded by the society. The field of geography in the Western world went through four important periods in the second half of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries: environmental determinism, regional geography, the quantitative revolution, and critical geography.

DISCUSSION

The notion of environmental determinism holds that a person's physical, mental, and moral behaviors are directly influenced by their natural environment. Carl Ritter, Ellen Churchill Semple, and Ellsworth Huntington were among the prominent environmental determinists. Popular theories included "heat makes tropics residents lazy" and "frequent changes in barometric pressure make temperate latitude residents more intellectually agile." Environmental determinist geographers tried to scientifically explore such factors. Around the 1930s, this school of thought was widely rejected as lacking any basis and being prone to (often bigoted) generalizations. Environmental determinism remains an embarrassment to many contemporary geographers, and many of them are skeptical of claims of environmental influence on culture (such as Jared Diamond's theories).

The term "regional geography" was developed by a group of geographers known as possibilists to reassert that the true theme of geography was the study of places (regions). Regional geographers concentrated on gathering descriptive information about locations as well as the right ways for dividing the planet into regions. Alfred Hettner in Germany and Paul Vidal de la Blache in France are two well-known figures from this era. Richard Hartshorne established the intellectual foundation of this discipline in the United States, defining geography as a study of areal distinction, which eventually led to criticism of this approach as too descriptive and unscientific.

However, the notion of a Regional geography model centered on Area Studies has remained quite popular among geography students, although less so among researchers who advocate Critical Geography and oppose the Regional geography paradigm. Regional Geography, which had a heyday from the 1970s to the early 1990s and made significant contributions to students' and readers' understanding of foreign cultures and the real-world effects of border delineation, may be due for a revival in academia as well as popular nonfiction.

The quantitative revolution

In the 1950s, the quantitative revolution in geography started. Geographers developed geographical hypotheses and tested them empirically, often using statistical techniques (particularly hypothesis testing). This quantitative revolution paved the way for the development of geographic information systems. Notable geographers from this era include Fred K. Schaefer, Waldo Tobler, William Garrison, Peter Haggett, Richard J. Chorley, William Bunge, Edward Augustus Ackerman, and Torsten Hägerstrand. An important notion that developed from this is Waldo Tobler's first rule of geography, which asserts that "everything is related to everything else, but near things are more related than distant things."

Critical geography

Though positivist approaches to geography remain essential, critical geography emerged as a criticism of positivism. Humanistic geography was the first strain of critical geography to develop. Humanistic geographers (such as Yi-Fu Tuan) focused on people's sense of, and relationship with, places, drawing on existentialism and phenomenology. More influential was Marxist geography, which applied Karl Marx's and his followers' social theories to geographic phenomena. Marxist geographers include David Harvey, Milton Santos, and Richard Peet. Feminist geography is, as the name implies, the application of feminist concepts to geographic circumstances. Postmodernist geography is the most contemporary strain of critical geography, which uses the concepts of postmodernist and poststructuralist thinkers to investigate the social creation of spatial connections.

CONCLUSION

Physical geography, human geography, environmental geography, and geospatial analysis are some of the sub-disciplines of modern geography. Geographers currently examine a wide range of themes, including climate change, urban planning, population dynamics, cultural landscapes, and geopolitics. It is crucial to remember that the histories of geography are connected with the development of other scientific disciplines and cultural developments throughout history. The area is evolving as new technology and study approaches develop, allowing for a better knowledge of our globe and its different landscapes.

REFERENCES

[1] S. Bloch, "Police and policing in geography: From methods, to theory, to praxis," *Geogr. Compass*, 2021, doi: 10.1111/gec3.12555.

[2] M. N. Dias, "Arab Seafaring in the Indian Ocean in ancient and early Medieval Times," *Rev. Hist. (Costa. Rica).*, 1954, doi: 10.11606/issn.2316-9141.v9i20p495-498.

[3] H. J. Laimer, "Engineering geomorphology: A novel professional profile to face applied challenges in earth surface dynamics in mid-Europe," *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms*. 2021. doi: 10.1002/esp.5176.

[4] G. Z. de F. Neves, N. P. Gallardo, and F. A. da S. Vecchia, "A short critical history on the development of meteorology and climatology," *Climate*. 2017. doi: 10.3390/cli5010023.

[5] C. M. Gold, "What is GIS and what is not?," *Transactions in GIS*. 2006. doi: 10.1111/j.1467-9671.2006.01009.x.

[6] C. Gold, "What is GIS and what is not? Review Article," *Trans. GIS*, 2006.

[7] P. A. Noguera and J. A. Alicea, "Structural racism and the urban geography of education," *Phi Delta Kappan*, 2020, doi: 10.1177/0031721720970703.

[8] B. J. Butler, S. M. Butler, J. Caputo, J. Dias, A. Robillard, and E. M. Sass, "Family forest ownerships of the United States, 2018: results from the USDA Forest Service, National Woodland Owner Survey," *Gen. Tech. Rep. NRS-199*, 2021.

[9] R. S. Singh, "Identity and image of indian geography: The people's perspective," *J. Geogr. High. Educ.*, 2009, doi: 10.1080/03098260902734984.

[10] V. M. Durán, "Los mayas, criollos, garífunas y mestizos de Belice: una muestra literaria," *Cuad. Lit.*, 2011.

CHAPTER 3

A BRIEF OVERVIEW OF THE SPACE IN GEOGRAPHY

Dr. Saravana Kumar, Adjunct Professor,
School of Commerce, Jain Deemed to be University, Bangalore, India,
Email Id- k.saravana@Jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Place refers to the developed cultural connotations individuals invest in or attach to a certain site or region, whereas space is frequently characterized by an abstract scientific, mathematical, or quantifiable definition. The nature of geography is defined by space and place. The explanation of spatial organization, or spatial analysis, is at the forefront of geographical study. Geographers appear to be certain of both the meaning of space and the tools for analyzing it.

KEYWORDS:

Euclidean Geometry, General Relativity, Non-Euclidean, Spacetime, Three Dimensional.

INTRODUCTION

Space is a three-dimensional continuum that contains locations and directions. Physical space is often thought of in three linear dimensions in classical physics. Modern physicists often regard it, together with time, to constitute a limitless four-dimensional continuum known as space-time. The idea of space is seen as important to an understanding of the physical cosmos. However, philosophers dispute on whether it is a thing in and of itself, a connection between entities, or a component of a conceptual framework.Debates about the nature, essence, and mode of existence of space date back to antiquity, to Plato's Timaeus, or Socrates' reflections on what the Greeks called khôra (i.e. "space"), or Aristotle's Physics (Book IV, Delta) in the definition of topos (i.e. place), or the later "geometrical conception of place" as "space qua extension" in the Discourse on Place (Q According to Isaac Newton, space was absolute that is, it existed permanently and independently of whether or not there was matter in it. However, other natural philosophers, most notably Gottfried Leibniz, believed that space was in fact a collection of relations between objects, defined by their distance and direction from one another.

In his Essay towards a New Theory of Vision, the philosopher and theologian George Berkeley sought to disprove the "visibility of spatial depth" in the 18th century. Later, the metaphysician Immanuel Kant said that the conceptions of space and time are not empirical ones gained from outside world experiences, but rather aspects of an already provided systematic framework that people hold and utilize to shape all experiences. Kant described the sensation of "space" as a subjective "pure a priori form of intuition" in his Critique of Pure Reason[1], [2].

In the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, mathematicians started to investigate non-Euclidean geometries, in which space is imagined as curved rather than flat. Space surrounding gravitational fields deviates from Euclidean space, according to Albert Einstein's theory of general relativity.[4] Experimental testing of general relativity has verified that non-Euclidean geometries give a better description of the form of space.

Space Philosophy

The Scientific Revolution was founded on Galilean and Cartesian theories about space, matter, and motion, which is thought to have culminated with the publication of Newton's Principia Mathematica in 1687.Newton's theories about space and time assisted him in explaining the movement of objects. While his theory of space is often regarded as the most significant in physics, it arose from the ideas of his predecessors.

Galileo, a contemporary science pioneer, questioned the existing Aristotelian and Ptolemaic notions about a geocentric universe. He supported the Copernican notion that the cosmos was heliocentric, with a stationary sun at the center and planets circling around it, including Earth. The Aristotelian view that the Earth's inherent nature was to stay at rest was called into doubt if it moved. Instead, Galileo sought to demonstrate that the sun rotated on its axis, that motion was as natural to an object as stillness. In other words, celestial bodies, including the Earth, were naturally predisposed to revolve in circles according to Galileo. Another Aristotelian notion that was supplanted by this approach was that all things gravitated towards their allocated natural place of belonging.

Descartes sought out to replace the Aristotelian worldview with a natural-laws-based philosophy of space and motion. In other words, he was looking for a metaphysical basis or a mechanical explanation for his views about matter and motion. Cartesian space had a Euclidean structure it was endless, uniform, and flat. It was defined as that which included matter; substance, by definition, had a spatial extension, hence there was no such thing as empty space.Cartesian concepts of space are inextricably tied to his beliefs about the nature of the body, mind, and matter. He is well known for his "cogito ergo sum" (I think therefore I am) principle, which states that we can only be assured of the fact that we may doubt, and so think, and therefore exist. His beliefs are part of the rationalist tradition, which credits knowledge about the universe to our capacity to reason rather than our experiences, as empiricists believe. He proposed a clear difference between the body and mind, known as Cartesian dualism.

Following Galileo and Descartes, the philosophy of space and time in the seventeenth century focused on the views of Gottfried Leibniz, a German philosopher-mathematician, and Isaac Newton, who put forth two opposed theories of what space is. Rather than being an entity that exists independently of other matter, Leibniz held that space is simply a collection of spatial relations between objects in the world: "space is that which results from places taken together." Unoccupied regions are those that could have objects and thus spatial relations with other places. For Leibniz, space was an idealized abstraction from the interactions between particular items or their conceivable places, and so could not be continuous but must be discrete.

Space could be conceived of in the same manner as family members' relations. Although people in a family are related to one another, the relationships do not exist independently of the people. Leibniz argued that space could not exist independently of objects in the world because that implies a difference between two universes that are identical except for the location of the material world in each. However, since there would be no way to distinguish these worlds different by observation, there would be no genuine difference between them, according to the identity of indiscernible. According to the principle of adequate reason, any explanation of space that implies the existence of these two potential worlds must be incorrect.

Newton considered space to be more than just relationships between material things, and he founded his theory on observation and experiments. Because all spatial measurements are relative to other objects and their movements, there can be no actual distinction between inertial motion, in which the object moves with constant velocity, and non-inertial motion, in which the velocity fluctuates with time, for a relations. However, Newton contended that since non-inertial motion causes forces, it must be absolute. He illustrated his point with the illustration of water in a spinning bucket. Water in a bucket is suspended from a rope and spun, beginning on a level surface. The surface of the water eventually gets concave as the bucket spins. If the bucket stops spinning, the surface of the water stays concave while it continues to spin. The concave surface seems to be the consequence of non-inertial motion relative to space, rather than relative motion between the bucket and the water, according to Newton. For decades, the bucket argument was seen as essential in demonstrating that space must exist independently of matter.

Immanuel Kant, a German philosopher, developed a theory of knowledge in the eighteenth century in which knowledge about space can be both a priori and synthetic. According to Kant, knowledge about space is synthetic in the sense that statements about space are not simply true by virtue of the meaning of the words in the statement. Kant's work challenged the notion that space must be either a thing or a relation. Instead, he came to the conclusion that space and time are imposed by humans as part of a framework for organizing experience, rather than found by humans as objective aspects of the world.

Five postulates from Euclid's Elements serve as the foundation for Euclidean geometry. One of them, the parallel postulate, has been a source of contention among mathematicians for generations. It asserts that on every plane with a straight line L1 and a point P that is not on L1, there is precisely one straight line L2 that passes through the point P and is parallel to the straight line L1. Until the nineteenth century, few questioned the postulate's truth; instead, debate centered on whether it was necessary as an axiom, or whether it was a theory that could be derived from the other axioms. However, around 1830, the Hungarian János Bolyai and the Russian Nikolai Ivanovich Lobachevsky separately published treatises on hyperbolic geometry, which does not include the parallel postulate. An endless number of parallel lines run through the point P in this geometry.

As a result, the total of the angles of a triangle is less than 180°, and the circumference to diameter ratio of a circle is bigger than pi. Bernhard Riemann devised an analogous theory of elliptical geometry in the 1850s, in which no parallel lines travel through P. Triangles have more than 180° in this geometry, but circles have a circumference-to-diameter ratio smaller than pi.Although there was a Kantian agreement at the time, after non-Euclidean geometries were formalized, some started to ask whether actual space is curved. Carl Friedrich Gauss, a German mathematician, was the first to suggest conducting an empirical study of the geometrical structure of space. He considered testing the sum of the angles of an immense star triangle, and there are rumors that he did it on a modest scale by triangulating mountain tops in Germany[3], [4].

Henri Poincaré, a late-nineteenth-century French mathematician and physicist, introduced an important insight in which he attempted to demonstrate the futility of any attempt to discover which geometry applies to space by experiment. He considered the dilemma that scientists would face if they were confined to the surface of an imaginary large sphere with specific properties, known as a sphere-world. Temperature is assumed to change in this universe in such a manner that all items expand and contract in comparable quantities in various areas on the sphere. If the scientists try to use measuring rods to determine the sum of the angles in a triangle with a suitable temperature falloff, they can be deceived into thinking they inhabit a plane rather than a spherical surface. In fact, the scientists cannot in principle determine whether they inhabit a plane or sphere, and Poincaré argued that the same is true for the debate over whether real space is Euclidean or not. It was a question of convention for him to use which geometry to describe space.[22] Because Euclidean geometry is easier than non-Euclidean geometry, he thought the former will always be used to represent the 'real' geometry of the universe. Albert Einstein's special theory of relativity, published in 1905, led to the idea that space and time may be considered as a single entity known as space-time. According to this theory, the speed of light in a vacuum is the same for all witnesses, which means that two events that look simultaneous to one observer will not appear simultaneous to another if the observers are moving relative to one another. Furthermore, an observer will measure a moving clock to tick slower than one that is stationary regarding them, and items will be measured to be shorter in the direction that they are moving with respect to the observer.

Table 1: Table summarized the different types of the geometry.

Type of geometry	Number of parallels	Sum of angles in a triangle	Ratio of circumference to diameter of circle	Measure of curvature
Hyperbolic	Infinite	< 180°	> π	< 0
Euclidean	1	180°	π	0
Elliptical	0	> 180°	< π	> 0

Following that, Einstein worked on a general theory of relativity, which describes how gravity interacts with space-time. Instead of viewing gravity as a force field acting in space-time, Einstein proposed that it modifies the geometric structure of space-time itself (Table.1). Time moves more slowly in places with lower gravitational potentials, and light rays bend in the presence of a gravitational field. Scientists investigated the behavior of binary pulsars, which confirmed Einstein's ideas, and non-Euclidean geometry is often employed to define space-time.

Spaces are defined in contemporary mathematics as sets with some additional structure. They are commonly characterized as various forms of manifolds, which are spaces that locally resemble Euclidean space and whose features are determined primarily by the local connectivity of points on the manifold. However, the term "space" refers to a wide range of mathematical objects. Vector spaces, such as function spaces, may contain an unlimited number of independent dimensions and a definition of distance that differs greatly from Euclidean space, while topological spaces replace the concept of distance with a more abstract concept of nearness (Figure.1).

Space is one of physics' few basic quantities, which means it cannot be described by other quantities since nothing more fundamental is known now. It may, however, be connected to other basic quantities. As with other basic quantities (such as time and mass), space may be investigated via measurement and experimentation.Our three-dimensional space is now thought to be embedded in a four-dimensional spacetime known as Minkowski space. Spacetime assumes that time is hyperbolic-orthogonal to each of the three spatial dimensions.

Prior to Albert Einstein's work on relativistic physics, time and space were thought to be separate dimensions. Because of relativity of motion, Einstein's findings shown that our space and time may be mathematically unified into a single object-spacetime. Distances in space or time are not invariant with regard to Lorentz coordinate transformations, but distances in Minkowski space over spacetime intervals are hence the term.

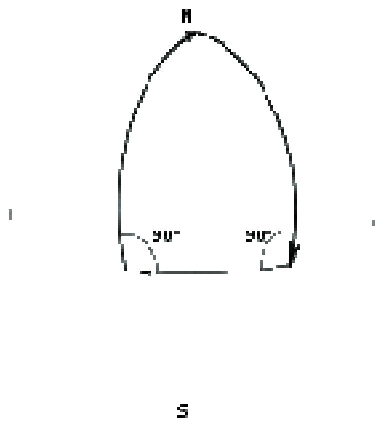

Figure 1: Spherical geometry: Diagram showing the similarity between the spherical geometry like elliptical geometry.

Furthermore, in Minkowski space, time and space dimensions are not precisely comparable. One may travel freely in space but not in time. Thus, time and space coordinates are regarded differently in special relativity where time is often considered an imaginary coordinate and general relativity where time and space components of the spacetime metric are given distinct signs.The prediction of moving ripples of space-time, known as gravitational waves, is one of the consequences of this postulate, which derives from the equations of general relativity.

While indirect evidence for these waves has been discovered for example, in the movements of the Hulse-Taylor binary system, attempts to directly measure these waves are now underway at the LIGO and Virgo consortia. On September 14, 2015, LIGO scientists revealed the first direct detection of gravitational waves.The theory of relativity raises the cosmological issue of what form the universe is and where space originates from. Space seems to have been formed 13.8 billion years ago at the Big Bang and has been expanding ever since. The overall form of space is unknown, although it is known that space is quickly expanding owing to cosmic inflation.

DISCUSSION

Measurement of space

Physical space measuring has always been significant. Although previous cultures produced measurement systems, the International System of Units (SI) is presently the most prevalent and nearly commonly used system of units in measuring space.The distance traveled by light in vacuum over a time period of precisely 1/299,792,458 of a second is now specified as a standard space interval, often known as a standard meter or simply meter. This concept, along with the current definition of the second, is based on special theory of relativity, which holds that the speed of light is a basic constant of nature.

Geographical area

Geography is the study of recognizing and characterizing places on Earth, using spatial awareness to attempt to understand why objects occur in certain areas. Cartography is the charting of areas for improved navigation, visualization, and as a locational device. Geostatistics is the application of statistical ideas to gathered spatial data of the Earth in order to provide an estimate for unseen events.Geographical space is often thought of as land, and it might have a connection to ownership use in which space is seen as property or territory. While some cultures assert individual ownership rights, others identify with a communal approach to land ownership, and still others, such as Australian Aboriginals, invert the relationship and believe they are owned by the land rather than asserting ownership rights to land.

Spatial planning is a means of controlling the use of land at the local, regional, national, and international levels. Space may also have an effect on human and cultural behavior, as it is an essential aspect in architecture, influencing the design of buildings and structures, as well as farming.Space ownership is not limited to land ownership. Ownership of airways and seas is determined on a global scale. various types of ownership have lately been established in various locations, such as radio bands of the electromagnetic spectrum or cyberspace.Public space refers to sections of land that are collectively held by the community and maintained in their behalf by delegated entities; such places are available to everyone, while private property refers to land that is culturally owned by a person or firm for their exclusive use and enjoyment.A hypothetical space defined by full homogeneity is referred to as abstract space in geography. It is a conceptual tool used to reduce superfluous factors such as geography while modeling activity or behavior[5]–[7].

In the field of psychology

In the mid-nineteenth century, psychologists started to investigate how people perceive space. Those involved in such research now see it as a different discipline of psychology. Psychologists studying space perception are interested in how identification of an object's physical appearance or interactions are experienced, as in visual space.Amodal perception and object persistence are two of the most specialized issues investigated. The perception of one's surroundings is significant since it is vital for survival, particularly in terms of hunting and self-preservation, as well as one's concept of personal space.

There are many space-related phobias, including agoraphobia (fear of open places), astrophobia (fear of celestial space), and claustrophobia (fear of confined areas).Humans are assumed to acquire three-dimensional space throughout infancy by unconscious inference, and it is strongly tied to hand-eye coordination. Depth perception refers to the visual capacity to view the environment in three dimensions.

In the field of social sciences

Marxism, feminism, postmodernism, post-colonialism, urban theory, and critical geography have all been used to study space in the social sciences. These ideas explain how the history of colonialism, transatlantic slavery, and globalization has influenced our understanding and experience of space and location. Since the publication of Henri Lefebvre's, The Production of

Space in the 1980s, the subject has sparked interest. In this work, Lefebvre uses Marxist theories about commodity production and capital accumulation to explore space as a social product. His emphasis is on the many and overlapping social processes that generate space.

David Harvey describes the "time-space compression" effect of technological advances and capitalism on our perception of time, space, and distance in his book The Condition of Postmodernity. Changes in capital production and consumption affect and are affected by developments in transportation and technology. These advancements establish ties across time and place, new markets, and groupings of rich elites in metropolitan centers, all of which obliterate distances and alter our experience of linearity and distance[8]–[10].Edward Soja defines space and spatiality as a fundamental and underappreciated part of what he calls the "trialectics of being," the three modes that influence how we inhabit, experience, and interpret the world in his book Thirdspace. He contends that critical theories in the Humanities and Social Sciences focus on the historical and social dimensions of our lived experience while ignoring the spatial dimension.

He draws on Henri Lefebvre's work to address the dualistic way in which humans understand space as material/physical or represented/imagined. Soja's "thirdspace" and Lefebvre's "lived space" are concepts that account for the complicated ways in which people comprehend and traverse the place, which "firstspace" and "secondspace" (Soja's names for material and imagined environments, respectively) do not completely include.Homi Bhabha's idea of Third Space differs from Soja's Thirdspace, even though both concepts provide a means to think outside of binary thinking. Bhabha's Third Space is the existence of hybrid cultural forms and identities. According to his beliefs, the word hybrid refers to new cultural forms that develop through the interplay between colonizers and colonized.

CONCLUSION

Space is a nearly perfect vacuum, devoid of substance and at extremely low pressure. Sound does not travel through space because there are no molecules near enough together to transfer sound between them. Space's physical characteristics are riddled with contradictions. Space appears to be empty, yet it includes significant resources of energy and matter, as well as harmful radiation fluxes. Although space appears featureless, gravitational peaks and valleys exist. Space is harsh and barren, but it provides the potential for life beyond those available on Earth. Without the ability to reach out beyond space, we may not be able to save ourselves. Although Earth is the only planet known to support life, our ability to adapt may one day allow humans to live on other planets and moons.

REFERENCES

[1] M. E. Vallejo, “Political geography of care (or why the pandemic of coronavirus confined much of the global north),” *Geopolitica(s)*, 2020, doi: 10.5209/GEOP.69252.

[2] T. Karpouzoglou and S. Vij, “Waterscape: a perspective for understanding the contested geography of water,” *Wiley Interdiscip. Rev. Water*, 2017, doi: 10.1002/WAT2.1210.

[3] R. Boschma and K. Frenken, “Evolutionary economic geography,” in *The New Oxford Handbook of Economic Geography*, 2018. doi: 10.1093/oxfordhb/9780198755609.013.11.

[4] R. W. Mann *et al.*, "The importance of human osteological collections: Our past, present, and future," *Forensic Sci. Int.*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.forsciint.2021.110895.

[5] M. Espinel, "Geografia política de los cuidados (O por qué la pandemia de coronavírus confino a gran parte del Norte global)," *Geopolitica(s)*, 2020.

[6] D. Simandan, "Distance," in *International Encyclopedia of Human Geography, Second Edition*, 2019. doi: 10.1016/B978-0-08-102295-5.10723-1.

[7] P. Kraftl, "What are alternative education spaces - And why do they matter?," *Geography*, 2014, doi: 10.1080/00167487.2014.12094406.

[8] C. Royle, "Introduction: Friedrich Engels and geography," *Hum. Geogr. Kingdom)*, 2021, doi: 10.1177/19427786211024211.

[9] G. Comparato, "(De)construyendo los estudios del turismo y la geografía(s). Una aproximación a las mutaciones en América Latina a partir de la segunda posguerra," *Geogr. Rev. Digit. para Estud. Geogr. y Ciencias Soc.*, 2018, doi: 10.14198/geogra2018.9.111.

[10] L. Instone, "Situating nature: On doing cultural geographies of Australian nature," *Aust. Geogr.*, 2004, doi: 10.1080/0004918042000249430.

CHAPTER 4

DIFFERENT TYPE OF THE GEOGRAPHIC LOCATION

Dr. Syed Yaseen, Associate Professor,
School of Commerce, Jain Deemed to be University, Bangalore, India,
Email Id- syedyaseen@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Geographic location refers to the physical location of a statistical unit where statistics are gathered and distributed. The absolute position of a place is its actual location on Earth, which is commonly described in terms of latitude and longitude. The Empire State Building, for example, is positioned at 40.7 degrees north latitude and 74 degrees west longitude (longitude). It is located at the corner of 33rd Street and Fifth Avenue in New York City, New York, USA.

KEYWORDS:

Coordinate System, Latitude Longitude, Over Time, Property Location, Sense Place.

INTRODUCTION

In geography, the terms location or place refer to a region (point, line, or area) on the Earth's surface. The word location often suggests a greater degree of certainty than place, the latter frequently denoting an entity with an uncertain border, dependent on human or social aspects of place identity and sense of place rather than geometry. A settlement is an inhabited area.

Types

A well-defined name is probable for a locality, settlement, or inhabited location, although a poorly defined border fluctuates depending on context (Figure.1). London, for example, has a legal limit, although it is unlikely to be totally consistent with common use. An region inside a town, such as Covent Garden in London, is virtually always ambiguous in terms of its size. Location is regarded more exact than "place" in geography.A displacement from another site describes a related location or circumstance. "3 miles northwest of Seattle" is one example[1]–[3].

Absolute location

A precise pairing of latitude and longitude in a Cartesian coordinate grid (for example, a spherical coordinate system or an ellipsoid-based system such as the World Geodetic System) or similar approaches may be used to indicate an absolute position. For example, the coordinate system may be used to describe the location of New York City in the United States as 40.7128°N (latitude), 74.0060°W (longitude).

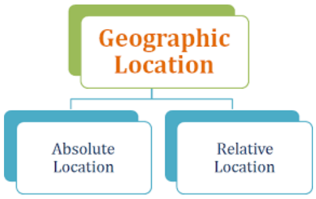

Figure 1: Geographic location: Diagram showing the types of the geographic location (One stop GIS).

Because absolute positions are represented relative to something else, they are also relative places. Longitude, for example, is the number of degrees east or west of the Prime Meridian, a line picked at random to pass through Greenwich, England. Latitude, on the other hand, is the number of degrees north or south of the equator. Because latitude and longitude are represented relative to these lines, a latitude and longitude position is also a relative location.

A cluster of concepts regarding place and identity in geography, urban planning, urban design, landscape architecture, environmental psychology, ecocriticism, and urban sociology/ecological sociology is referred to as place identity or place-based identity. Place identity may also be referred to as urban character, neighborhood character, or local character. In the past 25 years, place identity has emerged as a critical problem in urban planning and design. Place identity is concerned with the meaning and importance of places for its occupants and users, as well as how these meanings contribute to people's self-conceptualizations.

Place identity is also related to the contexts of modernity, history, and representational politics. That is, historical determinism overlaps historical events, social locations, and groupings based on gender, class, and ethnicity. In this approach, it investigates how places have developed through time by delving into social constructions and the evolution of space, location, and power. To the same degree, the politics of representation is brought into play, since the formation of place identity in a community is linked to exclusion or inclusion in that group. Some say that place identification has become a site of social transformation as a result of this since it provides marginalized population's agency over their own places. It is also suggested that, from a top-down perspective, place identity has been utilized to influence societal change and perpetuate inequality by constructing segregated areas for underprivileged people. Attachment to and feeling of location.

It is connected to the notions of place attachment and sense of place in various respects. Place identity is closely tied to community formation notions because it emphasizes that physical places do not only bind a community together, but that social relationships also play a role in community development. These social factors are often sentiments of belonging and security, which entail theoretical community forms Community forms defined in Community: Seeking Safety in an Uncertain World operate as links created by same locale, culture, language, kinship, and/or experiences. Furthermore, identification conceptualizes sentiments of security and freedom when one is able to self-identify, particularly when it comes to fostering agency over community development. Furthermore, comparable and shared cultural, linguistic, and geographical experiences build a feeling of community.

Fostering community is often seen as an extension of agency, since when a community achieves a feeling of place and place attachment, it helps people to reaffirm their own identities and enhance their links within their community. Place identification methodologies typically use qualitative approaches such as interviewing, participant observation, discourse analysis, and mapping a variety of physical features. Some urban planners, urban designers, and landscape architects collaborate with local communities to alter existing places and create new ones via deliberative planning, design charettes, and participatory design. This kind of planning and design procedure is known as placemaking.

Study of cases

Massachusetts's Cape Code

Lee Cuba and David M. Hummon concentrate on Cape Cod, Massachusetts people and how social and environmental variables influence place identification. Place identity was characterized in terms of "at-homeness" through existence, affinities, and location. To gauge good replies for existence, community members were asked whether they felt at home in Cape Cod. Place affiliation was measured using open-ended replies regarding why community members feel at home. "Do you associate feeling at home with living in this particular house or apartment, with living in this community, or with living on the Cape, in general was used to calculate locus. The majority of responders said they felt "at home."

The Great Lakes of Michigan and Ontario

Michigan and the Great Lakes are examined to determine the values and relationships held by Michigan inhabitants. A questionnaire was sent to Michigan citizens to determine their level of attachment. The questionnaire was made up of statements, which were graded on a five-point Likert scale. As a consequence, "Michigan's voters have developed a strong sense of place regarding the state," according to the research. These two case studies demonstrate that place is much more than simply a physical location. Understanding how to quantify a feeling of place helps policymakers in making decisions and developing prospective policy implementation. Policymakers will take community concerns into account sooner and more extensively throughout the planning process if they comprehend a community's beliefs in connection to place identity.

The phrase "sense of place" has been used in a variety of contexts. It is a multifaceted, complicated concept that describes the link between humans and physical environments. It is a feature that some geographic areas have and others do not, but to others it is an emotion or impression held by individuals (rather than by the place itself). It is often used in reference to features that distinguish or distinguish a location, as well as those that generate a feeling of genuine human connection and belonging. Others, such as geographer Yi-Fu Tuan, have alluded to "negative" perceptions of location, such as terror.

Some students and educators participate in "place-based education" to develop their "sense(s) of place," as well as to employ different features of place as instructional tools in general. The phrase is used in urban and rural studies to refer to community place-making and connection to their area or homeland. The word sense of place refers to how a person sees and feels a location or environment. Sense of place is defined by anthropologists Steven Feld and Keith Basso as "the experiential and expressive ways places are known, imagined, yearned for, held, remembered, voiced, lived, contested, and struggled over. As a result of climate change and "ancestral homeland, land rights, and the preservation of sacred places," many indigenous societies are losing their sense of place.

Geographical location

Cultural geographers, anthropologists, sociologists, and urban planners investigate why some locations retain unique significance for certain people or animals. Locations have a strong "sensidentity that is profoundly felt by residents and tourists. Place sense is a social phenomenon. Codes aimed at protecting, maintaining, and improving sites of importance include "World Heritage Site" designations, "Areas of Outstanding Natural Beauty" regulations in the United Kingdom, and "National Historic Landmark" designations in the United States.

Place Lessness

Places that lack a "sense of place" are frequently referred to as "placeless" or "inauthentic". Cultural geographer Edward Relph analyzes the "placelessness" of these locales. These sites are referred to as "non-places" by anthropologist Marc Augé. In order to avoid the reductive thinking that might result from placelessness, Jesuit philosopher Michel de Certeau uses the word "space" rather than "place" (lieu) to refer to these placeless situations in his book, The Practice of Everyday Life. "Space is merely composed of intersections of mobile elements" that are not in stasis, according to de Certeau. Place, on the other hand, is defined as space that has been organized in some manner to meet a human need. A park, for example, is a space that has been built "in accordance with which elements are distributed in coexistence relationships" and so "implies an indication of stability." De Certeau's insights were useful in comprehending the intersections of power and social connections in the production of place. Placelessness, or "space," was a location for freedom for de Certeau, or at least a venue for what Timotheus Vermeulen describes as a "potentially anarchic movement."

Placeless landscapes are those that have no special relationship to the places in which they are located—they could be anywhere; examples of placeless landscape elements include roadside strip shopping malls, gas/petrol stations and convenience stores, fast food chains, and chain department stores. Some historic sites or districts are regarded as having lost their sense of place because they have been highly commercialized for tourists and new housing developments. The phrase "there is no there there" by Gertrude Stein has been used to describe such settings.

Formation of a feeling of location

Human geographers, social psychologists, and sociologists have investigated the development of a feeling of place. Their methods include comparing locations, learning from elders, and studying natural catastrophes and other occurrences. Environmental psychologists have stressed the significance of childhood experiences and have measured correlations between early exposure to natural surroundings and later-life environmental preferences. Learning about one's surroundings as a youngster is heavily impacted by direct experience, as well as the role of family, culture, and community. Human geographers refer to the specific relationship that forms between infants and their early environs as a "primal landscape." This early setting becomes a part of one's identity and serves as a vital point of reference when contemplating succeeding locations later in life. As adults, individuals tend to assess new areas in respect to the baseline landscape they encountered as children. A feeling of place develops over time and via habitual activities in an unknown setting, a process that may be hampered by interruptions in patterns or rapid changes in the environment.

In the context of climate change, a feeling of place, followed by knowledge of the changes and disaster-related destruction of place, leads to sadness and solastalgia. According to research, these emotional experiences are intrinsically adaptive, and communal processing and reflection on them is recommended in order to enhance resilience and a feeling of belonging. Some initiatives in post-disaster settings try to re-establish a feeling of place via a participative approach.

Music and setting

Ethnomusicologists, like anthropologists, sociologists, and urban geographers, have started to emphasize music's role in determining people's "sense of place." According to Martin Stokes, a British ethnomusicologist, people may develop a concept of "place" via music that signifies their position in the world in terms of social borders and moral and political hierarchies. Stokes contends that music has the power to actively modify a specific environment rather than just reflecting current social arrangements. Music that denotes location may "perform" a knowledge of social limits and hierarchies that individuals use to negotiate and comprehend their own and others' identities, as well as their relationship to place.

Ethnomusicologist George Lipsitz's study on the performance of Mexican-American cultural identity in Los Angeles is one example of music's significance in establishing a sense of place. Walter Benjamin once suggested that cultural items have grown more distant from their original context and site of formation in reaction to mechanical replication and increasingly commodified forms of culture. In this context, ethnomusicologist George Lipsitz says that the cultural identity of minority populations excluded from political authority and cultural acknowledgment is marked by a sense of invisibility and isolation. Lipsitz examines the postmodern cultural strategies (such as bifocality, juxtaposition of multiple realities, intertextuality, inter-referentiality, and families of resemblance) employed by Chicano rock-and-roll musicians in Los Angeles during the late 1980s to define a sense of place within popular culture. Lipsitz observes how Mexican-American rock-and-roll singers' music actively reveals a "conscious cultural politics that seeks inclusion in the American mainstream by transforming it.[4]–[6]"

DISCUSSION

This chapter describes the Oracle Communications Unified Inventory Management (UIM) capabilities that allow you to specify the geographical location of your inventory. In UIM, there are two techniques to model geographic locations:The nature of place entities is hierarchical. They allow you to designate places as elements of geographical hierarchies like Country, Province, City, and Area. See "Places" for further details.Property Location entities are designed to let you define the locations of devices and services on your network. See "Property Locations" for further details.Property locations may be included in Place entity hierarchies. For example, you might define property locations for sites that host equipment and incorporate them in Place entity hierarchies that represent geographic regions.

You describe geographic entities that may be found on a map using Place requirements, such as a state, city, street, postal address, campus, or building. Place entities provide a solution to the business issue of where other inventory entities (such as subscribers, services, equipment, and service terminations) are situated.There are four basic kinds of Place specifications that specify various geographical entities: Geographic references are used to define locations.Addressspecifies methods for locating locations based on textual information.Address

Range is a range that specifies a collection of addresses, such as an address with a low and high street number. Site refers to locations that do not have a single, exact location, such as a regional office. They may also be used for areas where the actual location may vary over time, such as a cell site. Sites may develop over time since they are relatively vaguely defined. For example, you could need to arrange a VPN without knowing where the VPN sites are. Configurations may be created to keep track of changes.UIM contains a related entity type named Location, which you use to describe connectivity-related places. See "Property Locations" for further details.You may use geocodes to identify Place entities and allow geographic visualizations of your network or organization. More information about geocoding may be found in the UIM System Administrator's Guide and the UIM Developer's Guide.Latitude and longitude are the universal geographic coordinate systems. To input latitude and longitude, you must use decimal degrees. A Dallas location, for example, may be stated in decimal degrees of 32.93499 and -97.00791.

The V&H (vertical and horizontal) coordinate system of North America. The V & H coordinate system is used by telecommunications providers to compute distances between sites for tariffs, call rating, and revenue sharing. A Dallas location, for example, may be stated as 8398, 4037.Both coordinate systems are accessible for a location, but you can only input one in UIM. When you input coordinates for one sort of coordinate system, the other coordinate system for that place object is disabled.The Location type is used for locations that may be properly described by geographic references. Locations might be extremely precise, such as a home, or more generic, such as a city.

A location hierarchy is required to examine your network components visually and drill down the view from a high level to a lower one.You may, for example, define a structure as address, city, state, and country. 7460 Warren Parkway, for example, might exist in the city of Frisco, in the state of Texas, in the nation of the United States. When examining networks visually, you may examine networks at the national level, then drill down to the state level, and finally to the local level.Each sort of location has its own location definition in Oracle Communications Design Studio. Create a Place specification for address, a city specification, a state specification, and a country specification, for example. Select the Location entity type for each of them. A location hierarchy may be created in UIM.

Create your place first using the relevant location criteria. Use the nation specification specified in Design Studio, for example, to construct the nation Ireland. The instructions for creating locations may be found in the UIM Help. When building places, you may also include your geographic information.under UIM, hierarchies are created under the Place Hierarchy section of the Place Summary page. If you construct numerous cities, for example, you open the state in which the cities are located and assign the cities to the state. Figure 10-1 depicts a geographic hierarchy utilizing nation, state, and city. The methods to build a location and associate it with the relevant hierarchy may be found in the UIM Help.

You may also assign responsibilities to locations in UIM. A location, for example, may be assigned the position of Headquarters. In the Roles area of the Place Summary page, you give roles to place entities. To be used with Place entities, role requirements must be created in Design Studio. For further information, see "About Roles."An address is a written description of a place or site. Address types are controlled independently of Location or Site types since a location or site might have several addresses.You may, for example, limit the list of countries accessible for selection in UIM to just those for which entities exist. For example, if the UIM database only contains entities from the United States, the United Kingdom, and Canada, only those nations are accessible for selection. In Design Studio, you specify an Address definition for this behavior by using the entity link feature. For further information, see the Design Studio Help.Address Range is used to specify groups of addresses, such as those used in MSAG (Master Street Address Guide) implementations. Add address component properties to the Address Range definition to specify the range. You may also link the Address Range specification to the Address specification that it specifies a range for.An address range might be associated with resources or services that serve a range of addresses. Address ranges may be used with rulesets to test that new addresses are inside a range. More information on rulesets may be found in the UIM Developer's Guide[7]–[10].

A site is an undefined location, such as a school, cell site, or VPN site. A site, unlike a location, is not always connected to precise geographic coordinates. Sites may develop over time since they are relatively vaguely defined. For example, you could need to arrange a VPN without knowing where the VPN sites are. You can keep track of changes by creating place configurations.If a site has numerous distinct locations, you may include them in the site's place hierarchy. For example, if you develop a site entity for a campus, you may create locations for each of its buildings and include them in the place hierarchy of the site.Place settings support versioning, allowing you to define how a site is realized and what resources are allotted to a site's configuration elements over time. For general configuration information, see "Configurations".Place Configuration requirements are used to monitor changes to sites. You may attach entity specifications using the Specifications Options tab. This connection limits the sorts of entities that the site may assign or reference.Some entities are place-enabled, which means they may be associated with locations. You may, for example, link a place to a piece of equipment. In UIM, these connections are made in the Places area of the entity's Summary page. You may also explain the role that the location performed in its engagement with the entity. See "Involvements" for further information about involvements. Property Location entities are related to but not the same as Place entities. The capacities of the two entities vary. Property Location entities are currently only utilized with connection. In all other cases, place entities are utilized.A Property Location entity denotes a plot of land with well-defined legal borders. It is the lowest-level hierarchy element that indicates a place (country, state/province, city, street address).Property Location entities vary from most other entities in that they are all based on the same specification. Entity-level features may be used to enhance the default data components of Property Location entities.

A property address is a written description of how to locate a property. Property addresses are distinct entities, however they can only be found as part of a property location. When you create property locations, they are automatically generated. Only property locations may be linked to property addresses.A principal property address is necessary when creating a property location. The address fields (Street Address, Apt/Room/Suite, City, Sub Area, State, Postal Code, and Country) are merged to generate the property location's default name value.You may alter the default value and set the property name to the network location code value. However, for service locations, the property name must be unique. If you alter a service location's default property name to a non-unique value, UIM shows an error.

The geocoding system returns one or more addresses from which you may choose. You have the option of accepting one of the proposed addresses, accepting the current, non-validated address, or choosing not to validate or accept the address.When you pick one of the potential addresses, the geocoding system's data changes the values in the address fields. Furthermore, the latitude and longitude are updated (unless the coordinate values have been locked).

CONCLUSION

Physical and human characteristics define places. Their physical qualities include landforms, climate, soils, and hydrology. Language, religion, political systems, economic systems, and population distribution are all examples of human features. Geographic region of origin refers to the region in which the migrant lived at the start of the defined time and which he or she departed throughout the period. These regions include areas such as a census metropolitan area, a province or territory, or a nation. The biological state of a species being unique to a particular geographic area, such as an island, nation, country, or other defined zone, or habitat type; creatures that are indigenous to a place are not endemic to it if they are also found elsewhere.

REFERENCES

[1] R. MacNamara, T. K. McCarthy, H. Wickström, and P. D. Clevestam, "Fecundity of silver-phase eels (Anguilla anguilla) from different habitat types and geographic locations," *ICES J. Mar. Sci.*, 2015, doi: 10.1093/icesjms/fsv065.

[2] J. Addo *et al.*, "Association between socioeconomic position and the prevalence of type 2 diabetes in Ghanaians in different geographic locations: The RODAM study," *J. Epidemiol. Community Health*, 2017, doi: 10.1136/jech-2016-208322.

[3] J. Yang and L. Ren, "Government-Industry-Education-Research Collaboration in Tourism: University's Perspective," *J. Hosp. Tour. Res.*, 2021, doi: 10.1177/10963480211000823.

[4] M. Lopes *et al.*, "Indoor air quality study using low-cost sensors," *WIT Trans. Ecol. Environ.*, 2020, doi: 10.2495/AIR200011.

[5] N. U. Evoh Peternwaike, "A systematic literature review on criminological research on the history of cybercrime focusing on type of crime and geographic origin of the perpetrators," *Lit. Rev. Criminol. Res. Hist. cybercrime*, 2021.

[6] H. Habtom, Z. Pasternak, O. Matan, C. Azulay, R. Gafny, and E. Jurkevitch, "Applying microbial biogeography in soil forensics," *Forensic Sci. Int. Genet.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.fsigen.2018.11.010.

[7] H. J. Lee, Y. E. Choi, and S. W. Lee, "Complex relationships of the effects of topographic characteristics and susceptible tree cover on burn severity," *Sustain.*, 2018, doi: 10.3390/su10020295.

[8] Q. You, J. Eidt, P. Bell-Rogers, and H. Y. Cai, "Diversity of Mycoplasma hyopneumoniae strains from pigs across Ontario, Canada," *J. Vet. Diagnostic Investig.*, 2020, doi: 10.1177/1040638719896283.

[9] P. Pal Bariha, "Customer Loyalty Program and Retention Relationship," *Psychol. Educ. J.*, 2021, doi: 10.17762/pae.v58i1.2012.

[10] Y. Han, S. J. Goetz, and C. Schmidt, "Visualizing spatial economic supply chains to enhance sustainability and resilience," *Sustain.*, 2021, doi: 10.3390/su13031512.

CHAPTER 5

A BRIEF OVERVIEW OF THE TIME AND HISTORICAL GEOGRAPHERS

N Sathyanarayana, Assistant Professor,
School of Commerce, Jain Deemed to be University, Bangalore, India,
Email Id- n.sathyanarayana@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Time geography is an integrated approach for studying the interactions between social and natural systems. In order to enhance ecological and social sustainability, it tackles problems with environmental harm brought on by human activity and aims to understand more about how people live. Historical geography, often known as the study of the geography of a place or region during a certain period in time or the analysis of how a place or region's geography has evolved over time.

KEYWORDS:

Constraints Limitations, Human Geography, Historical Geography, Time Geography, Visual Language.

INTRODUCTION

Time geography, also known as time-space geography, is a developing transdisciplinary view of spatial and temporal processes and events such as social interaction, ecological interaction, societal and environmental change, and human biographies. Time geography is "not a subject area in and of itself," but rather an integrated ontological framework and visual language in which place and time are fundamental components of dynamic process analysis. Human geographers invented time geography, but it is now used in a variety of sectors including transportation, regional planning, geography, anthropology, time-use studies, ecology, environmental science, and public health."It is a basic approach," says Swedish geographer Bo Lenntorp, "and every researcher can connect it to theoretical considerations in her or his own way."

Origins

Torsten Hägerstrand, a Swedish geographer, established temporal geography in the mid-1960s based on concepts he developed during his previous empirical study on human movement patterns in Sweden. He wanted "a physical approach involving the study of how events occur in a time-space framework" to "discover the workings of large socio-environmental mechanisms."[6] Hägerstrand was influenced by conceptual advancements in spacetime physics as well as physicalist philosophy. Hägerstrand's initial formulation of time geography informally described its key ontological features: "In time-space, the individual describes a path" within a situational context; "life paths become captured within a net of constraints, some imposed by physiological and physical necessities and some imposed by private and common decisions." "It would be impossible to provide a comprehensive taxonomy of constraints seen as time-space phenomena," Hägerstrand admitted, but he "tentatively described" three major groups of constraints[1]–[3]:

capability constraintslimitations on individuals' activity due to their biological structure and/or the tools they can command, coupling constraints limitations that "define where, when, and for how long, the individual has to join other individuals, tools, and materials in order to produce, consume, and transact" (closely related to critical path analysis), and authority constraintslimitations on the domain or "time-space entity within. Hägerstrand illustrated these concepts using novel forms of graphical notation (inspired in part by musical notation), such as: the space-time aquarium (or space-time cube), which displays individual paths in an axonometric graphical projection of space and time coordinates; the space-time prism, which shows individuals' possible behavior in time-space given their capability constraints and coupling constraints.

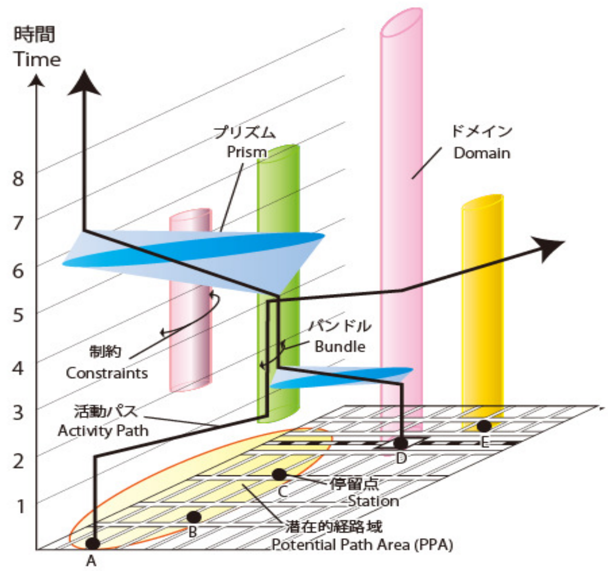

Figure 1: Visual language of time geography: Diagram showing the example of the Visual language of time geography.

While this creative visual language is an important aspect of temporal geography, Hägerstrand's colleague Bo Lenntorp stressed that it is the result of an underlying ontology, not the other way around. The notation system is a valuable tool, but it is a poor representation of a comprehensive worldview. In many situations, the notational equipment has been the distinguishing feature of temporal geography (Figure.1). The most significant element, however, is the underlying ontology."Time geography is more than simply time-geographic representations, just as music is more than just musical notation. "What is briefly alluded to here is a 4-dimensional world of forms," Hägerstrand subsequently remarked. This cannot be fully shown visually. On the other hand, one should be able to see it well enough to use it as a guide in empirical and theoretical study."By 1981, geographers Nigel Thrift and Allan Pred were defending time geography against those who saw it as "merely a rigid descriptive model of spatial and temporal organization which lends itself to accessibility constraint analysis (and related exercises in social engineering)." They contended that time geography is more than simply a constraint model; it is a flexible and growing way of thinking about reality that may supplement a broad range of ideas and research approaches. Hägerstrand and others have worked for decades to elaborate on his initial set of thoughts. By the end of his life, Hägerstrand had abandoned the concept "time geography" in order to employ words like topoecology instead.

Subsequent Developments

Time geography has been employed by academics in the social sciences, biological sciences, and transdisciplinary subjects since the 1980s.According to Gillian Rose, a British geographer, "time-geography shares the feminist interest in the quotidian paths traced by people, and again, like feminism, links such paths, by thinking about constraints, to the larger structures of society." She did, however, notice that temporal geography had not been applied to concerns essential to feminists, which she referred to as "social science masculinity." In the decades thereafter, feminist geographers have returned to temporal geography and began to utilize it as a tool to address feminist challenges. Geographic information system (GIS) software has been created to calculate and evaluate time-geographic issues at various geographical scales. Various kinds of network datasets (such as pedestrian networks, highway networks, and public transport timetables) and visualization methodologies have been employed in such assessments. GeoTime, for example, is specialized software that facilitates time-geographic visualization and visual analytics.In mental health, time geography has also been employed as a sort of therapeutic evaluation. Benjamin Bach and colleagues expanded the space-time cube into a paradigm for temporal data visualization that applies to any data in two dimensions plus time.Time geography methods were used to identify close relationships in the COVID-19 pandemic.The pandemic restricted human physical movement, which prompted novel uses of temporal geography in the increasingly virtualized post-Covid age.

Historical geography is the field of geography that explores how geographic phenomena change through time. It is a synthesizing discipline having topics and methods in common with history, anthropology, ecology, geology, environmental studies, literary studies, and other disciplines. Although human geography accounts for the bulk of historical geography research, the topic also includes studies of non-anthropogenic spatial change. Historical geography is often a key component of geography and social studies curriculum in schools and universities (Figure.2). Scholars from more than forty nations are now doing historical geography research.

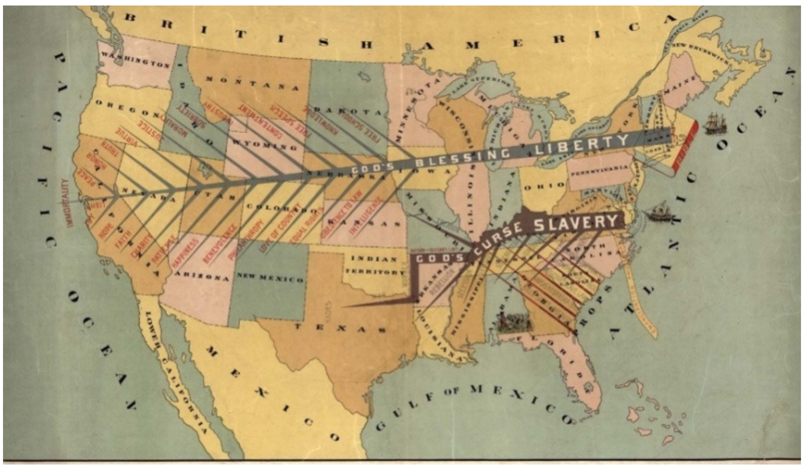

Figure 2: Historical geography: Diagram showing the map of the Historical geography (Briannica).

Historical geography tries to analyze the interaction of diverse cultures across the world with their local environment and surrounds in order to discover how cultural elements developed and evolved.Historical geography was difficult to describe as a topic in its early days. A prior term is described as a 'unsound effort by geographers to explain history' in a textbook from the 1950s.Its creator, J. B. Mitchell, strongly believes that "the historical geographer is a geographer first, last, and always." By 1975, the inaugural issue of the Journal of Historical Geography had broadened the field to include 'the works of researchers of any disciplinary origin who have something to say on problems of geographical relevance pertaining to past time'.

In the United States of America, the phrase historical geography refers to Carl Ortwin Sauer's program of reconstructing cultural geography some argue all geography along regional lines, which began in the early decades of the twentieth century. To Sauer, understanding a place and its cultures required taking into account all of its historical influences: physical, cultural, economic, political, and environmental. Sauer emphasized regional specialization as the only way to achieve significant competence on global areas. Sauer's concept had a major influence on American geographic thinking in the mid-twentieth century. Regional experts are still employed in academic geography departments nowadays. Despite this, some geographers believe it hurt the subject by focusing too much on data gathering and categorization and not enough on analysis and interpretation. As subsequent geographers tried to locate areas to build a name for themselves, studies got more and more area-specific. These reasons may have contributed to the 1950s geography crisis, which raised major concerns about geography as an academic field in the United States[4]–[6].

This sub-discipline of human geography is intertwined with history, environmental history, and historical ecology.a list of Historical geography is the field of geography that explores how geographic phenomena change through time. It is a synthesizing discipline having topics and methods in common with history, anthropology, ecology, geology, environmental studies, literary studies, and other disciplines. Although human geography accounts for the bulk of historical geography research, the topic also includes studies of non-anthropogenic spatial change. Historical geography is often a key component of geography and social studies curriculum in schools and universities. Scholars from more than forty nations are now doing historical geography research.

DISCUSSION

Historical geography is a branch of human geography concerned with the geographies of the past and the effect of the past on the geographies of the present and future.Prior to the twentieth century, the term 'historical geography' was used to describe at least three distinct intellectual endeavors: the recreation of the geographies described in the Bible and in 'classical' Greek and Roman narratives; the 'geography behind history' as revealed by changing state and empire frontiers and borders; and the history of geographical exploration and discovery.These early writings, fragmented and incoherent, had little influence on 20th-century historical geography, the intellectual roots of which can be traced back to late-nineteenth-century writings on regional landscape formation by French geographers such as Paul Vidal de la Blache whose influence spread into Britain through the work of H. J. Fleure and A. J. Herbertson and the German school of anthropogeographie led by Friedrich Ratzel a perspective successfully promoted.

After the First World War, the re-organization of national boundaries in Europe and the Middle East re-focused attention on regional landscapes as products of long-term economic, social, and political evolution that could be objectively analyzed through scientific interrogation of historical and archaeological evidence.The study of regional landscape change differed across national settings and was not always referred to as "historical geography." Continental European study on regional - and particularly rural - landscape transformation has persisted without the adoption of a new academic language.The so-called Annales School of history created a mass of multidisciplinary study in interwar France that may be classified as geography histories but is more often considered as a distinctly French style of history. Similarly, in Germany, historical study on rural settlement development was often seen as carrying on an established tradition of cultural landscape research rather than forging a new path in Historize Geografie.

The situation was different in the United Kingdom. Under the inspirational influence of H. C. Darby, the phrase "historical geography" was used more often in this context. Darby's historical geography had many parallels with study on the history of the English landscape conducted concurrently by social and economic historians such as W. G. Hoskins and Maurice Beresford.

It was characterized, however, by a unique process in which historical data sources were meticulously analyzed in order to create aesthetically appealing thematic mapping. Darby considered historical geography to be an essentially geographical endeavor, one of the 'twin pillars' of the greater subject, along with geomorphology. Darby insisted that historical geography and geomorphology were both concerned with landscape formation and evolution, with the latter relying primarily on field evidence derived from the natural environment itself, and the former relying on historical evidence gleaned from archival sources, particularly those that allowed geographical patterns to be recreated as cartographic cross-sections that could be linked into longitudinal (vertical) historical sequences.

Darby's cross-sectional technique was illustrated by his seven-volume reconstruction of medieval England's human geography, published with partners between the early 1950s and the mid 1970s and based on Domesday Book material. Darby's longitudinal technique is shown in his study of altering fenland landscapes in eastern England.Darby's version of historical geography spread to other parts of the English-speaking world, particularly the former British colonies, but regional landscape change research in the United States developed along distinct lines under the influence of Carl Sauer, the doyen of the Berkeley school of cultural geography. Sauer avidly wrote on historical geography, but his own work is more generally referred to as cultural geography, reflecting his interest in anthropological and archaeological data, as emphasized by the German tradition of lands haft study.

According to Sauer, this was a better model for studying long-term landscape change in a 'New World' environment because the scale of research had to be higher and recorded historical information was non-existent prior to European arrival. However, it is worth noting that some of the most effective 'big-picture' narratives of US history since Columbus have been published by American historical geographers working outside of the Sauerian tradition.The spread of spatial science, the quantitative, analytical, and law-seeking version of geography, in the 1960s and 1970s, called into question some of the assumptions and practices of traditional historical geography, particularly source-defined, cross-sectional studies that had little direct influence on present or future geographical patterns. A vigorous argument occurred, with part of it taking place in the pages of the Journal of Historical Geography, which was founded in 1975 to elevate the stature of the sub-discipline. As a result of this time of ambiguity, many types of historical research evolved within geography.

The first was promoted by historical geographers who were tired with conventional source-bound empiricism and welcomed a statistical technique that enabled a diverse variety of historical information to be included into increasingly complicated models of geographical development.As a consequence, a more quantitative historical geography has emerged, starting with Torsten Hgerstrand's pioneering explorations into 'time geography,' which have left an indelible imprint.Statistically oriented historical geographers were also prominently engaged in the study of demographic history, notably in the United Kingdom, where E. A. Wrigley had a major influence. In Wrigley's case, this included an institutional transition from geography to economic and social history, a well-worn but far from unidirectional career route. These multidisciplinary personnel exchanges explain why some of the most significant research on Britain's agricultural history has been produced by historians who began their careers as historical geographers.

The extremely complex studies of epidemiology and disease dissemination, work frequently characterized as historical geography by its authors, also demonstrate the continued relevance of quantitative historical study within geography. The growing discipline of historical geographical information science attests to the enumerative trend in historical geography.Other historical geographers, especially those who had read hitherto unknown material in critical and social theory, were less impressed by spatial science's assertions. Some of the initial proponents of a quantitative approach changed their minds and eventually rejected the positivist philosophical principles that underpin spatial research. Statistical explanation, in their opinion, lacked the potential for moral or political criticism and failed to recognize human agency, purpose, and emotion[7]–[9].

Traditional kinds of historical geography could barely claim a better track record; thus the answer was to construct a critical, theoretically informed historical geography inside a new, historically sensitive human geography, rather than to defend old methodologies.Some saw this as requiring a more direct engagement with historical materialism and a prolonged investigation of the fundamental economic, social, and political processes affecting geographical change, an approach heavily inspired by advances in social and economic history in the 1960s and 1970s.Harvey's analysis of mid-nineteenth-century Parisexemplified this style of historical geography, though the same concerns can be found in less explicitly Marxist work on the historical geography of Britain produced during the 1970s and early 1980s, particularly research on the urban-industrial revolution.Since the mid-1980s, new historical geographies of space, power, and social order have been influenced by a variety of poststructuralist thinkers, most notably Michel Foucault.

A second assault on spatial science resulted in a somewhat different form of historical study. This attempted to link geography with a broader variety of disciplines in the arts and humanities, based in part on hermeneutic theory and practice. While sympathetic to historical forms of geographical inquiry, the leading proponents of a broadly humanistic geography refused to privilege the past as an arena of investigation and, as a result, have tended to define their work as (new) cultural geography linked to the visual arts and cultural studies rather than history.The cultural landscape has been the central focus of this type of historical inquiry, and there is now a rich geographical literature on the subject, including several theoretically ambitious attempts to uncover the origins and development of landscape as a social and political construction, as well as a way of envisioning and representing space.Investigations on the link between landscape, heritage, and tourism, as well as the relationship between landscape and memory, continue to pique people's interest. Studies on twentieth-century debates regarding landscape, identity, and social activity have been particularly significant.

These diverse modes of historical inquiry in geography, which were always inextricably linked, have practically fused during the last two decades. The single, hybrid phrase 'cultural-historical geography' is now extensively used to characterize a certain kind of geographical study in which three closely connected issues have recently motivated contemporary research.First, the study of imperialism and colonialism has become more essential. This has changed the emphasis of historical geography studies from the developed to the developing globe. It has also shown how landscapes, identities, and social values were shaped by a process of imperial interaction including the worldwide movement of people, practices, and ideas between the imperial core regions and colonial territories of Africa and Asia.

Second, since the colonial endeavor was primarily concerned with acquiring and exploiting natural resources in colonized countries, most of the current work on the historical geography of colonialism has concentrated on its environmental repercussions. This is hardly an unnoticed phenomenon given the historically strong link between historical geography and environmental history, notably in the United States.Recent environmentalism, on the other hand, has produced a more politically charged historical geography that has investigated the influence of natural resource extraction on regional and urban development.Among them are overtly Marxist historical geographies of class, race, and the physical environment in industrializing countries.

Third, because Western science, including geography, was directly involved in the processes of agricultural and industrial transformation, urbanization, and imperial expansion studied by historical geographers, there has been renewed interest in the critical history of post-Enlightenment geographical and environmental thought.This study, inspired in part by the literary critic Edward Said's works, has emphasized the fundamental importance of geographical knowledge in the formation of national and imperial identities. It has also reconnected historical geography with the history of cartography, the latter topic having been re-energized by Brian Harley's similarly inspired work.Since the 1970s, no one methodological or philosophical orthodoxy has dominated, and historical geography has grown more heterogeneous. This illustrates the expanding impact of ideas from other disciplines, but it is also indicative of a broader 'historicization' of human geography, which has jeopardized historical geography's place as a separate sub-discipline.

This has caused some concern regarding disciplinary identity, as seen by recent discussions over the validity of words like "historical geography" and "geographical history."Despite its thematic diversity, 21st-century historical geography has become increasingly focused on the recent past, a trend driven in part by the need for reliable, spatially extensive data, but also by the simplistic assumption that historical research in geography should have immediate relevance to contemporary issues.Time geography, also known as time-space geography, is a developing transdisciplinary view of spatial and temporal processes and events such as social interaction, ecological interaction, societal and environmental change, and human biographies. Time geography is "not a subject area in and of itself," but rather an integrated ontological framework and visual language in which location and time are fundamental components of dynamic process analysis. Human geographers invented time geography, but it is now used in a variety of sectors including transportation, regional planning, geography, anthropology, time-use studies, ecology, environmental science, and public health. "It is a basic approach," says Swedish geographer Bo

Lenntorp, "and every researcher can connect it to theoretical considerations in her or his own way."

Torsten Hägerstrand, a Swedish geographer, established temporal geography in the mid-1960s based on concepts he developed during his previous empirical study on human movement patterns in Sweden. He wanted "a physical approach involving the study of how events occur in a time-space framework" in order to "discover the workings of large socio-environmental mechanisms." Hägerstrand was influenced by conceptual advancements in spacetime physics as well as physicalist philosophy. Hägerstrand's initial formulation of time geography informally described its key ontological features: "In time-space, the individual describes a path" within a situational context; "life paths become captured within a net of constraints, some imposed by physiological and physical necessities and some imposed by private and common decisions." "It would be impossible to offer a comprehensive taxonomy of constraints seen as time-space phenomena," Hägerstrand said, but he "tentatively described" three important classes of constraints: capability constraints — limitations on individual activity due to biological structure and/or the tools they can command, coupling constraints — limitations that "define where, when, and for how long the individual has to join other individuals, tools, and systems," coupling constraints limitations that "define where, when[10],

the space-time aquarium (or space-time cube), which shows individual paths in an axonometric graphical projection of space and time coordinates; the space-time prism, which shows individuals' possible behavior in time-space given their capability constraints and coupling constraints; bundles of paths, which are the joining of individual paths due in part to their capability constraints and coupling constraints, and which help to create "pockets of local order"; coherence. While this creative visual language is an important aspect of temporal geography, Hägerstrand's colleague Bo Lenntorp stressed that it is the result of an underlying ontology, not the other way around. The notation system is a valuable tool, but it is a poor representation of a comprehensive worldview. In many situations, the notational equipment has been the distinguishing feature of temporal geography. The most significant element, however, is the underlying ontology."Time geography is more than simply time-geographic representations, just as music is more than just musical notation. "What is briefly alluded to here is a 4-dimensional world of forms," Hägerstrand subsequently remarked. This cannot be fully shown visually. On the other hand, one should be able to see it well enough to use it as a guide in empirical and theoretical study."

By 1981, geographers Nigel Thrift and Allan Pred were defending time geography against those who saw it as "merely a rigid descriptive model of spatial and temporal organization which lends itself to accessibility constraint analysis (and related exercises in social engineering)."They contended that time geography is more than simply a constraint model; it is a flexible and growing way of thinking about reality that may supplement a broad range of ideas and research approaches. Hägerstrand and others have worked for decades to elaborate on his initial set of thoughts. By the end of his life, Hägerstrand had abandoned the concept "time geography" in order to utilize words like topoecology instead.

A space-time prism schematic and illustration utilizing transit network data: A schematic model of a space-time prism is shown on the right, and a map of the possible path area for two distinct time budgets is shown on the left. Time geography has been employed by academics in the social sciences, biological sciences, and transdisciplinary subjects since the 1980s. According to Gillian

Rose, a British geographer, "time-geography shares the feminist interest in the quotidian paths traced by people, and again, like feminism, links such paths, by thinking about constraints, to the larger structures of society."

She did, however, notice that temporal geography had not been applied to concerns essential to feminists, which she referred to as "social science masculinity." In the decades thereafter, feminist geographers have returned to temporal geography and began to utilize it as a tool to address feminist challenges. Geographic information system (GIS) software has been created to calculate and evaluate time-geographic issues at various geographical scales. Various kinds of network datasets (such as pedestrian networks, highway networks, and public transport timetables) and visualization methodologies have been employed in such assessments.To assist time-geographic visualization and visual analytics, specialized software such as GeoTime has been created.The space-time cube has been developed by Benjamin Bach and others into a framework for temporal data visualization that applies to any data that can be represented in two dimensions plus time.Time geography techniques are being used to detect close relationships in the COVID-19 pandemic. The pandemic also limits human physical mobility, necessitating new means of temporal geography in the increasingly virtualized post-Covid world.

CONCLUSION

Activities, stations, space-time pathways, bundles, limitations, and space-time prism are some of the key fundamental time-geographical notions.The area of geography known as historical geography is the study of how geographical phenomena have evolved over time. It is a synthesizing discipline having connections to history, anthropology, ecology, geology, environmental studies, literary studies, and other subjects on both a thematic and methodological level.The geographical environment in which the historical record formed is intrinsically related to it. "Understanding the temporal aspect of human experience is important to history. Understanding the spatial aspect of human experience is central to geography.

REFERENCES

[1] C. McGeachan, "Historical geography I: What remains?," *Prog. Hum. Geogr.*, 2014, doi: 10.1177/0309132514546449.

[2] J. L. Harris, "Blogs as Time Capsules of Data: Exploring the Value of Blogs for Research in Human Geography," *Prof. Geogr.*, 2021, doi: 10.1080/00330124.2021.1915823.

[3] D. DeLyser, "Towards a participatory historical geography: Archival interventions, volunteer service, and public outreach in research on early women pilots," *J. Hist. Geogr.*, 2014, doi: 10.1016/j.jhg.2014.05.028.

[4] B. Bender, "Landscape: Politics and Perspectives," *Explorations in Anthropology*. 1993.

[5] S. Sultana Knapp, Paul, "Editors'Introduction,"*Southeast. Geogr.*, 2020.

[6] P. Balogh, "The concept of the Carpathian Basin: its evolution, counternarratives, and geopolitical implications," *J. Hist. Geogr.*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.jhg.2020.12.003.

[7] N. L. Falcon, N. N. Ambraseys, and C. P. Melville, "A History of Persian Earthquakes," *Geogr. J.*, 1983, doi: 10.2307/634025.

[8] T. F. Gieryn, "A s p s," *Annu. Rev. Sociol.*, 2000.

[9] V. S. Morgan, “Anarchy, Geography, Modernity: Selected Writings of Elisée Reclus,” *AAG Rev. Books*, 2016, doi: 10.1080/2325548x.2016.1146000.

[10] T. C. Chiang, “Historical geography in China,” *Progress in Human Geography*. 2005. doi: 10.1191/0309132505ph537oa.

CHAPTER 6

GEOLOGIC TIME SCALE AND THEIR BENEFITS

Dr. Pooja Kumari, Assistant Professor,
School of Commerce, Jain Deemed to be University, Bangalore, India,
Email Id- k.pooja@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

The geologic time scale separates the history of the earth into periods depending on the types of life that have been there since the planet's formation. Geochronologic units are what we refer to as these divisions. The four eons that make up Earth's history are known as the Hadeon, Archean, Proterozoic, and Phanerozoic, from oldest to youngest. Because the precise timing of spatially separated events enables us to recreate the surface and surface conditions of the ancient planet, time is a particularly significant variable in geology.

KEYWORDS:

Chronostratigraphic Unit, Greek Word, Geologic Time, Million Years, Time Span.

INTRODUCTION

Scale is the level at which a geographical phenomenon happens or is described in geography. This notion is drawn from cartography's map scale. Geographers use many scales to describe geographical phenomena and differences. Scale is used to explain how detailed an observation is from an epistemological standpoint, but scale is inherent in the intricate interplay between society and nature from an ontological one.Scale is an important notion in geography. To examine any geographical phenomena, the size or resolution must first be determined, since various scales or resolutions may result in different observations and hence different findings. This is known as scale effect or scale dependence. For example, the answer to the classic question "How Long Is the Coast of Britain" is strongly reliant on the choice of cartographic scales.Scale effect and zoning impact various means of zoning lead to different statistical findings combined in cartography and spatial analysis may lead to modifiable areal unit issue (MAUP).

In geography, the word "scale" may refer to spatial, temporal, or spatio-temporal dimensions, although it usually but not always refers to spatial scale in spatial analysis. In various contexts, the term "scale" may have quite distinct implications, which can be classed as followsGeographic scale or observation scale: the geographical scope of a research. A geographical analysis of the whole United States, for example, would be called large-scale, but a study of a single city would be labeled small-scale. Cartographic size or map scale: a large-scale map encompasses a smaller area but has more detail, while a small-scale map encompasses a bigger area but contains less information. The geographical scope of a given phenomenon. Orogeny, for example, occurs on a far wider scale than the creation of a river pothole[1]–[3].

The geologic time scale, often known as the geological time scale (GTS), is a time representation based on Earth's rock record. It is a chronological dating technique that employs chronostratigraphic the act of linking strata to time and geochronology a scientific area of geology aimed at determining the age of rocks. Earth scientists (geologists, paleontologists, geophysicists, geochemists, and paleoclimatologists) utilize it largely to define the time and linkages of events in geologic history. The time scale was created by studying rock strata, observing their correlations, and recognizing traits such lithologies, paleomagnetic properties, and fossils. The International Commission on Stratigraphy (ICS), a constituent body of the International Union of Geological Sciences (IUGS), is in charge of defining standardized international units of geologic time. Their primary goal is to precisely define global chronostratigraphic units of the International Chronostratigraphic Chart (ICC) that are used to define divisions of geologic time. In turn, the chronostratigraphic divisions are utilized to establish geochronologic units.While certain regional words are still used,the table of geologic time provided in this page adheres to the ICS's nomenclature, ages, and color codes since this is the official, reference worldwide geologic time scale - the International Geological Time Scale.

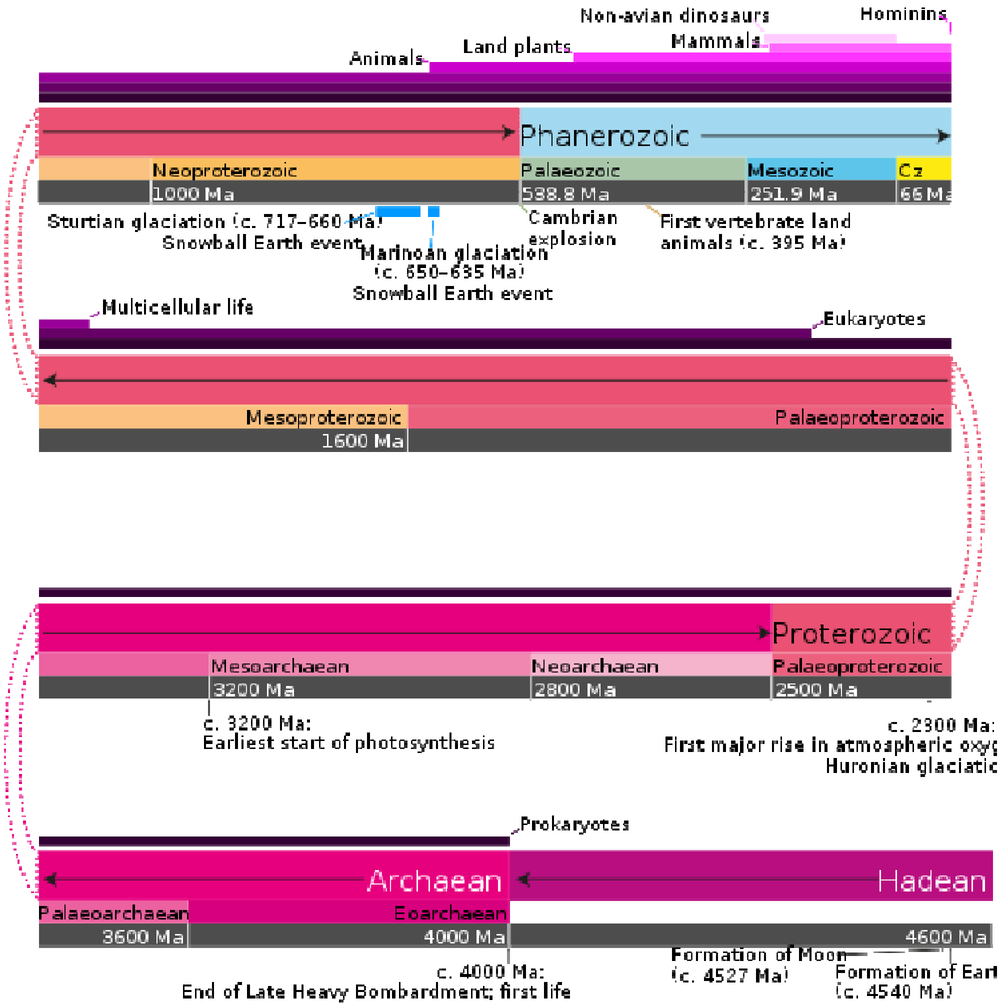

Figure 1: Diagram showing the geologic time scale with proportional representation of eons/eonothems and eras/erathems.

Principles

The geologic time scale is a method of representing deep time by observing fundamental changes in stratigraphy that correspond to major geological or paleontological events over a time span of about 4.54 0.05 Ga (4.54 billion years). The Cretaceous-Paleogene extinction event, for example, defines the lower border of the Paleogene System/Period and hence the boundary between the Cretaceous and Paleogene Systems/Periods (Figure.1). To divide geologic time anterior to the Cryogenian, arbitrary numeric boundary definitions (Global Standard Stratigraphic Ages, GSSAs) are utilized. There have been proposals to better reconcile these differences with the rock record.

Historically, regional geologic time scales were used owing to litho- and biostratigraphy variances in time equivalent rocks over the planet. The International Commission on Stratigraphic Units (ICS) has long tried to resolve contradictory terminology by establishing globally relevant and recognizable stratigraphic horizons that may be used to designate the lower bounds of chronostratigraphic units. The use of worldwide, consistent nomenclature is enabled by defining chronostratigraphic units in this way. This continued endeavor is represented by the ICC.

The following rules govern the relative relationships of rocks in defining their chronostratigraphic positions. Unless the succession has been reversed, newer rock layers will lie on top of older rock beds.Originally deposited rock layers continue laterally in all directions until they thin out or are cut off by another rock layer.This term refers to the fact that each stratum in a succession has a separate group of fossils. This enables stratum correlation even when the horizon between them is not continuous.A rock feature that cuts through another must be younger than the rock it cuts through.Small bits of one rock embedded in another must have formed first and been included when the second rock developed. Unconformity relationships - Geologic structures that signify periods of erosion or non-deposition, showing non-continuous sediment deposition.

Terminology

Stratigraphy, Chronostratigraphic, Biostratigraphy, Magnetostratigraphic, Lithostratigraphy, and Geochronology are other terms for the same thing.The GTS is organized into chronostratigraphic units and their geochronologic counterparts. These are reflected on the ICC issued by the ICS, although regional names continue to be used in certain places.Chronostratigraphic is the branch of stratigraphy that deals with the relationship between rock bodies and the relative measurement of geological time. It is the act of assigning separate strata between specified stratigraphic horizons to indicate a relative period of geologic time.A chronostratigraphic unit is a layered or unlayered body of rock defined between specific stratigraphic strata that reflect specified geologic time periods. The hierarchical chronostratigraphic units are eonothem, erathem, system, series, subseries, stage, and substage.Geochronology is the scientific branch of geology that aims to determine the age of rocks, fossils, and sediments either through absolute (e.g., radiometric dating) or relative means (e.g., stratigraphic position, Paleomagnetism, stable isotope ratios) (Figure.1).

A geologic time subdivision is a geochronologic unit. It is a numerical representation of an intangible attribute (time). The hierarchical geochronologic units are eon, era, period, epoch, sub epoch, age, and sub age. Geochronometry is the discipline of geochronology that mathematically quantifies geologic time.A Global Boundary Stereotype Section and Point (GSSP) is a globally agreed upon reference point on a stratigraphic section that establishes the lower bounds of stages on the geologic time scale.

A Global Standard Stratigraphic Age (GSSA) is a single-digit chronologic reference point used to determine the basis of geochronologic units prior to the Cryogenian. These are arbitrary locations that are utilized when GSSPs have not yet been established. There is ongoing research to establish GSSPs for the basis of all units now specified by GSSAs.When geochronology refines the geochronometry, the numeric (geochronometric) representation of a geochronologic unit may and is more often susceptible to change, but the corresponding chronostratigraphic unit stays constant and is less commonly revised. For example, the boundary between the Ediacaran and Cambrian Periods (geochronologic units) was revised in early 2021 from 541 Ma to 538.8 Ma, but the rock definition of the boundary (GSSP) at the base of the Cambrian has not changed, and thus the boundary between the Ediacaran and Cambrian Systems (chronostratigraphic units) has not changed; only the geochronometry has been refined.

The quantitative values on the ICC are represented by the unit Ma (megaannum), which means "million years." For example, 201.4 0.2 Ma, the bottom border of the Jurassic Period, is defined as 201,400,000 years old with a 200,000-year uncertainty. Other SI prefix units regularly used by geologists include Ga (gigaannum, billion years) and ka (kiloannum, thousand years), the latter of which is frequently expressed in calibrated units (before present).

Geologic time divisions

An eon is the greatest (formal) geochronologic time unit and corresponds to a chronostratigraphic eonothem. There are four officially defined eons/eonothems as of October 2021: the Hadean, Archean, Proterozoic, and Phanerozoic.An era is the equivalent of a chronostratigraphic erathem and is the second biggest geochronologic time unit. As of April 2021, there are 10 recognized eras/erathems (Table.1).A period is a significant rank that comes after an era but before an epoch. It is the geochronologic equivalent of a chronostratigraphic system. As of April 2021, there are now 22 identified periods/systems.The Carboniferous Period/System, however, has two subperiods/subsystems.

Table 1: The geologic time scale's formal, hierarchical components, from greatest to smallest (Wikipedia).

Chronostratigraphic unit (strata)	Geochronologic unit (time)	Time span
Eonothem	Eon	Several hundred million years to two billion years
Erathem	Era	Tens to hundreds of millions of years
System	Period	Millions of years to tens of millions of years
Series	Epoch	Hundreds of thousands of years to tens of

		millions of years
Subseries	Subepoch	Thousands of years to millions of years
Stage	Age	Thousands of years to millions of years

Between a period and an age, the smallest geochronologic unit is an epoch. It is the equivalent of a chronostratigraphic series. There are now 37 designated and one informal epochs/series as of April 2021. There are 11 subepochs/subseries, all of which are Neogene and Quaternary in age. The usage of subseries/subepochs as official ranks/units in international chronostratigraphy was confirmed in 2021.An age is the lowest hierarchical geochronologic unit that corresponds to a chronostratigraphic stage.There are now 96 official and five informal ages/stages as of April 2021.

A chron is a non-hierarchical formal geochronology unit of unspecified rank that correlates with magnetostratigraphic, lithostratigraphic, or biostratigraphic units because they are based on previously defined stratigraphic units or geologic features.The Early and Late subdivisions are utilized as the geochronologic equivalents of the Lower and Upper chronostratigraphic units, e.g., the Early Triassic Period (geochronologic unit) is used in lieu of the Lower Triassic Series (chronostratigraphic unit).In essence, rocks representing a given chronostratigraphic unit are that chronostratigraphic unit, and the time they were laid down is the geochronologic unit, i.e., the Silurian Series rocks are Silurian Series rocks, and they were deposited during the Silurian Period.

Geologic time naming

The names of geologic time units are specified for chronostratigraphic units, with the corresponding geochronologic unit having the same name but with a modification to the latter (for example, Phanerozoic Eonothem becomes Phanerozoic Eon). Erathem names in the Phanerozoic were selected to highlight important changes in Earth's history: Paleozoic (old life), Mesozoic (middle life), and Cenozoic (new life) (Table.2). The origins of system names vary, with some reflecting chronologic location (e.g., Paleogene) and others indicating lithology (e.g., Cretaceous), geographical (e.g., Permian), or tribe (e.g., Ordovician). The majority of presently recognized series and subseries are called for their location within a system/series (early/middle/late); however, the ICS urges that all new series and subseries be named after a geographic feature near its stratotype or type locality. Stage names should also be taken from a geographical feature in the stratotype or type location[4]–[6].

Table 2: Table summarized the time span and etymology name.

Name	**Time Span**	**Duration (million years)**	**Etymology of name**

Quaternary	2.6 to 0 million years ago	2.58	First introduced by Jules Desnoyers in 1829 for sediments in France's Seine Basin that appeared to be younger than Tertiary rocks.
Neogene	23 to 2.6 million years ago	20.45	Derived from the Greek words νέος (*néos*) meaning 'new', and γενεά (*geneá*) meaning 'genesis' or 'birth'.
Paleogene	66 to 23 million years ago	42.97	Derived from the Greek words παλιός (*palaiós*) meaning 'old', and γενεά (*geneá*) meaning 'genesis' or 'birth'.
Cretaceous	~145 to 66 million years ago	~79	Derived from *Terrain Crétacé* used in 1822 by Jean d'Omalius d'Halloy in reference to extensive beds of chalk within the Paris Basin.[15] Ultimately derived from the Latin crēta meaning (*chalk*).
Jurassic	201.4 to 145 million years ago	~56.4	Named after the Jura Mountains. Originally used by Alexander von Humboldt as 'Jura Kalkstein' (Jura limestone) in 1799. Alexandre Brongniart was the first to publish the term Jurassic in 1829.
Triassic	251.9 to 201.4 million years ago	50.502	From the *Trias* of Friedrich August von Alberti in reference to a trio of formations widespread in southern Germany.
Permian	298.9 to 251.9 million years ago	46.998	Named after the historical region of Perm, Russian Empire.

Carboniferous	358.9 to 298.9 million years ago	60	Means 'coal-bearing', from the Latin carbō (*coal*) and ferō (*to bear, carry*).
Devonian	419.2 to 358.9 million years ago	60.3	Named after Devon, England.
Silurian	443.8 to 419.2 million years ago	24.6	Named after the Celtic tribe, the Silures.
Ordovician	485.4 to 443.8 million years ago	41.6	Named after the Celtic tribe, Ordovices.
Cambrian	538.8 to 485.4 million years ago	53.4	Named for Cambria, a latinised form of the Welsh name for Wales, *Cymru*.
Ediacaran	635 to 538.8 million years ago	~96.2	Named for the Ediacara Hills. Ediacara is possibly a corruption of the Kuyani words 'Yata Takarra' meaning hard or stony ground.
Cryogenian	720 to 635 million years ago	~85	From the Greek words κρύος (*krýos*) meaning 'cold', and, γένεσις (*génesis*) meaning 'birth'.
Tonian	1,000 to 720 million years ago	~280	From the Greek word τόνος (*tónos*) meaning 'stretch'.
Stenian	1,200 to 1,000 million years ago	200	From the Greek word στενός (*stenós*) meaning 'narrow'.
Ectasian	1,400 to 1,200 million years ago	200	From the Greek word □κτ□σ□ς (*éktasis*) meaning 'extension'.
Calymmian	1,600 to 1,400 million years ago	200	From the Greek word κάλυμμ□ (*kálumma*) meaning 'cover'.
Statherian	1,800 to 1,600 million years ago	200	From the Greek word σταθερός (*statherós*) meaning 'stable'.
Orosirian	2,050 to 1,800 million years ago	250	From the Greek word □ροσειρά (*oroseirá*) meaning 'mountain range'.

Rhyacian	2,300 to 2,050 million years ago	250	From the Greek word ῥύαξ (*rhýax*) meaning 'stream of lava'.
Siderian	2,500 to 2,300 million years ago	200	From the Greek word σίδηρος (*sídēros*) meaning 'iron'.

While Arthur Holmes did not develop a modern geological time scale until 1911, the wider notion that rocks and time are connected may be traced back to (at least) the philosophers of Ancient Greece. Xenophanes of Colophon (c. 570-487 BCE) observed rock beds with fossilized shells located above sea level, interpreted them as once living organisms, and used this to imply an unstable relationship in which the sea had at times transgressed over the land and at other times regressed. This view was shared by a few of Xenophanes' contemporaries and those who followed, including Aristotle (384-322 B The concept of deep time was also recognized by Chinese naturalist Shen Kuo(1031–1095) and Islamic scientist-philosophers, notably the brothers of Purity, who wrote on the processes of stratification over the passage of time in their treatises.

Their work likely inspired that of the 11th-century Persian polymath Avicenna (Ibn Sînâ, 980–1037) who wrote in The Book of Healing (1027) on the concept of stratification and superposition, pre-dating Nicolas Steno by more than six centuries. Avicenna also recognised fossils as "petrifications of the bodies of plants and animals", with the 13th-century Dominican bishop Albertus Magnus (c. 1200–1280) extending this into a theory of a petrifying fluid.These works appeared to have little influence on scholars in Medieval Europe who looked to the Bible to explain the origins of fossils and sea-level changes, often attributing these to the 'Deluge', including Ristoro d'Arezzo in 1282. It was not until the Italian Renaissance when Leonardo da Vinci (1452–1519) would reinvigorate the relationships between stratification, relative sea-level change, and time, denouncing attribution of fossils to the 'Deluge'.

Of the stupidity and ignorance of those who believe that the Deluge carried these creatures to such remote locations from the sea.Why do we find so many fragments and whole shells between the different layers of stone unless they were on the shore and were covered over by newly thrown up by the sea earth, which then petrified? And if the aforementioned Deluge had carried them here from the sea, you would only find the shells at the edge of one layer of rock, not at the edge of many where the sea multiplied the layers of sand and mud brought down by neighboring rivers and spread them over its shores. And if you want to assert that there must have been several deluges in order to build these strata and shells amid them, you must also confirm that such a downpour occurred every year.

While views against Genesis were not readily accepted and dissent from religious doctrine was in some places unwise, scholars such as Girolamo Fracastoro shared da Vinci's views and found the attribution of fossils to the 'Deluge' absurd.Niels Stensen, sometimes known as Nicolas Steno (1638-1686), is credited with inventing four of the governing principles of stratigraphy. Because all of the materials sitting on any particular stratum was fluid when it created, none of the higher strata existed when the lowest stratum developed. When a stratum developed, it was either surrounded at its boundaries by another solid material or covered the whole earth's surface. As a result, whenever bared edges of strata are seen, either a continuation of the same stratum or another solid structure that prevented the strata's material from dispersing must be sought. A body or discontinuity that crosses a stratum must have developed after that stratum[7]–[9].

These are the principles of superposition, original horizontality, lateral continuity, and cross-cutting connections, in that order. Steno deduced from this that strata were set down in succession and inferred relative time (time from Creation, according to Steno). While Steno's assumptions were straightforward and drew a lot of attention, implementing them proved difficult. These fundamental principles, albeit with enhanced and more nuanced interpretations, remain the underlying basis of identifying stratum connection relative geologic time.

DISCUSSION

The apparent, earliest formal division of the geologic record with respect to time was introduced by Thomas Burnet, who applied a two-fold terminology to mountains by identifying "montes primarii" for rock formed during the "Deluge," and younger "monticulos secundarios" formed later from the debris of the "primarii." These primary and secondary divisions were expanded upon by Giovanni Targioni Tozzetti (1712-1783) and Giovanni Arduino (1713-1795) to include tertiary and quaternary divisions. These divisions were used to describe both the time period during which the rocks were laid down, as well as the collection of rocks themselves (i.e., Tertiary rocks and Tertiary Period).

Only the Quaternary division is still used in the present geologic time scale, but the Tertiary division was used until the early twenty-first century. The Neputism and Plutonism theories would compete into the early nineteenth century, with the work of James Hutton (1726-1797), in particular his Theory of the Earth, first presented before the Royal Society of Edinburgh in 1785, being a key driver for resolution of this debate.Hutton's theory would later become known as uniformitarianism, popularised by John Playfair(1748-1819) and later Charles Lyell (1797-1875) in his Principles of Instead, they used geological data to argue that Earth was considerably older, solidifying the notion of deep time.William Smith, Georges Cuvier, Jean d'Omalius d'Halloy, and Alexandre Brongniart pioneered the systematic separation of rocks by stratigraphy and fossil assemblages in the early nineteenth century. These geologists started to utilize the local names assigned to rock units more broadly, linking strata across national and continental borders based on their similarities. Many of the names below erathem/era rank that are still in use on the present ICC/GTS were decided in the early to mid-nineteenth century.

The debate over the age of the Earth was reignited in the nineteenth century, with geologists estimating ages based on denudation rates and sedimentary thicknesses or ocean chemistry, and physicists determining ages for the cooling of the Earth or the Sun using basic thermodynamics or orbital physics. These estimates ranged from 15,000 million years to 0.075 million years, depending on method and author, but Lord Kelvin's and Clarence King's estimates were All of these early geochronometric results turned out to be wrong.The discovery of radioactive decay by Henri Becquerel, Marie Curie, and Pierre Curie laid the groundwork for radiometric dating, but the knowledge and tools required for accurate determination of radiometric ages would not be available until the mid-1950s.

The formation of the IUGS in 1961 and the approval of the Commission on Stratigraphy (applied in 1965) as a member commission of the IUGS resulted in the formation of the ICS. The ICS's principal goal is "the establishment, publication, and revision of the ICS International Chronostratigraphic Chart, which is the standard, reference global Geological Time Scale to include the ratified Commission decisions".The five timelines demonstrate the geologic time scale to scale. The first depicts the whole time span from Earth's origin to the present, although it leaves little room for the most recent eon. The second timeline provides a more detailed look at the most recent eon. Similarly, the third timeline expands the most recent era, the fourth timeline expands the most recent period, and the fifth timeline expands the most recent epoch[10].

The most recent geologic eras are at the top of the table, while the oldest are at the bottom. Each table entry's height does not correlate to the length of each time subdivision. As a result, the time spans of each geochronologic unit are not adequately represented in this table, which is not to scale. whereas the Phanerozoic Eon seems to be the longest, it only lasts 539 million years (12% of Earth's history), whereas the preceding three eons last 3,461 million years (76% of Earth's history). This bias toward the most recent eon is due in part to a relative paucity of knowledge regarding events that happened over the first three eons compared to the present eon the Phanerozoic. The ICS has approved the usage of subseries/subepochs.

The table's material is based on the official ICC, which is developed and maintained by the ICS, who also offers an online interactive version of this chart. The interactive version is based on a service that provides a machine-readable Resource Description Framework/Web Ontology Language representation of the time scale and is available as a service and at a SPARQL end-point through the Commission for the Management and Application of Geoscience Information GeoSciML project.

CONCLUSION

The geologic time scale, a common chronology used to indicate the age of rocks and fossils and the events that generated them, is a crucial tool for depicting Earth history. It is divided into four main categories and covers all of Earth's history. James Hutton and William Smith reinforced the notion of geologic time and the idea of an old planet between the years of 1785 and 1800. The underlying theory that underlies the division of rocks into groups based on their relative ages was first explicitly articulated by the Scottish geologist Hutton. The eons are the longest units of geologic time. Epochs are the ultimate division of eons after periods and eras.In order to reliably date historic events, geologists frequently utilize radiometric dating techniques, which are based on the natural radioactive decay of certain elements like potassium and carbon.

REFERENCES

[1] M. D. White, P. Fu, and M. W. McClure, "Outcomes from a Collaborative Approach to a Code Comparison Study for Enhanced Geothermal Systems," *42nd Work. Geotherm. Reserv. Eng. Stanford Univ. Stanford, Calif.*, 2017.

[2] P. D. V.J. Fabry, "Calcium Carbonate Production By Coccolithophorid Algae in Long Term, Carbon Dioxide Sequestration," *Other Inf. PBD 15 Apr 2003*, 2003.

[3] Douglas L. Johnson,"Land degradation: creation and destruction," *Choice Rev. Online*, 1995, doi: 10.5860/choice.32-6210.

[4] C. Paola, V. Ganti, D. Mohrig, A. C. Runkel, and K. M. Straub, "Annual Review of Earth and Planetary Sciences Time Not Our Time: Physical Controls on the Preservation and Measurement of Geologic Time," *Annu. Rev. Earth Planet. Sci. is online earth.annualreviews.org*, 2018.

[5] M. Mingxiang and K. K. Khaing, "A New Progress of the Proterozoic Chronostratigraphical Division," *Acta Geol. Sin. (English Ed.*, 2016, doi: 10.1111/1755-6724.12764.

[6] G. H. Rau, "Enhancing the ocean's role in CO2 mitigation in global environmental change,"," in *Handbook of Global Environmental Pollution*, 2014.

[7] C. M. Oldenburg and J. T. Birkholzer, "Comparative Assessment of Status and Opportunities for Carbon Dioxide Capture and Storage and Radioactive Waste Disposal in North America," in *Advances in Global Change Research*, 2011. doi: 10.1007/978-90-481-8712-6_13.

[8] T. Nakov, E. C. Theriot, and A. J. Alverson, "Nakov, Teofil, Edward C. Theriot, and Andrew J. Alverson. Using phylogeny to model cell size evolution in marine and freshwater diatoms. Limnol. Oceanogr., 59(1), 2014, 79–86," *Limnol. Ocean.*, 2014.

[9] E. Wildeboer Schut and G. Uenzelmann-Neben, "Tying seismic data to geologic information from core data: An example from ODP Leg 177," *Geo-Marine Lett.*, 2006, doi: 10.1007/s00367-006-0033-3.

[10] A. W. Bruckner, "Proceedings of the Caribbean Acropora Workshop: Potential Application of the U.S. Endangered Species Act as a Conservation Strategy," *Proc. Caribb. Acropora Work.*, 2002.

CHAPTER 7

SPATIAL ANALYSIS AND THEIR APPLICATION IN GEOGRAPHY

ABSTRACT:

The method of using overlay and other analytical approaches to look at the positions, characteristics, and connections of features in spatial data in order to answer a query or learn something important. These methods may use spatial analysis to tackle challenging location-based challenges and gain a deeper understanding of where and what is happening in the world. It goes beyond simple mapping by enabling people to research the properties of various locations and their connections.

KEYWORDS:

Geographic Information, Geographic Data, Hydro Spatial, Spatial Autocorrelation, Spatial Regression.

INTRODUCTION

Spatial analysis refers to any of the formal procedures used to investigate items based on their topological, geometric, or geographic features. Spatial analysis encompasses a wide range of methodologies that use various analytic approaches, particularly spatial statistics. It may be used in astronomy to study the arrangement of galaxies in the universe, or in chip fabrication engineering to design complicated wire architectures using "place and route" algorithms. In a more limited sense, spatial analysis is geospatial analysis, the approach used to analyze structures at the human scale, most notably geographic data. It may also be used in genomics, such as transcriptomics data.

In spatial analysis, complex questions occur, many of which are not well defined nor totally addressed, but serve as the foundation for contemporary study. The most basic of these is determining the geographical position of the items under investigation. The classification of spatial analytic methods is complex due to the enormous number of distinct disciplines of study involved, the several basic methodologies that may be selected, and the numerous forms the data might take.

History

Early endeavors in cartography and surveying paved the way for spatial analysis. Land surveying dates back to at least 1,400 B.C. in Egypt, when the measurements of taxable land parcels were measured using measuring ropes and plumb bobs Its present form has been influenced by several areas. Botanical studies of global plant distributions and local plant locations, ethological studies of animal mobility, landscape ecology studies of vegetation blocks, ecological studies of spatial population dynamics, and biogeography research all contributed. Epidemiology provided early work on disease mapping, most notably John Snow's work mapping a cholera epidemic, study on disease propagation, and location studies for health care delivery. Statistics has made significant contributions via studies in spatial statistics[1]–[3].

Spatial econometrics has made a significant contribution to economics. Because of the relevance of geographic software in the contemporary analytic toolset, geographic information systems are presently a key contribution. Remote sensing has made significant contributions to morphometric and clustering research. The study of algorithms, particularly in computational geometry, has made significant contributions to computer science. With current work on fractals and scale invariance, mathematics continues to give essential tools for analysis and to show the complexity of the spatial universe. Scientific modeling offers a valuable platform for developing novel techniques.

Fundamental concerns

Many fundamental issues confront spatial analysis in the definition of its objects of study, the construction of the analytic operations to be used, the use of computers for analysis, the limitations and particularities of known analyses, and the presentation of analytic results. Many of these concerns are currently being researched.

Common mistakes in spatial analysis occur often, some owing to the mathematics of space, some related to the specific ways data is presented spatially, and others due to the instruments available. Census data creates a variety of statistical difficulties since it preserves individual privacy by aggregating data into local units. Because of the fractal structure of the shoreline, exact measurements of its length are difficult, if not impossible.

A computer program that fits straight lines to a coastline's curve may simply determine the lengths of the lines that it creates. However, as shown by the shoreline of Britain, these straight lines may have no intrinsic value in the actual world.Because of the importance of maps as a display medium, these challenges provide a barrier in spatial analysis. When findings are displayed as maps, the presentation mixes geographical data that is normally correct with analytic conclusions that may be wrong, giving the appearance that the analytic results are more accurate than the data would suggest.

Characterization of space

The specification of an entity's geographical presence limits the potential analyses that may be applied to that entity and determines the ultimate findings that can be drawn. While this is true for any research, it is more relevant in spatial analysis since the instruments used to describe and investigate entities promote certain characterizations of the things under investigation. Because there are relatively few statistical procedures that act directly on line, area, or volume components, statistical approaches prefer the spatial description of objects as points. Because of the restricted amount of database components and computational structures accessible, as well as the simplicity with which these elementary structures may be generated, computer tools encourage the spatial definition of things as homogenous and distinct pieces.

Dependence on space

The geographic connection of variable values (for themes defined across space, such as rainfall) or locations (for themes defined as objects, such as cities) is referred to as spatial dependency. Spatial dependency is defined as the presence of statistical dependence in a set of random variables, each of which corresponds to a distinct geographical location. Spatial dependency is important in applications where it is fair to presume the presence of a similar set of random variables at places that were not sampled. Thus, rainfall may be recorded at a set of rain gauge sites, and such readings might be thought of as the outcomes of random variables, but rainfall definitely happens at other places, and this would be random as well. Because rainfall has autocorrelation qualities, spatial interpolation methods may be used to estimate rainfall levels at sites close to observed locations.

The presence of spatial dependence, like other types of statistical dependence, generally leads to estimates of an average value from a sample being less accurate than if the samples were independent, though if negative dependence exists, a sample average can be better than in the independent case. Spatial interpolation is a different problem than estimating an overall average in that the problem is to estimate the unobserved random outcomes of variables at locations intermediate to where measurements are made, where there is spatial dependence between the observed and unobserved random variables.

Spatial correlation, spatial covariance functions, and semivariograms are all useful tools for investigating spatial dependency. Kriging, a form of best linear unbiased prediction, is one method for spatial interpolation. The concept of geographic dependency is important in geostatistics and spatial analysis.

Spatial autocorrelation

Spatial dependency is the co-variation of properties within geographic space: properties at proximal locations appear to be correlated, either positively or negatively. This leads to the spatial autocorrelation problem in statistics because, like temporal autocorrelation, it violates standard statistical techniques that assume independence among observations. Regression studies, for example, that do not account for spatial dependence might provide unstable parameter estimates and incorrect significance tests. Spatial regression approaches capture these associations while avoiding these flaws. It is also reasonable to see spatial dependence as a source of knowledge rather than a problem to be solved.

Spatial heterogeneity, or the apparent variation in a process with regard to position in geographic space, is another manifestation of locational effects. Unless an area is homogeneous and limitless, each site will have some degree of distinction from the others. This has an impact on the geographical dependence relations and, as a result, the spatial process. Because of spatial heterogeneity, total system parameters determined for the whole system may not effectively reflect the process at any specific point.

Spatial association

The degree to which items are similarly structured in space is referred to as spatial association. Map overlay is used to analyze the distribution patterns of two phenomena. If the distributions are comparable, the spatial relationship is strong, and vice versa. The study may be done statistically in a Geographic Information System. A group of data (as points or derived from raster pixels) at matching locations, for example, may be intersected and evaluated using regression analysis.This, like spatial autocorrelation, may be an effective technique for geographic prediction. The notion of spatial association in spatial modeling permits the use of variables in a regression equation to forecast the geographic field and so build a map.

The second dimension of spatial association (SDA) elucidates the relationship between spatial variables by collecting geographical information from places other than samples. In techniques of the first dimension of spatial association (FDA), which study spatial association using observations at sample sites, SDA successfully employs lacking geographical information beyond sample locations.

Scaling

geographic measuring scale is a recurrent difficulty in geographic analysis; further information is available at the subject page for the modifiable areal unit problem (MAUP). Landscape ecologists established a set of scale invariant metrics for fractal elements of ecology.In general, there is no commonly accepted scale independent technique of analysis for spatial statistics.

Sampling

Spatial sampling entails determining a limited number of locations in geographic space for faithfully measuring phenomena that are subject to dependency and heterogeneity. However, heterogeneity implies that this relationship might alter throughout space, and hence we cannot rely on an observed degree of reliance beyond a narrow area. Random, clustered, and systematic geographic sampling strategies are the most common. These fundamental methods may be implemented at several levels of a specified geographical hierarchy (for example, urban region, city, neighborhood). It is also feasible to use auxiliary data to quantify educational attainment and income, for example, by utilizing property values as a guide in a geographic sampling technique. Spatial models such as autocorrelation statistics, regression, and interpolation may also influence sample design.

Common spatial analysis errors

The underlying challenges in spatial analysis cause a slew of problems in analysis, such as bias, distortion, and blatant inaccuracies in the results produced. These concerns are often intertwined, although numerous efforts have been made to isolate specific difficulties from one another.Benoit Mandelbrot demonstrated, when describing the British shoreline, that many spatial ideas are fundamentally illogical, notwithstanding the assumption of their validity. In ecology, lengths are directly proportional to the scale at which they are measured and perceived. So, although surveyors often measure the length of a river, this length only has value in the context of the measurement technique's relevance to the subject under consideration[4]–[6].

Fallacy of location

The locational fallacy refers to inaccuracy caused by the spatial characterization selected for the components of research, namely the choice of placement for the element's spatial existence.Spatial characterizations might be too simplified or even incorrect. Human studies often limit persons' spatial existence to a single spot, such as their home address. This may easily lead to incorrect analysis, such as when contemplating illness transmission, which can occur at work or school and therefore away from home.The geographical categorization may restrict the topic of investigation implicitly. Spatial analysis of crime data, for example, has lately gained popularity, although these studies can only characterize the specific types of crime that may be defined geographically. This results in numerous maps of assault but no maps of embezzlement, which has political ramifications in the conception of crime and the implementation of policies to address the problem.

Atomic and ecological fallacy

This discusses mistakes that occur when items are seen as discrete 'atoms' outside of their geographic context. The fallacy is about converting individual conclusions to spatial units.The ecological fallacy explains mistakes that arise as a result of doing studies on aggregate data while attempting to draw conclusions about individual units. mistakes occur as a result of geographical aggregation. A pixel, for example, indicates the average surface temperatures in a certain region. The assumption that all sites in the region have the same temperature is an ecological fallacy.

Geographic space

When we have a collection of observations and quantitative measurements of their qualities, we have a mathematical space. For example, we may describe people' salaries or years of schooling inside a coordinate system in which each individual's location can be given in two dimensions. The distance between persons within this space is a quantifiable assessment of their wealth and education disparities. In spatial analysis, however, we are concerned with a particular sort of mathematical space, namely, geographic space.

The observations in geographic space correlate to places in a spatial measuring framework that represent their closeness in the actual world. The locations in a spatial measurement framework often reflect places on the Earth's surface, however this is not always the case. A spatial measuring framework may also detect closeness to, say, interplanetary space or inside a biological entity like a liver. Tobler's First Law of Geography is the essential tenet: if the interrelationship between elements grows with closeness in the actual world, then representation in geographic space and evaluation using spatial analytic methods are acceptable.

Although this is simply one option, the Euclidean distance between two points often symbolizes their closeness. In addition to Euclidean distances, there are an unlimited number of distances that may be used for quantitative analysis. In urban contexts, for example, "Manhattan" (or "Taxicab") distances where mobility is constrained to pathways parallel to the axes might be more significant than Euclidean distances(Figure.1). Other geographic linkages, such as connectedness (e.g., the presence or degree of shared boundaries) and orientation, may also impact entity interactions. It is also feasible to calculate minimum cost pathways on a cost surface, which might reflect closeness between places while traveling through rough terrain.

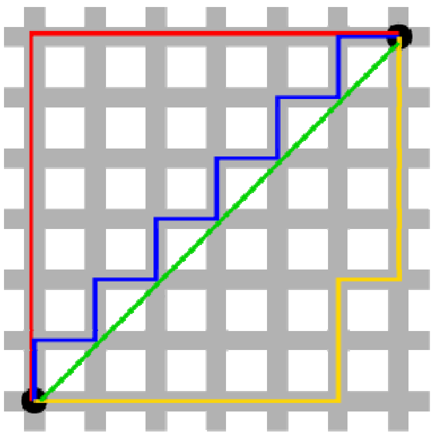

Figure 1: Diagram showing the Manhattan distance versus Euclidean distance.

DISCUSSION

Types

Spatial data comes in numerous forms, and it is difficult to develop a categorization system that is exclusive, thorough, innovative, and gratifying all at the same time--G. Upton and B. Fingelton. Large tables of spatial data acquired from censuses and surveys are dealt with in urban and regional studies. To extract the major patterns, a massive quantity of specific information must be simplified. Multivariable analysis or Factor analysis, FA allows for variable change by transforming the many variables of the census, which are usually correlated among themselves, into fewer independent "Factors" or "Principal Components" which are, in fact, the eigenvectors of the data correlation matrix weighted by the inverse of their eigenvalues. This modification in variables has two major benefits.

Due to the concentration of information on the initial new components, it is feasible to preserve just a few of them while losing only a tiny amount of information; mapping them results in fewer and more important maps.The components, or eigenvectors, are orthogonal, i.e., uncorrelated. In most situations, the main component with the highest eigenvalue is the Social Component, which divides the city's affluent and poor. Because components are not connected, additional minor processes, such as social status, that would normally be buried, surface on the second, third, factors.The distances between data are measured in factor analysis, therefore selecting a relevant metric is critical. The Euclidean metric (Principal Component Analysis), the Chi-Square distance (Correspondence Analysis), and the Generalized Mahalanobis distance (Discriminant Analysis) are among the most often used.More complex models, using communalities or rotations, have been suggested.

Using multivariate approaches in geographical analysis started in the 1950s (though some instances date back to the turn of the century) and peaked in the 1970s, as computer power and accessibility increased. Already in 1948, two sociologists, Wendell Bell and Eshref Shevky,demonstrated in a seminal publication that most city populations in the United States and around the world could be represented by three independent factors: 1- the "socioeconomic status," which opposes rich and poor districts and is distributed in sectors running along highways from the city center, 2- the "life cycle," which is the age structure of households, distributed in concentric circles, and 3- "race and ethnicity."

In 1961, British geographers used FA to classify British towns in a groundbreaking study.Brian J Berry, at the University of Chicago, and his students made extensive use of the method, applying it to the world's most important cities and exhibiting common social structures.The use of Factor Analysis in Geography, made so easy by modern computers, has been widespread but not always wise.Because the derived vectors are specified by the data matrix, comparing factors collected from various censuses is impossible. A approach is to combine many census matrices into a single table that can then be evaluated. This, however, presupposes that the variables' definitions have not changed over time and creates extremely big tables that are difficult to maintain. Psychometricianssuggest a better method, which organizes the data into a "cubic matrix" with three entries (for example, places, variables, and time periods). A Three-Way Factor Analysis produces three groups of factors linked by a small cubic « core matrix ». This method, which exhibits data evolution over time, has not been widely used in geography. However, in Los Angeles, it has demonstrated the role, previously ignored, of Downtown as an organizing center for the entire city over several decades.

Spatial autocorrelation

The degree of dependence among data in a geographic location is measured and analyzed using spatial autocorrelation statistics. Moran's, Geary's, Getis's, and the standard deviational ellipse are examples of classic spatial autocorrelation statistics. These statistics need the measurement of a spatial weights matrix, which shows the strength of the geographic association between observations in a neighborhood, such as the distances between neighbors, the lengths of shared borders, or whether they fall into a particular directional class, such as "west." Traditional spatial autocorrelation statistics apply spatial weights to the covariance connection at two sites. Significant positive spatial autocorrelation indicates the clustering of similar values across geographic space, whereas significant negative spatial autocorrelation indicates that neighboring values are more dissimilar than expected by chance, indicating a spatial pattern resembling a chess board.

Global spatial autocorrelation statistics, such as Moran's and Geary's, measure the overall degree of spatial autocorrelation given a dataset. Because of the potential of geographical variability, the estimated degree of autocorrelation may vary dramatically across geographic space. Local geographic autocorrelation statistics offer estimates at the spatial analysis unit level, enabling study of dependence connections across space. Statistics compare communities to the global average and find high autocorrelation in local areas. There are also localized versions of the and statistics.

Spatial heterogeneity

Spatial heterogeneity is a quality that is often assigned to a landscape or a population. It refers to the unequal distribution of different species concentrations within a given region. A spatially heterogeneous landscape has a mix of concentrations of several kinds of plants or animals (biological), terrain forms (geological), or climatic features (e.g., rainfall, temperature, wind). A spatially heterogeneous population is one in which different concentrations of individuals of this species are unevenly dispersed throughout an area; it is roughly identical with "patchily distributed."

Interaction in space

Spatial interaction or "gravity models" predict the movement of people, materials, or information between sites in geographic space. Origin propellant variables such as the number of commuters in residential areas, destination attractiveness variables such as the amount of office space in employment areas, and proximity relationships between the locations measured in terms such as driving distance or travel time are examples of factors. Furthermore, the topological, or connective, relationships between areas must be identified, especially given the often contradictory relationship between distance and topology; for example, two spatially close neighborhoods may not interact significantly if separated by a highway. The analyst may estimate model parameters using observed flow data and common estimation approaches such as ordinary least squares or maximum likelihood after identifying the functional forms of these connections. Competing destinations variants of spatial interaction models incorporate destination (or origin) proximity in addition to origin-destination proximity; this captures the impact of destination (origin) clustering on flows.

Interpolation of space

Spatial interpolation techniques use observed values to estimate variables at unseen places in geographic space. Inverse distance weighting is a basic strategy that attenuates the variable as it gets closer to the observed location. Kriging is a more advanced approach for interpolating over space based on a spatial lag connection that includes both systematic and random components. This allows for a broad variety of spatial correlations for hidden values between observable places. Given the expected lag connection, kriging produces ideal estimates, and incorrect estimates may be mapped to assess whether spatial patterns exist[7]–[9].

Spatial regression

Spatial regression approaches incorporate spatial dependence in regression analysis, minimizing statistical issues such as unstable parameters and inaccurate significance tests while also offering information on geographical links between variables. Spatial dependence might enter the regression model as relationships between the independent variables and the dependent, as relationships between the dependent variables and a spatial lag of itself, or as error terms, depending on the approach. Geographically weighted regression (GWR) is a localized variant of spatial regression that yields parameters that are disaggregated by the geographical units of analysis.

This allows for the study of spatial variability in the predicted correlations between the independent and dependent variables. Bayesian hierarchical modeling combined with Markov chain Monte Carlo (MCMC) approaches has recently been shown to be useful in modeling complicated interactions utilizing Poisson-Gamma-CAR, Poisson-lognormal-SAR, or Overdispersed logit models. WinBugs, CrimeStat, and many more R-based statistical programs are available for creating such Bayesian models using MCMC.Spatial stochastic processes, such as Gaussian processes, are being used more and more in spatial regression analysis. Spatial stochastic processes can be transformed into computationally effective and scalable Gaussian process models, such as Gaussian Predictive Processes (GPP) and Nearest Neighbor Gaussian Processes (NNGP).

Spatial neural networks

Spatial neural networks (SNNs) are a kind of specialized neural network (NN) that can describe and predict spatial events. They generally improve both the statistical accuracy and reliability of a-spatial/classic NNs when they handle geo-spatial datasets, as well as the statistical accuracy and reliability of other spatial (statistical) models (e.g. spatial regression models) when the variables in the geo-spatial datasets depict non-linear relationships.

Modeling and simulation

Spatial interaction models are aggregate and top-down in nature, defining an overarching regulating connection for movement across sites. This trait is shared by urban models based on mathematical programming, economic sector flows, or bid-rent theory. An alternate modeling viewpoint is to represent the system at the greatest degree of disaggregation feasible and explore the bottom-up formation of complex patterns and linkages through individual behavior and interactions.

When applied to spatial analysis, complex adaptive systems theory implies that simple interactions among proximal entities may evolve to elaborate, enduring, and functioning spatial entities at aggregate levels. Cellular automata and agent-based modeling are two essentially spatial simulation approaches. Cellular automata modeling imposes a set spatial framework, such as grid cells, and provides rules that govern a cell's state depending on the states of its neighbors. Spatial patterns form throughout time when cells change states dependent on their neighbors, altering the environment for future time periods. Cells, for example, may represent metropolitan areas and their states might reflect various sorts of land use.

Office districts and urban sprawl are examples of patterns that may develop from simple interactions of local land users. Agent-based modeling employs software entities (agents) with intentional behavior (goals) and the ability to respond, interact, and affect their environment while pursuing their goals. Simulysts, unlike cells in cellular automata, may enable agents to move about in space. For example, one may simulate traffic flow and dynamics by using agents that represent individual cars and attempt to reduce trip time between defined sources and destinations. While attempting to reduce travel time, the agents must avoid colliding with other cars that are also attempting to reduce travel time.

Agent-based modeling and cellular automata are complementary modeling techniques. They may be incorporated into a common geographic automata system with some stationary agents and others mobile.Calibration is critical in both the CA and ABM simulation and modeling methodologies. Early approaches to CA proposed robust calibration methods based on stochastic, Monte Carlo methods.ABM approaches rely on agents' decision rules (often extracted from qualitative research base methods such as questionnaires). Recent Machine Learning Algorithms calibrate using training sets, for example, to understand the qualities of the built environment.

MPS (multiple-point geostatistics)

The primary goal of any MPS method is to perform spatial analysis on a conceptual geological model. The approach evaluates the geological model's spatial statistics, known as the training picture, and develops realizations of the phenomena that honor those input multiple-point statistics.Honarkhah's pattern-based technique is a contemporary MPS algorithm used to achieve this job. In this method, a distance-based approach is utilized to evaluate the patterns in the training picture. This enables the reconstruction of the training image's multiple-point statistics as well as its complicated geometrical aspects. Each MPS algorithm output is a realization that represents a random field. Several realizations together may be used to assess spatial uncertainty.

Tahmasebi et al. offer one recent strategy that employs a cross-correlation function to enhance spatial pattern reproduction. The CCSIM algorithm is the name given to their MPS simulation approach. This approach can calculate spatial connectedness, variability, and uncertainty. Furthermore, the approach is unaffected by data type and can replicate both categorical and continuous situations. The CCSIM technique may be used to any stationary, non-stationary, or multivariate system and can provide a high-quality visual appeal model.

Analysis of geospatial and hydro spatial data

Geospatial and hydro spatial analysis is a method of applying statistical analysis and other analytic methods to data with a geographical or spatial component. This kind of study would usually make use of software capable of displaying maps, processing spatial data, and applying analytical techniques to terrestrial or geographic datasets, including the usage of geographic information systems and geomatics[10].

Use of geographic information systems

Geographic information systems (GIS) use geospatial and hydrospatial analyses in a number of settings, processes, and applications. GIS is a wide domain that includes a variety of capabilities meant to acquire, store, alter, analyze, manage, and show various forms of geographical data.GIS-based geospatial and hydrospatial analysis was created for challenges in the environmental and biological sciences, namely ecology, geology, and epidemiology. It has spread to almost every industry, including defense, intelligence, utilities, Natural Resources (such as oil and gas, forestry, and so on), social sciences, medicine, and public safety (such as emergency management and criminology), disaster risk reduction and management (DRRM), and climate change adaptation (CCA). Observation, rather than experimentation, is often used to generate spatial statistics. The aquatic side and members connected to the water surface, column, bottom, sub-bottom, and coastal zones are notably employed for hydrospatial.

Fundamental operations

Vector-based GIS is commonly associated with operations such as map overlay (combining two or more maps or map layers based on predefined rules), simple buffering (identifying regions of a map within a specified distance of one or more features, such as towns, roads, or rivers), and similar fundamental operations. This parallels (and is mirrored in) the Open Geospatial Consortium (OGC) "simple feature specifications" usage of the word spatial analysis. This often refers to a set of actions taken to the grid cells of one or more maps (or pictures) in raster-based GIS, which is extensively used in environmental sciences and remote sensing. These actions frequently include filtering and/or algebraic operations (map algebra).

These techniques involve processing one or more raster layers according to simple rules, resulting in a new map layer, such as replacing each cell value with some combination of the values of its neighbors, or computing the sum or difference of specific attribute values for each grid cell in two matching raster datasets. This general phrase spatial analysis often includes descriptive statistics such as cell counts, means, variances, maxima, minima, cumulative values, frequencies, and a variety of other measurements and distance calculations. Spatial analysis encompasses a wide range of statistical approaches (descriptive, exploratory, and explanatory statistics) that are used to data that varies geographically and over time. Getis-ord Gi and Anselin Local Moran's I are sophisticated statistical approaches used to discover clustering patterns of geographically referenced data.

Advanced operations

Geospatial and hydro spatial analysis go beyond simple 2D and 3D mapping and spatial statistics. It is multidimensional as well as chronological, and it includes Surface analysis – analyzing physical surface qualities such as gradient, aspect, and visibility, as well as surface-like data "fields". Network analysis entails investigating the features of natural and man-made networks in order to comprehend the behavior of flows inside and around such networks, as well as locational analysis. GIS-based network analysis may be used to solve a broad variety of practical issues, including route selection and facility siting (both important themes in operations research) and flow-related problems encountered in hydro spatial, hydrology, and transportation research. In many cases, location difficulties are related to networks and are handled using tools built for this purpose; yet, in other cases, existing networks may be irrelevant or impracticable to include into the modeling process.

Non-network constrained problems, such as new road or pipeline routing, regional warehouse location, mobile phone mast positioning, or the selection of rural community health care sites, can be effectively analyzed (at least initially) without reference to existing physical networks. Locational analysis "in the plane" is also useful when adequate network datasets are unavailable, are too vast or costly to use, or the location technique is particularly sophisticated or requires the inspection or simulation of many different configurations.

Geovisualization – the development and modification of pictures, maps, graphs, charts, 3D views, and the tabular datasets that go with them. GIS programs are increasingly offering such features, such as static or rotating views, draping photos over 2.5D surface representations, animations and fly-throughs, dynamic linking and brushing, and spatio-temporal visualizations (Figrue.2). This second class of tools is the least developed, reflecting in part the restricted variety of appropriate datasets and analytical methodologies available, however this picture is fast changing. All of these features supplement the main tools used in spatial analysis throughout the analytical process (data exploration, pattern and connection discovery, model creation, and result communication).

Geospatial and hydro spatial computing has traditionally been done on personal computers (PCs) or servers. Geospatial computing in mobile devices, on the other hand, is a rapidly growing trend due to the increasing capabilities of mobile devices.The portable nature of these devices, as well as the presence of useful sensors, such as Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) receivers and barometric pressure sensors, make them useful for capturing and processing geospatial and hydro spatial information in the field.

In addition to the local processing of geospatial information on mobile devices, cloud-based geospatial computing is an emerging trend. Data may be gathered in the field using mobile devices and then communicated to cloud-based servers for additional processing and eventual storage under this architecture. Geospatial and hydro spatial information may be made accessible to connected mobile devices in a similar way through the cloud, giving access to enormous databases of geospatial and hydro spatial information everywhere there is a wireless data connection.

GIS and the underlying geographic information science that improves these technologies have a significant impact on spatial analysis. Because of the increased capacity to gather and manage geographic data, spatial analysis is taking place in more data-rich situations. Remotely sensed images, environmental monitoring systems such as intelligent transportation systems, and location-aware technology such as mobile devices that can transmit position in near-real time are examples of geographic data collection systems. GIS systems enable the management of this data, the computation of geographical connections such as distance, connectivity, and directional interactions between spatial units, and the visualization of both raw data and spatial analytic findings within a cartographic framework.

Geovisualization (GVis) is the combination of scientific visualization and digital cartography to aid in the exploration and study of geographic data and information, including the outcomes of spatial analysis or simulation. In the exploration, analysis, and exchange of geographic data and information, GVis utilizes the human tendency toward visual information processing (Figure.2). GVis, as opposed to conventional cartography, is often three- or four-dimensional (the latter includes time) and user-interactive.

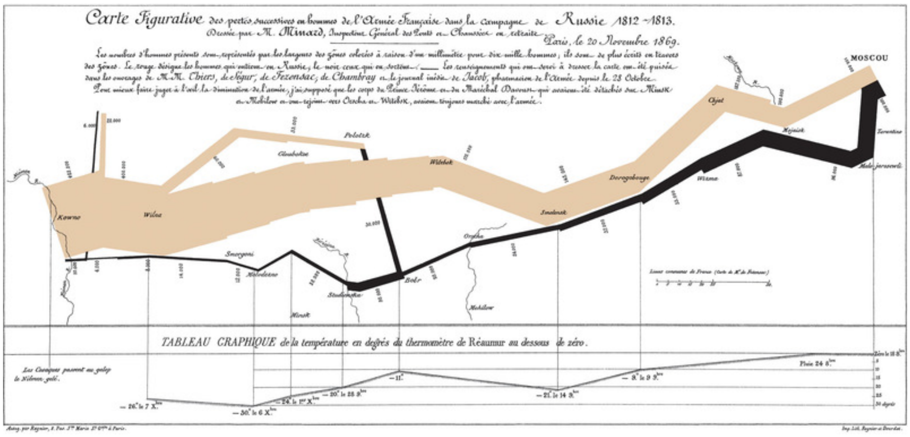

Figure 2: Diagram showing the example of the Geovisualization (Wikipedia).

Geographic knowledge discovery (GKD) is the human-centered process of studying vast geographical information using efficient computer methods. GKD involves geographic data mining as well as associated tasks such as data selection, data cleaning and pre-processing, and result interpretation. GVis may also play an important function in the GKD process. GKD is founded on the assumption that large datasets contain interesting (valid, new, useful, and intelligible) patterns that traditional analytical tools cannot detect. GKD may be used to generate hypotheses for spatial analysis, yielding preliminary patterns and correlations that need be validated using spatial analytical tools. Geographic decision support systems (SDSS) combine current geographic data and a range of mathematical models to produce future estimates. This enables municipal and regional planners to test intervention options before they are implemented.

CONCLUSION

Oftentimes, modelling is used to describe spatial analysis. The study of societal patterns in a particular location is known as spatial analysis, also known as area analysis and locational analysis. It is a method of human geography that concentrates on the geographical distribution of phenomena. It tries to create reliable generalizations, useful models, and hypotheses. Examples of spatial analysis include calculating lengths and angles, planning routes and tracking vehicles, and identifying relationships between things, events, and locations by comparing their locations to geographical positions (both current and past).GIS software performs geographic studies by collecting, analyzing, and displaying spatial data to create a 2D or 3D map of various places in relation to particular points. Each dataset in a GIS is handled as a layer, which can then be graphically integrated using analytical operators (a process known as overlay analysis). GIS gives you the ability to work with these levels to investigate and answer vitally important issues by combining them using operators and displays.

REFERENCES

[1] J. O. Zújar, P. P. Salgado, E. S. Rodríguez, and J. P. P. Alcántara, "Geography of household income in Spain at municipal level: new data and new possibilities for geovisualization, exploration, and spatial analysis in cloud environments," *Investig. Geogr.*, 2021, doi: 10.14198/INGEO.18993.

[2] H. J. Miller, "Geographic information science II: Mesogeography: Social physics, GIScience and the quest for geographic knowledge," *Prog. Hum. Geogr.*, 2018, doi: 10.1177/0309132517712154.

[3] D. Rainham, I. McDowell, D. Krewski, and M. Sawada, "Conceptualizing the healthscape: Contributions of time geography, location technologies and spatial ecology to place and health research," *Soc. Sci. Med.*, 2010, doi: 10.1016/j.socscimed.2009.10.035.

[4] E. Bielecka, K. Pokonieczny, and S. Borkowska, "Giscience theory based assessment of spatial disparity of geodetic control points location," *ISPRS Int. J. Geo-Information*, 2020, doi: 10.3390/ijgi9030148.

[5] R. Ahasan, M. S. Alam, T. Chakraborty, and M. M. Hossain, "Applications of GIS and geospatial analyses in COVID-19 research: A systematic review," *F1000Research*, 2020, doi: 10.12688/f1000research.27544.1.

[6] M. Fleischmann, A. Feliciotti, O. Romice, and S. Porta, "Morphological tessellation as a way of partitioning space: Improving consistency in urban morphology at the plot scale," *Comput. Environ. Urban Syst.*, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.compenvurbsys.2019.101441.

[7] J. Zimmermannova, A. P. Redecker, M. Mensik, and C. Juergens, "Geospatial data analysis and economic evaluation of companies for sustainable business development—an interdisciplinary teaching approach," *Sustain.*, 2021, doi: 10.3390/su132011245.

[8] P. Gregg Greenough and E. L. Nelson, "Beyond mapping: A case for geospatial analytics in humanitarian health," *Conflict and Health*. 2019. doi: 10.1186/s13031-019-0234-9.

[9] A. Kijek and T. Kijek, "Knowledge spillovers: An evidence from the European regions," *J. Open Innov. Technol. Mark. Complex.*, 2019, doi: 10.3390/joitmc5030068.

[10] C. N. Ehler, "Two decades of progress in Marine Spatial Planning," *Mar. Policy*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.marpol.2020.104134.

CHAPTER 8

A BRIEF DISCUSSION OF THE REGIONAL GEOGRAPHY IN GEOGRAPHY

Dr. Muralidhar. L. B., Assistant Professor,
School of Commerce, Jain Deemed to be University, Bangalore, India,
Email Id- lb.muralidhar@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

The study of a region's geographic characteristics is known as regional geography. It implies that one may begin with a territory, a state, or a river basin and then examine it using various methods. It is a branch of geography that examines the human and physical aspects of various geographical areas. These geographic groupings may all be broken down even further into smaller sub-regions. For instance, subregions like Western Europe, Eastern Europe, and Northern Europe can be created inside a physical region like Europe.

KEYWORDS:

Area Experts, Regional Geography, Social Science, Social Scientists, United State.

INTRODUCTION

Regional geography is a prominent field of study in geography. It focuses on the interplay of several cultural and natural geo-factors in a single area or region, while systematic geography focuses on a certain geo-factor on a global scale. Natural factors, human components, and regionalization, which encompasses the processes of partitioning space into regions, are all given special consideration. The two pillars of regional geography are the idiographic study of Länder or spatial individuals (specific places, countries, continents) and the typological study of Landschaften or spatial types (landscapes such as coastal regions, mountain regions, border regions, and so on).

Regional geography is a kind of geographical research that is similar to quantitative geography or critical geography(Figure.1). This technique was prevalent in the second part of the nineteenth century and the early half of the twentieth century, when the regional geography paradigm was essential to the geographical sciences. It was then criticized for being too detailed and lacking in philosophy. It was heavily criticized, particularly during the 1950s and the quantitative revolution. G. H. T. Kimble and Fred K. Schaefer were the main detractors [1]–[3].

Many other geographical disciplines, including economic geography and geomorphology, have been impacted by the regional geography paradigm. Some institutions still teach regional geography as a study of the world's main areas. In the Western Hemisphere, they might be cultural areas like Northern and Latin America, or they can be geographical regions or continents like North and South America, whose "boundaries" vary greatly from the cultural zones. Europe and Asia may be regarded cultural areas or continents in the Eastern Hemisphere, depending on the criteria used to separate them and identify their common borders. Various disparities result from the previously indicated absence of a unifying framework behind the definitions and delineations of various continents and regions.

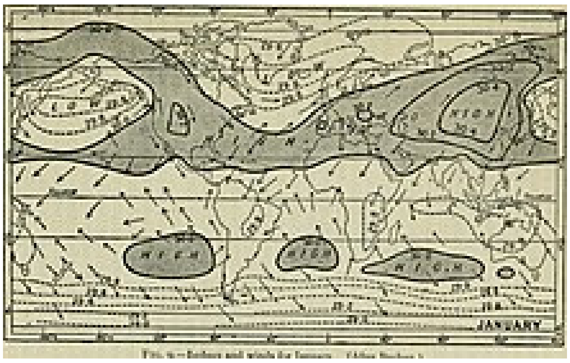

Figure 1: Diagramed showing the regional geography of world.

Furthermore, from the mid-1980s, the concept of a city-region approach to geography, emphasizing urban-rural connections, has gained traction. Since the 1980s, several geographers have sought to reinstate some degree of regionalism. This necessitates a complicated definition of regions as well as their relationships with other scales. Regional geography was originally employed as a foundation for geomorphological studies by David Linton and Henri Baulig. Regional geography, however, has not been regarded as a foundation for geomorphological investigations by mainstream academia since the 1990s, according to Karna Lidmar-Bergström.

Notable individuals

Alfred Hettner in Germany, with his concept of chorology; Paul Vidal de la Blache in France, with the possibilism approach (possibilism being a softer concept than environmental determinism); and Richard Hartshorne in the United States, with his concept of areal differentiation. Carl O. Sauer's school, which was heavily inspired by Alfred Hettner and Paul Vidal de la Blache, is also regarded as regional geography in its widest meaning.

Area studies are multidisciplinary disciplines of study that focus on specific geographical, national/federal, or cultural regions. The phrase exists largely as a broad descriptor for what are many different disciplines of inquiry in the practice of scholarship, spanning both the social sciences and the humanities. International relations, strategic studies, history, political science, political economics, cultural studies, languages, geography, literature, and other related subjects are typical area study programs. Region studies, as opposed to cultural studies, sometimes cover diaspora and exodus from the region.

After WWII, interdisciplinary area studies became more prevalent in the United States and in Western academia. Prior to the war, there were only a few academic members at American colleges who lectured or performed research on the non-Western world. Foreign-area studies were almost non-existent. Following the war, both liberals and conservatives were worried about the United States' capacity to react successfully to perceived external threats from the Soviet Union and China in the context of the burgeoning Cold War, as well as the fallout from Africa and Asia's decolonization.

In this setting, the Ford Foundation, the Rockefeller Foundation, and the Carnegie Corporation of New York hosted a series of discussions that resulted in a wide agreement that the United States must invest in international studies to solve this knowledge gap. As a result, the field's foundations are deeply anchored in America. Participants believed that assembling a big brain trust of globally minded political scientists and economists was a critical national aim. There was a central disagreement, however, between those who believed that, rather than applying Western models, social scientists should work closely with humanists to develop culturally and historically contextualized knowledge of various parts of the world, and those who believed that social scientists should seek to develop overarching macro-historial theories that could draw connections between patterns of change and development across different geographies. The former became supporters of area studies, while the latter became supporters of modernization theory.

The Ford Foundation would ultimately come to dominate the area studies program in the United States. The foundation founded the acclaimed Foreign Area Fellowship Program (FAFP) in 1950, the first large-scale national competition to promote area-studies training in the United States. It provided $270 million to 34 institutions for region and language studies between 1953 and 1966. During this time, it also invested millions of dollars in committees led by the Social Science Research Council and the American Council of Learned Societies for field-development seminars, conferences, and publishing programs. The management of FAFP would eventually be taken up by the SSRC-ACLS joint committees. Other significant initiatives followed Ford's. The National Defense Education Act of 1957, renamed the Higher Education Act in 1965, provided funding for 125 university-based area-studies units known as National Resource Center programs, as well as Foreign Language and Area Studies scholarships for undergraduate students and fellowships for graduate students.

Area studies have been criticized from their start, notably by area experts themselves. Many of them said that since area studies were linked to the Cold War goals of the CIA, FBI, and other intelligence and military organizations, taking part in such projects amounted to acting as a state agent. Some suggest that the conceptual landscape of area studies will be defined by US interests and research objectives. Others, however, maintained that once established on university campuses, area studies evolved to embrace a far larger and deeper intellectual agenda than that anticipated by government agencies, and hence were not exclusively American.

The development of rational choice theory in political science and economics was perhaps one of the biggest dangers to the area studies effort. To ridicule one of the most vocal opponents of rational choice theory, Japan professor Chalmers Johnson asked: "Why do you need to know Japanese or anything about Japan's history and culture if rational choice methods will explain why Japanese politicians and bureaucrats do the things they do?"

Following the fall of the Soviet Union, philanthropic foundations and scientific bureaucracies reduced their funding for local studies, favoring interregional issues such as "development and democracy." Scholars interpreted the closure of the Social Science Research Council and the American Council of Learned Societies' area committees, which had long served as the national nexus for raising and administering funds for area studies, as a massive signal about the changing research environment.

DISCUSSION

Regional geography is a field of geography concerned with the study of the world's regions. A region is defined as a portion of the Earth's surface that has one or more features that distinguish it from other places. Regional geography is the study of the distinct features of locations as they relate to their culture, economics, terrain, climate, politics, and natural variables such as flora and wildlife. Regional geography also investigates the precise borders that exist between locations. These are sometimes referred to as transition zones since they reflect the beginning and end of a certain area and might be huge or tiny. The transition zone between Sub-Saharan Africa and North Africa, for example, is rather broad due to mixing between the two areas. Regional geographers investigate this zone as well as the differences between Sub-Saharan Africa and North Africa.

Regional geography, as a field of geography, has its origins in Europe, notably with the French and geographer Paul Vidal de la Blanche. De la Blanche established his theories of milieu, pays, and possibilism (or possibilism) in the late nineteenth century. The natural environment was the milieu, while the nation or local area was the pays. Possibilism was the idea that said that the environment imposes limits and limitations on people, but it is human behaviors in reaction to these restraints that build a culture and, in this instance, help in the definition of a territory. Possibilism was then followed by environmental determinism, which holds that the environment (and consequently physical areas) is wholly responsible for the development of human culture and social progress.

Regional geography emerged in the time between World Wars I and II, particularly in the United States and portions of Europe. Geography was condemned at the time for its descriptive character, environmental determinism, and lack of a distinct emphasis. As a consequence, geographers were looking for strategies to maintain geography relevant at the university level. Geography evolved into a regional science in the 1920s and 1930s, concerned with why some locations are similar and/or distinct, and what allows people to distinguish one region from another. This technique evolved to be known as areal differentiation[4]–[6].

Carl Sauer and his Berkeley School of Geographic Thought influenced the development of regional geography in the United States, particularly on the west coast. Regional geography was also headed at this time by Richard Hartshorne, who studied German regional geography with prominent geographers such as Alfred Hettner and Fred Schaefer in the 1930s. Hartshorne described geography as a science "to provide an accurate, orderly, and rational description and interpretation of the variable character of the earth's surface."Regional geography was a prominent subject of study within the discipline for a brief while during and after WWII. However, it was subsequently criticized for its lack of particular geographical expertise and for being overly descriptive and not quantitative enough.

Regional geography has witnessed a rebirth as a field of geography at several institutions since the 1980s. Because geographers nowadays generally research a broad range of subjects, it is beneficial to divide the globe into regions to make information simpler to digest and show. This may be accomplished by geographers who claim to be regional geographers and are specialists on one or more locations throughout the globe, or by physical, cultural, urban, and biogeographers who have a large amount of material to analyze on certain themes.

Many universities now offer specific regional geography courses that provide an overview of the broad topic, while others may offer courses related to specific world regions such as Europe, Asia, and the Middle East, or on a smaller scale such as "The Geography of California." The physical and climatic attributes of the region, as well as the cultural, economic, and political characteristics found there, are frequently covered in each of these region-specific courses. Furthermore, several colleges now offer specialist degrees in regional geography, which often include broad understanding of the world's regions. A degree in regional geography is important not just for individuals who wish to teach, but it is also beneficial in today's commercial sector, which is centered on long-distance communications and networking.Area studies are founded on a concept, are carried out with the assistance of organizations known as area centers, and rely on some level of intellectual cooperation. The notion is still contentious; institutions are growing in number and activity throughout the globe; and researchers interact in a variety of ways.

The primary idea behind area studies is that the people of a certain geographical region, functioning in their society and environment, provide an adequate unit for academic investigation. The premise is not novel. Research, as opposed to conjecture, needs an objective location. When Aristotle examined the political structures of Greek city states and presented his findings to pupils, he participated in activities that were not different to those of current city centers. Classical education, which concentrated on ancient Greece and Rome, may be considered an early type of geography. It may even be argued that political science and perhaps other social sciences were nothing more than parochial studies of a region restricted to Western Europe and the United States masquerading under a global umbrella until relatively recently.Governments discovered an alarming shortage of individuals who were seriously acquainted with the languages, cultures, and topographical characteristics of the world areas in which troops had to fight and important political and social decisions had to be made during and immediately following World War II.

During the war, many people in the United States were trained in special language programs established by the military services. These programs provided intense language training in Japanese, Chinese, and other languages. Shortly after the war, the finely balanced enmity between East and West forced the formation of academic specialty in the study of the Soviet Union's political, economic, and social structures. Columbia and Harvard university’s built Russian studies institutes with financing from the Carnegie Corporation of New York and the Rockefeller Foundation. The structure of these institutions, as well as the productivity of its members, served as templates for research in other disciplines. The Ford Foundation provided significant long-term financing to a number of colleges for the growth of area studies in the late 1950s.

After 1955, when the École Pratique des Hautes Études acquired a Rockefeller Foundation grant for the promotion of studies of the Far East, Russia, India, and the Muslim world, there was a tremendous increase of area studies in France. Within two years, with the help of matching funds from the Ministry of Education and other sources, the École created 16 additional professorial chairs designated to area programs. Cooperation with organizations such as the École des Langues Orientales, the Musée de l'Homme, and the Foundation des Sciences Politiques was encouraged, and the Sorbonne created a new center for African studies.

Other nations have other types of area centers as well. Since 1955, the Soviet Union has seen a remarkable growth in African studies, in addition to institutes of Slavonic and Oriental study and other subject centers connected with the Soviet Academy of Sciences. The Colegio de México's Section of Oriental Studies has a Chinese study program, while the University of Rio Grande do Sul in Brazil has a Latin American studies center.

Areas of research are differently delineated; the more that is known about a region, the smaller the area likely to be under formalized investigation. For example, there is a fair quantity of structured knowledge regarding Japanese society; as a result, specialist institutes for Japanese studies exist. However, rather than centers for Indonesia or Thailand, there are centers for Southeast Asia as a whole. Latin America, southeast Asia, south Asia, the Soviet Union, eastern Europe, east Asiawith a trend to separate Japan and China, Africa south of the Sahara, and the Middle East, including north Africaare the common territories. Other places, however, such as the Caribbean islands and Western Europe, get attention in the United States. Similarly, there are American study centers in European nations.

The challenge of categorizing the globe into "areas" is an ongoing one that changes as the worldwide situation necessitates new research demands. Latin America, for example, has 20 nations that vary widely in size, language, ethnic mix, and other features. Can such a geographically continuous region serve as a sufficient unit for intellectual research? Oceans used to be more easily traveled than mountain ranges and isthmuses, but conventional definitions of regions have demonstrated a surprising ability for survival since the beginning of the aviation era. Is the "Atlantic community" a smaller region, even if it includes Turkey, than the "American states"? Do area centers that are selective within a region based on previous colonial ties preserve their utility?

Area centers are founded on the premise that cooperation, rather than isolation, is more successful in developing knowledge about foreign locations via research, publishing, and teaching. Collaboration takes several forms, in part because the researchers are often appointed and tenured in university departments or colleges rather than the area center. The bulk of area courses are only mentioned by centers and are provided by departments or faculties. Centers, on the other hand, may urge departments to provide new courses or hire new faculty members; foreign experts can conduct unique courses as visiting lecturers at centers; and multidisciplinary seminars might be organized on the initiative of a center[7]–[9].

The experience of area centers over the last 15 years indicates the need of putting up effort to improve the many modes of academic communication. Many centers have their own headquarters, complete with faculty offices, specialist libraries, and common spaces. Former students of Harvard University's Russian Research Center remember with fondness the opportunities for interaction provided by the center's lunchroom, which fed graduate students and faculty members together. Group study is perhaps the most difficult to realize; the creation of a large number of monographs may take many years, and some effort is made to cover key issues by publishing individual dissertations and other academic publications. Group research under contract with a government body is another sort of group study.Furthermore, the integrated area centers may provide chances for field research and study trips by members of the center faculties. When Bennett's report was prepared in 1951, financial support for such chances was few, and politics made travel to certain nations difficult.

However, in recent years, significantly larger finances have been available for intellectual travel, and Russia has grown more welcoming to some sorts of research by foreign experts. In the United States, Fulbright-Hayes Act awards, private foundation grants to universities and national councils, and fellowships such as those provided by the Foreign Area Fellowship Program and the National Defense Education Act have enabled a very large proportion of students (likely the majority of those qualified to complete doctoral work as area specialists) to spend at least one graduate year abroad. Typically, such research is conducted in preparation for the PhD dissertation. Similarly, these and other sources provide a growing number of chances for academic members to do research in another nation. The necessity for field research is acknowledged in both the United Kingdom and France, however funding resources (particularly from voluntary organizations) are scarce.

There are only one or two area centers in the United States that offer doctoral degrees in "area studies," but there are a fair number of centers or universities that confer bachelor of arts degrees in area studies, and some universities offer special intermediate degrees, such as master of international affairs, with an area center certificate. Doctoral degrees, on the other hand, are nearly often given by a department of economics, history, or another subject. This has two major benefits: it maintains high standards in disciplinary preparation while also qualifies graduates for established career paths in teaching and public service[10].

The primary educational contribution of area centers is to supplement, not replace, the conventional degree requirements set in each department or faculty. An area expert is not, for example, a specialist in "Chinese studies" or "Latin American studies." He is first and foremost a graduate of a core subject, such as geography, linguistics, one of the social sciences or arts, or maybe law or journalism. However, due to his field of specialty, he has passed tests in topics other than his own. He has linguistic skill commensurate with his research demands, as established by his university's criteria, which may include the study of more than one foreign language.

He has spent at least a year, and frequently much more, doing studies in his selected foreign area or nation. If he has a PhD, he will have studied for one to four years longer than individuals who are not area experts, with the amount of time mostly determined by the complexity of the languages studied.Of course, field research might differ substantially. For a historian, it may include pouring through archives in London and Ibadan; for a political scientist, it may entail prolonged overseas living and thorough interviews; and for an economist, it may entail briefer encounters for data collection.

With the notable caveat that in many institutes, the focus is mostly, but not completely, on the contemporary age, the scope of field study is limitless. Even this, though, may vary from nation to country. In Paris, for example, the Division des Aires Culturelle's, École Pratique des Hautes Études, Centre des Recherches Historiques, VIe Section publishes titles such as Documents and Research on the Economy of Byzantine, Islamic, and Slavic Countries and Their Commercial Relations in the Middle Ages. The line between modern and premodern is, of course, a point of contention among scholars, with some claiming that understanding the contemporary Islamic world requires knowledge of the Islamic world since the seventh century add, while others argue that Napoleon's invasion of Egypt is a reasonable starting point for social scientists in the twentieth century. In some areas, such as India, the distinction between classical and contemporary languages is significant, and few scholars interested in the dynamics of modern societies will take the time to learn Sanskrit, even if they will be expected to know Hindi.

In consequence, the variety of study conducted by students at area centers is impacted by current discipline fads, governmental agency directions of concern, and data access issues. During and soon after World War II, unique procedures for "research at a distance" were created in several European nations and Japan; in Hong Kong, social scientists and others often interview refugees from the Chinese mainland. Even in less formally closed areas, scholarly inquirers from a different country or subculture, no matter how apolitical their aims and sponsorship, may have to be just as wary in the field as local tax collectors, and even then they may run afoul of officials who suspect their motives. There is a significant propensity for area experts to focus on particular issues, such as the source and management of inflation, shifting political trends, the transformation of land tenure systems, and so on. The desire of government officials to be advised on day-to-day issues is generally opposed by social scientists, who prefer to deal painstakingly with data rather than haphazardly with hunches, but the scholars' interests in contemporary phenomena are relevant to the issues that officials face.

Although area studies at US colleges were mostly founded on a "know-your-enemy" premise , an essential justification has been found in the liberal education system. Recently, familiarity with the cultures of other peoples has been promoted as an important component of training for potential government officials in charge of administering technical and educational assistance programs; this is now an explicit justification for area studies in France. Finally, investigations of foreign places by academics with disciplinary training have earned an intellectual honor: they are becoming more and more regarded as scientifically intriguing since they provide comparative data that is important for the growth of a subject. other policy's post-World War II expansion into propaganda, education, and technical help has generated a need for government officials with specialized understanding of other cultures and languages.

Concurrently, academic interest in comparative studies in the many social science disciplines has grown to the point that, for example, assessments of urbanization in Africa are regarded as equally important as analyses of metropolitan sprawl in the United States. Political science has grown to consider studies of Burmese or Mexican bureaucracies as having almost comparable academic interest and theoretical value as studies of West German or Belgian civil services. Economists are becoming interested in explaining the rates of inflation that Chileans and Brazilians experience and endure, but which look absurdly impracticable in models based on sober Swedish growth rates. In this regard, intellectual prestige may peacefully coexist with government needs for global comparative investigations of modern human issues.

The admission of responsibility by colleges in the United States for providing specialized training in foreign countries of the sort established by the armed forces produced a complicated set of difficulties.The relative significance of linguistic and social science courses was the first question to be addressed in the formation of recognized area programs in US colleges. Immediately after WWII, there was a tendency to equate language instruction with area training. In actuality, most of the new "area specialists" acquired contemporary, "newspaper" Arabic or Japanese, with a focus on one or more oral forms.

Linguists created new ways for faster language acquisition. Many of the men and women known as area experts do not consider comprehensive knowledge of a foreign language to be a necessary condition for comprehending a foreign culture. Language "competence" is seen as a tool for meeting a variety of specialized needs, for which diverse vocabularies and minor skills suffice. Previously, the research of those closest to qualifying as area experts was mostly philological, calligraphic, and generally humanistic. In the United States, at least, the current generation of area experts comprises an increasing share of social scientists and contemporary historians.

It should be emphasized, however, that the phrase "language and area studies" continues to exist in conflict with "area studies." The reason for the first term's survival is that language competency is often viewed as adequate qualification for an area expert. For example, the Foreign Service Institute of the United States was very recently established. In addition to thorough language instruction, the Department of State has begun "area studies" courses.

A second and related issue is variations in judgment of the necessary aspects to be researched in order to comprehend a foreign civilization. The problem is especially prominent when a region center focuses on "the modern Middle East," "contemporary China," or "post-independence Latin America." How much of Byzantium exists in post-Kemal Turkey? How thoroughly should Peking ologists research Confucius? These are some of the hotly debated issues between those who see themselves as interpreters of great traditions of still-living societies and those who see little significance in them for the evaluation of irrigation projects, for example, or the solution of housing problems. Of course, this implies extremes, but there are numerous less severe chances for significant disagreement before reaching a point of tolerance and maybe collaboration.

The link between area studies and the social sciences is a third topic. The historian's or literary critic's work is rather particularistic; it is region-bound and tradition-bound, and often very rigidly so for example, Spanish rather than Iberian. At its most prestigious, economists' work is very universalistic, theoretical, and methodical, with rather specified objectives such as maximization of gross national product. Economies are not as self-contained as units of electrical energy, but people in aggregate economic activity may be handled more collectively than, say, authors. It is proposed that there have been four phases in the development of linkages between area studies and the social sciences; that is, between data collection and data organizing by theoretical conceptions. Data regarding foreign places were obtained in the first step via field study by area experts.

A second step included comparing comparable challenges in other areas by widening the training of local experts. In the third stage, social scientists utilized evidence from several domains to generate new ideas and overcome the parochial foundation of much current theory in the social sciences. The development of theory begins to influence the types of problems area specialists investigate and the types of questions they begin to ask as they conduct field research in the current, fourth stage, in part because, more than ever before, the training of area specialists is becoming assimilated to the training of social scientists. This is certain to have an impact on both, and we may look forward to the day when the inquiry "What know ye of -ology that only Ruritania knows?" will be asked." will be a genuine one.

Finally, there is a problem with the disparity in research funding available. In the United States, for example, the National scientific Foundation does not fund research in history other than scientific history. Under the combined auspices of the American Council of Learned Societies and the Social Science study Council, special programs of scholarships for postdoctoral researchers are granted for study on, for example, modern China and Latin America (mostly the period since 1830). Scholars interested in researching older times, on the other hand, are not barred since they may apply to general funding programs. Furthermore, corporate foundations and individual donors have provided major assistance to universities for premodern study in a variety of subjects.

Area centers are not going away. Area centers provide direct governmental demands for local experts. These requirements in foreign-aid, educational, technical, and other programs, as well as intelligence and military services, have increased in the recent decade and are unlikely to reduce much in the next decade. With the abolition of colonial training services in the United Kingdom and France, the training of local experts at university centers and via field research is more important than ever.

In addition, as the social sciences increasingly free from parochialism, an intellectual dedication to study in a foreign field is being scientifically accepted. The growing interest of political scientists and sociologists in comparative, cross-national empirical research, for example, bids well to sustain a professional, academic need for area training. There is a semantic issue here: political scientists like to term themselves comparative politics experts, regardless of how actively they pursue study in one field or keep their link with an area center. There is also an increasing demand for the study of other cultures and languages at educational levels lower than those required for area experts; noteworthy is the fact that more than one-third of all colleges and institutions in the United States provide at least one year of Russian instruction.

CONCLUSION

Regional geography is the study of the, distinctive qualities of locations as they relate to their culture, economics, terrain, climate, politics, and environmental elements such their various flora and fauna species. Regional geography also examines the precise borders between locations. In the years between World Wars, I and II, regional geography started to take shape, particularly in the United States and some regions of Europe. Geography was attacked at this time for its descriptive approach, environmental determinism, and lack of a clear purpose. The notion of the region and the function of regional knowledge were theorized by new regional geographers, who were motivated by contemporary social and cultural theory, usually in connection to historically dependent societal situations.

REFERENCES

[1] R. Boschma, L. Coenen, K. Frenken, and B. Truffer, “Towards a theory of regional diversification: combining insights from Evolutionary Economic Geography and Transition Studies,” *Reg. Stud.*, 2017, doi: 10.1080/00343404.2016.1258460.

[2] P. McCann and R. Ortega-Argilés, “The UK ‘geography of discontent’: Narratives, Brexit and inter-regional ‘levelling up,’” *Cambridge J. Reg. Econ. Soc.*, 2021, doi: 10.1093/cjres/rsab017.

[3] P. He, “Academic thoughts and achievements in regional geography of Zhang Qiyun,” *Dili Xuebao/Acta Geogr. Sin.*, 2021, doi: 10.11821/dlxb202101018.

[4] L. Coenen, B. Asheim, M. M. Bugge, and S. J. Herstad, “Advancing regional innovation systems: What does evolutionary economic geography bring to the policy table?,” *Environ. Plan. C Polit. Sp.*, 2017, doi: 10.1177/0263774X16646583.

[5] L. Petrikovičová, A. Ďurinková, R. Králik, and V. Kurilenko, “Methodology of Working with a Textbook Versus Field Activities of Teaching Geography during the Corona Crisis,” *Eur. J. Contemp. Educ.*, 2021, doi: 10.13187/ejced.2021.2.428.

[6] A. Rodríguez-Pose, "Costs, incentives, and institutions in bridging evolutionary economic geography and global production networks," *Reg. Stud.*, 2021, doi: 10.1080/00343404.2021.1914833.

[7] D. Vukovic, A. Jovanovic, and M. Djukic, "Defining competitiveness through the theories of new economic geography and regional economy," *J. Geogr. Inst. Jovan Cvijic, SASA*, 2012, doi: 10.2298/ijgi1203049v.

[8] K. Kasala and M. Šifta, "The region as a concept: Traditional and constructivist view," *Acta Universitatis Carolinae, Geographica*. 2017. doi: 10.14712/23361980.2017.17.

[9] J. Wang, A. Zhang, and X. Zhao, "Development and application of the multi-dimensional integrated geography curricula from the perspective of regional remote sensing," *J. Geogr. High. Educ.*, 2020, doi: 10.1080/03098265.2019.1698525.

[10] J. Agnew, "Immanuel Wallerstein, the 'modern world-system,' and radical human geography," *Hum. Geogr. Kingdom)*, 2021, doi: 10.1177/1942778620974056.

CHAPTER 9

IMPORTANCE OF THE PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY IN DIFFERENT FIELDS

Dr. Rachana Saxena, Assistant Professor,
School of Commerce, Jain Deemed to be University, Bangalore, India,
Email Id- s.rachana@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

The notion of physical geography refers to geographical features that are found naturally. These were made by nature, not by people. Seas, islands, mountains, and rivers are a few prominent examples.The traditional divisions of physical geography into geomorphology, climatology, hydrology, and biogeography have given way to a more comprehensive approach in systems analysis of contemporary environmental change and Quaternary change. Geomorphology, climatology, meteorology, glaciology, hydrology, oceanography, biogeography, pedology, and ecology are all parts of physical geography.

KEYWORDS:

Human Geography, Geography Focuses, Landscape Ecology, Physical Geography, Remote Sensing.

INTRODUCTION

One of the three major fields of geography is physical geography (also known as physiography). Physical geography is a discipline of natural science that studies the processes and patterns seen in the natural environment, including the atmosphere, hydrosphere, biosphere, and geosphere. This concentration contrasts with human geography, which focuses on the built environment, and technical geography, which focuses on utilizing, researching, and developing methods to gather, analyze, interpret, and comprehend geographical data. However, there is substantial overlap between the three branches[1], [2].

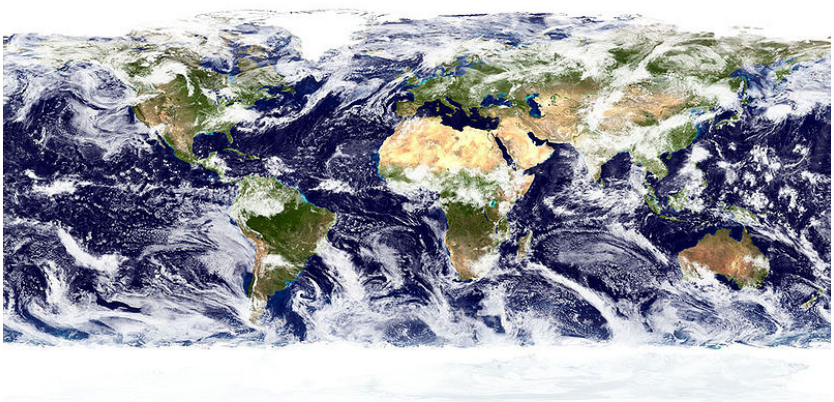

Figure 1: NASA true color image of the earth surface and atmosphere.

Geomorphology is concerned with understanding the Earth's surface and the processes that form it, both now and in the past (Figure.1). Geomorphology contains multiple sub-fields that deal with distinct landforms of diverse settings, such as desert geomorphology and fluvial geomorphology; nonetheless, these sub-fields are unified by the basic mechanisms that create them, which are primarily tectonic or climatic processes. Geomorphology is the study of landform history and dynamics, as well as the prediction of future changes, using a mix of field observation, physical experimentation, and numerical modeling (Geomorphometry). Geomorphology is the basis for pedology, one of the two major fields of soil science.

Hydrology is primarily concerned with the volume and quality of water flowing and collecting on the ground surface as well as in soils and rocks near the surface, as shown by the hydrological cycle (Figure.1). Thus, the field includes water in rivers, lakes, aquifers, and, to a lesser degree, glaciers, and it investigates the processes and dynamics that occur in these bodies of water. Hydrology has always had a close relationship with engineering, and as a result, its study has been mostly quantitative; yet, it does have an earth science component that embraces the systems approach. Like other physical geography subjects, it contains sub-fields that investigate bodies of water or their interactions with other spheres, such as limnology and ecohydrology.

Glaciology is the study of glaciers and ice sheets, often known as the cryosphere or ice and ice-related phenomena. The latter (ice sheets) are classified as continental glaciers, whereas the former (glaciers) are classified as alpine glaciers. Although study in these areas is related to research into the dynamics of ice sheets and glaciers, the former is concerned with the interaction of ice sheets with current climate, while the latter is concerned with the influence of glaciers on the landscape. Glaciology also includes a wide range of sub-fields that investigate the causes and processes involved in ice sheets and glaciers, such as snow hydrology and glacial geology.

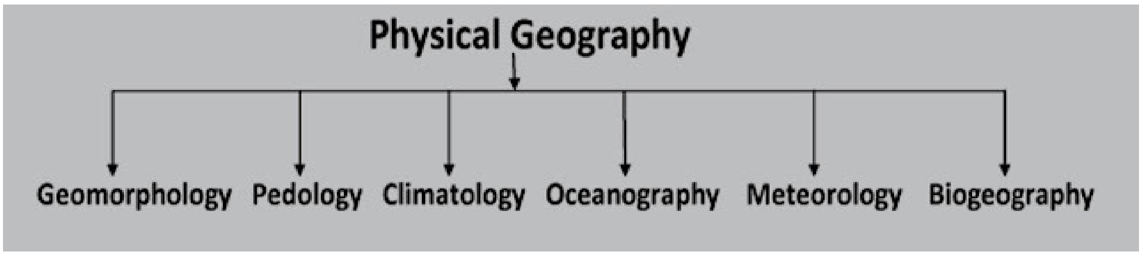

Figure 2: Diagram showing the branch of the physical geography.

Biogeographyis the study of geographic patterns of species distribution and the mechanisms that cause these patterns (Figure.2). Biogeography arose as an area of study because of Alfred Russel Wallace's work, even though the topic had primarily been seen as historic in vision and descriptive in technique prior to the late twentieth century. Since its inception, the major stimuli for the study have been evolution, plate tectonics, and the hypothesis of island biogeography. Island biogeography, paleobiogeography, phytogeography, zoogeography, and phytogeography are the five major subfields of the study.

Climatology is the scientific study of climate, which is defined as weather conditions averaged over a long period of time. Climatology studies the characteristics of micro (local) and macro (global) climates, as well as their natural and human impacts. The science is also broadly split into regional climates and the study of occurrences or historical periods, such as tropical cyclone rainfall climatology and paleoclimatology.

Soil geography is concerned with the distribution of soils throughout the landscape. This branch of geography and soil science is essential to both physical geography and pedology.The study of soils in their natural context is known as pedology. It covers pedogenesis, soil morphology, and soil categorization. Soil geography is the study of soil distribution in relation to topography, environment (water, air, temperature), soil life (microorganisms, plants, animals), and mineral elements inside soils (biogeochemical cycles).

Palaeogeography is a multidisciplinary discipline that investigates the preserved stratigraphic record to establish the distribution of continents across geologic time. Almost all evidence for continent placements comes from geology, in the form of fossils or paleomagnetism. These data have provided evidence for continental drift, plate tectonics, and supercontinents. As a result, paleogeographic ideas such as the Wilson cycle have gained acceptance. Coastal geography is the study of the dynamic interaction between the water and the land, which includes both physical geography (coastal geomorphology, geology, and oceanography) and human geography. It entails a knowledge of coastal weathering processes, namely wave action, sediment transport, and weathering, as well as human interactions with the shore. Coastal geography, although primarily concerned with geomorphological studies, is also interested in the causes and effects of sea level rise. Oceanography is the field of physical geography that examines the oceans and seas of the Earth. It studies marine organisms and ecosystem dynamics (biological oceanography); ocean currents, waves, and geophysical fluid dynamics (physical oceanography); plate tectonics and sea floor geology (geological oceanography); and fluxes of various chemical substances and physical properties within and across ocean boundaries (chemical oceanography). These broad subjects represent the many disciplines that oceanographers use to further knowledge of the global ocean and understanding of its dynamics.

Quaternary science is a multidisciplinary branch of research that focuses on the past 2.6 million years of Earth's history. The field analyzes the last ice age and the most recent interstadial era, the Holocene, and employs proxy data to recreate historical ecosystems throughout this time period in order to infer climatic and environmental changes that have occurred.Landscape ecology is a branch of ecology and geography that studies how spatial variation in the landscape affects ecological processes like the distribution and flow of energy, materials, and individuals in the environment (which, in turn, may influence the distribution of landscape "elements" like hedgerows). Carl Troll, a German geographer, contributed significantly to the field's funding. Landscape ecology often addresses issues in an applicable and comprehensive manner. The primary distinction between biogeography and landscape ecology is that the latter is concerned with how flows of energy and material change and their effects on the landscape, whilst the former is concerned with the spatial patterns of species and chemical cycles.

Geomatics is the study of obtaining, storing, processing, and distributing geographical information, often known as spatially referenced data. Geomatics encompasses geodesy (the scientific discipline concerned with the measurement and representation of the earth, its gravitational field, and other geodynamic phenomena such as crustal motion, oceanic tides, and polar motion), cartography, geographical information science (GIS), and remote sensing (the short or large-scale acquisition of information about an object or phenomenon through the use of either recording or real-time sensing devices that are not in physical or intimate proximity to the object or phenomenon).

Environmental geography is a field of geography that studies the spatial elements of human-natural world interactions. The branch bridges the gap between human and physical geography, requiring knowledge of the dynamics of geology, meteorology, hydrology, biogeography, and geomorphology, as well as how human cultures interpret the environment. Although ideas such as environmental determinism relate society and the environment, the branch was formerly more evident in study than it is now. It has primarily become the realm of environmental management or the study of human impacts.

DISCUSSION

Physical geography today focuses on the Earth's surface dynamics, including field and laboratory research of current processes as well as reconstruction of previous environments, particularly the very recent past (including cooperation with archaeologists). These are included into study projects on historical, present, and future environmental changes. Concerns about global warming and climate change, sea-level rise, severe climatic events, and biodiversity loss prompted the modeling of environmental systems incorporating interactions between the Earth's hydrological, biological, and atmospheric components. Building comprehensive models of these systems and their intricate interrelationships requires teams to not only comprehend their operations but also anticipate environmental futures as the foundation for public policy decisions at the global, international, national, and local levels. Reconstructing historical environments research places present processes and changes within a longer-term context[3]–[5].

Physical geographers use the same methodologies as environmental scientists in general; understanding of relevant work in physics, chemistry, biology, and mathematics is required, and applications increasingly entail collaboration with engineers. Geographers have established specific areas of specialization in environmental science, such as remote sensing data processing. Processing the vast datasets generated daily requires significant geocomputation skills in order to answer the following questions: What is where? How much do you have? What is its current state?

Since 1945, there have been five major divides in human geography. The first four economic, social, cultural, and politicalreflect both the major areas of contemporary life as well as the social science disciplines with which geographers interact (economics, sociology, anthropology, political science, and international relations, respectively); the fifth is historical geography. All five have remained important, with focuses on certain sorts of locations, most notably urban, joining them in the mid- to late-twentieth century. Research interests in specific areas have waned, and few geographers today identify as specialists on a certain region of the globe.

Economic geography has a rich history. Its traditional emphasis has been the dispersion of diverse productive activities, including subcategories such as agricultural geography, industrial geography, and service geography, as well as trade patterns such as transport geography. The shift to spatial analysis reinforced such concentrations. However, very little work in that mold is now being conducted, and the models of idealized economic landscapes that reigned in the 1960s and 1970s are now seldom used or taught. Part of the movement is due to economic factors, most notably the expansion of globalization.

In comparison to labor and other expenditures, transportation costs are becoming less important in many site selections. Instead, multinational businesses' decision-making dominates the shifting global pattern of activity, reflecting a broad variety of political and economic concerns about the viability of investing in various nations and areas. Much recent research examines firm locational decision-making processes, individual state regulatory frameworks (including policies meant to attract and retain investment), and their influence on economic activity patterns.The economic and cultural worlds are inextricably linked. Many individual economic choices in advanced industrial countries—for example, what to purchase, where to eat, and where to vacation—reflect culturally influenced preferences, which vary swiftly in response to advertising and media discussions of tastes and fads. According to some critics, this results in a fundamental change in the main characteristics of capitalism production and consumption. It is shifting away from mass items produced on vast assembly lines and toward a plethora of tiny specialized markets served by companies with relatively short production lines and fast changes in product specifications. Economic geographers study how markets for goods and services are culturally developed and modified, as well as the ramifications for where production takes place and where employment are produced and lost.

Political geography has a long history, albeit it received little attention in the mid-twentieth century. Its primary interests are the state and its territory, as well as the foreign relations of states and the connections between governments and people. Local conflicts, such as land usage and environmental difficulties, are included in the geography of conflict, as are international conflicts, such as the rise of nationalism and the formation of new states. Electoral geography is a tiny area concerned with voting patterns and the conversion of votes into legislative seats through the use of territorially defined electoral districts.

Social geography focuses on societal divides, primarily class, ethnicity, and, to a lesser degree, religion; however, new factors, such as gender, sexual orientation, and age, have lately been incorporated. Mapping where various groups are concentrated, particularly in metropolitan areas, is a popular practice, as is analyzing the accompanying disparities and conflicts. Such mappings are supplemented by more in-depth investigations of the function of place and space in social behavior—for example, studies of the geography of crime and educational provision as well as how mental representations of such geographies are generated and transmitted.

Other subdisciplines of social geography are sometimes considered distinct. Population geography is primarily concerned with the three major demographic characteristics of fertility, mortality, and migration; census and other data investigations are supplemented by detailed case studies of decision making, such as whether and where to migrate and how relevant information is received and processed. Medical geography focuses on illness and death patterns for example, how diseases spread and how differences in morbidity and mortality rates reflect local environments as well as health care supply geographies.

Cultural geography has tight linkages with anthropology in its early incarnations, particularly in the work of Sauer's Berkeley school. This has given way to a broader understanding of the interrelationships between individuals and societies, as well as between people and their surroundings. Cultures are collections of beliefs that are passed down in different ways. Many incorporate texts, both written and visual and built (e.g., works of art and architecture) and auditory (e.g., soundscapes); others may never be documented but are fleeting moments in people's actions and expressions.

Interpreting them entails deconstructing what people say and do, activities that bring geographers into contact with the humanities as well as the social sciences in developing appreciations for meanings in texts and actions, including the landscapes and townscapes created in the process—

large and small, personal, and intimate as well as grand and public.Places play an important role in this vast variety of modern work, particularly in the study of cultural change, which entails mixing individuals from various origins and places as they travel through space. Cultures, like the environments they generate and inhabit, are flexible and constantly renegotiated. Many agreements entail conflict and the exercise of power, such as imperial techniques in the formation of nineteenth- and twentieth-century worlds and postcolonial reactions to others'-imposed worldviews.

From the 1960s through the 1980s, one of the most popular topics of study was urban geography, which was responsible for much pioneering work in the locational analysis technique. Cities and towns served as testing grounds for models of least-cost decision making. When such models were rejected as oversimplifying complicated reality, and the quest for spatial principles concerning cities waned, attention shifted to modern concerns about cities and life. Cities are significant nodes of globalization, with economic power centered in a few numbers of international cities (London, New York City, and Tokyo are often at the top of city hierarchies).

Given that cities are home to most people in the industrialized world, it is not unexpected that urban geography has gotten much more attention than rural geography. Prior to the 1970s, little investigation was done on characteristics of rural places other than agriculture, just as some said that much of the uniqueness of rural areas was fading as many traits of urban life spread into the countryside. Others argue that issues unique to rural, low-density areas necessitate a separate rural geography; while typical urban problems such as poverty, homelessness, social exclusion, and access to public facilities are also prevalent in rural low-density areas, specific issues include society-nature relationships, common images of the "rural," and the role of tourism in revitalizing rural economies.

Although historical geographers have not separated themselves from developments elsewhere in the subject, their emphasis on understanding the past from available information resonates. The advancements in locational analysis sparked several novel approaches to studying accessible data. For others, later developments, particularly in cultural geography, coincided with the use of a diverse range of nonquantitative sources to reconstruct the real and imagined, as well as the abstract (spatial analysis), worlds of the past; postcolonial issues have piqued the interest of historical geographers as well as those interested in current cultural issues. Major synthesis, such as Donald Meinig's four-volume The Shaping of America: A Geographical Perspective on 500 Years of History (1986-2002), supplement detailed assessments of specific locations and eras.

Not simply maps, but also, for example, traveler's writings on planets they have experienced, are being utilised in such endeavors. Within this endeavor is a revitalized interest in the history of geography itself, not only to better understand where the discipline has come from, but also to demonstrate the importance of place and context in its evolution; geography, like so much else, is a set of practices that emerged and evolved in response to local stimuli. Geographers have created certain types of knowledge that have been heavily affected by how humans have experienced the world.

Landscape change has long been studied by historical geographers. Their study currently influences worldwide environmental change inquiries while also highlighting historical human-induced environmental shifts. Other study examines current environmental changes and their consequences for not just environmental futures but also human life chances.

Such disciplines exist at the crossroads of physical and human geography, albeit cooperation between human and physical geographers is uncommon. In the case of the latter, it entails adding human-caused changes into models of environmental processes and systems. Human geographers' interests span considerably, from pragmatically applied work on environmental policy and management to investigations of culture-nature interactions. Changes in what a discipline investigates are inextricably linked to changes in how its research is conducted. Some significant improvements have been driven by technology: without new facilities, advancements would not have been feasible, if not imaginable. In others, technological advances were reactions to study inquiries.

Since 1970, physical geography has undergone two simultaneous sets of methodological developments. The first featured stronger collaborations with other scientific fields, focusing on the physical, chemical, and biological foundations for comprehending physical substance and processes, as well as the mathematical tools required for their analysis. The second was concerned with technological advancements in field and laboratory measurement and data processing. These two have come to saturate all physical geography work, which has grown technically sophisticated and whose advancement has been nearly wholly dependent on such abilities[6]–[8].

Almost all work in physical geography shares a conviction in the "real" world—that which can be seen, measured, and generalized upon, even if appreciating specific events and landforms necessitates placing general principles inside specific settings. The rules of physics, for example, may be used to generalize about atmospheric processes, but only an understanding of how they interact in particular, local conditions can account for the weather at a given location on a given day. Immanent laws operate in local, contingent settings, including extremely complicated interactions for which extensive mathematical abilities in evaluating nonlinear, sometimes chaotic, correlations are required.

Human geography employs a considerably broader spectrum of methodologies; various conceptions of knowledge and reality drive different forms of study. The concepts of positivism continue to underlie some work in many fields: there is order in the universe that can be seen, measured, analyzed, and generalized, even if no universal rules of human behavior await discovery. Other work is based on knowing theories that assert the inseparability of observer and observed (or subject and object) and deny the existence of actual worlds apart from their residents' imagined worlds. We can only see worlds, not the objective universe. Geographical study based on these assumptions employs methods for recognizing such worlds, the processes involved in their formation, and the behavior that occurs inside them. It must then communicate that derived knowledge to others, which is frequently referred to as a "double hermeneutic." These different perspectives permeate most of the modern human geography. With the exception of cultural geography, quantitative approaches are utilized to evaluate and find regularities in big and small data sets, leveraging technological developments such as artificial intelligence systems for categorizing persons and locations.

Nonquantitative techniques may be found in a variety of subdisciplines. These include rigorously gathering information from people on their mental maps of the world and how these underlie behavior. The qualitative processes that entail interpersonal connection are dominated by methods of interviewing people and groups to extract information. Material for research is also gathered in a number of different methods, such as participant observation in case studies of communities and events. However, obtaining knowledge goes well beyond dealing with real people, whether directly or indirectly. Learning about the roles of locations, spaces, and surroundings in the lives of people, groups, communities, and even whole civilizations near and distant, past and present necessitates the examination of several knowledge sources. Written writings are the most frequent, and they are studied for the meanings they might disclose. Other materials, such as maps, and pieces of art, disclose a much as well. Deconstructing meanings is a prevalent practice in cultural and historical geography, as well as in other subdisciplines, such as the meanings linked to foreign foods in economic geography.

Not only does research include watching, documenting, and evaluating the environment, but it also entails passing on learned understandings and explanations to others. In quantitative studies, this entails the use of mathematical notation and procedures—a language that many argue is unambiguous, but whose usage almost invariably includes interpretation in vernacular languages, with interpretations that are often challenged. Almost all qualitative reporting is done via the means of written language. After studying texts to get understandings, researchers use the same means to offer them to others, putting their readers in the same position of trying to infer meaning from the textual content. Thus, the research process entails ongoing interpretation and reinterpretation of textual and other resources, such as study reports. Unlike the seemingly uncontroversial explicit declarations of statistically recorded study results, most modern human geography research includes ongoing dispute about meanings and interpretations[9], [10].

The map has long been regarded as an essential tool in geographical studies. The automation of map manufacturing has coincided with a loss in study in this subject; one of the few remaining disciplines is map legibility—the degree to which various symbols and coloring succeed in transferring messages. GIS, a visualization medium with vast capability for assisting a broad variety of research inquiries, has taken its position as a major instrument. It provides not just advanced spatial data manipulation processes, but also innovative ways of displaying visual data at all scales, including three-dimensional views of the globe. Geographic information science combines the traditional disciplines of cartography, geodesy, and photogrammetry with modern advances in remote sensing, GPS, geostatistics, and geocomputation in activities that advance geographers' eternal interest in maps as sophisticated means of representing, analyzing, and viewing the Earth's great diversity.

CONCLUSION

A branch of geography known as physical geography focuses on understanding the natural structures and processes that make up the Earth's surface. It looks at the Earth's physical features, such as landforms, climate, flora, soils, and water bodies, as well as how these components interact. Data collection and analysis methods used in physical geography include remote sensing, geographic information systems (GIS), field surveys, and laboratory analysis. Physical geographers contribute to a better knowledge of our globe and assist in guiding environmental management and policy choices by gaining a grasp of the physical processes and patterns of the Earth.

REFERENCES

[1] H. Ter Minassian, “Drawing video game mental maps: From emotional games to emotions of play,” *Cartogr. Perspect.*, 2019, doi: 10.14714/CP91.1435.

[2] S. Leng, S. Zhu, W. Li, and L. Wu, "Towards a comprehensive development of the Marine Science: A reflection from the spatial perspective," *Kexue Tongbao/Chinese Sci. Bull.*, 2018, doi: 10.1360/N972018-00753.

[3] R. J. Whittaker, K. J. Willis, and R. Field, "Scale and species richness: Towards a general, hierarchical theory of species diversity," *J. Biogeogr.*, 2001, doi: 10.1046/j.1365-2699.2001.00563.x.

[4] R. B. Browne, "Geography and History: Bridging the Divide," *J. Am. Cult.*, 2004, doi: 10.1111/j.1537-4726.2004.141_9.x.

[5] C. Houser, A. Cahill, and K. Lemmons, "Assessment of student and faculty mentor perceptions of an international undergraduate research program in physical geography," *J. Geogr. High. Educ.*, 2014, doi: 10.1080/03098265.2014.963527.

[6] L. E. P. Travassos, "A Importância Cultural Do Carste E Das Cavernas," *Revista Espeleo-Tema*. 2010.

[7] J. M. Fitch Osuna and H. S. Chávez Reyes, "Territorial dynamics of segregation. the case of 'Ciudad Solidaria', Monterrey - Mexico ," *Dinámica Territ. Segreg. en Monterrey, México El caso Ciudad Solidar.*, 2011.

[8] E. E. Kuzmina and V. H. Mair, *The prehistory of the Silk Road*. 2015. doi: 10.5860/choice.46-1569.

[9] G. J. Andrews, V. A. Crooks, J. R. Pearce, and J. P. Messina, "Introduction," 2021. doi: 10.1007/978-3-030-70179-6_1.

[10] A. Solórzano, A. Lazos, and R. Oliveira, "Landscape reading of urban forests in Rio de Janeiro: Interpreting past and current socioecological interactions," *Work. Landsc. Read. Methodol.*, 2015.

CHAPTER 10

TECHNICAL GEOGRAPHY; USED FOR STUDYING, ANALYZE, INTERPRET AND UNDERSTAND SPATIAL INFORMATION

Dr. Saravana Kumar, Adjunct Professor,
School of Commerce, Jain Deemed to be University, Bangalore, India,
Email Id- k.saravana@Jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

The phrase "technical geography" is not a well-known or established one in the geography discipline. However, it may also be used to describe the use of technical knowledge, apparatus, and procedures in geographic investigation and evaluation. In this situation, technical geography would entail the collection, processing, analysis, and interpretation of geographic data using specialized methods, tools, and software.

KEYWORDS:

Central Tendency, Geography Department, Human Physical, Information Science, Technical Geography.

INTRODUCTION

Technical geography is the branch of geography that involves using, studying, and creating tools to obtain, analyze, interpret, and understand spatial information. The other two branches, human geography and physical geography, can usually apply the concepts and techniques of technical geography. However, the methods and theory are distinct, and a technical geographer may be more concerned with the technological and theoretical concepts than the nature of the data. Thus, the spatial data types a technical geographer employ may vary widely, including human and physical geography topics, with the common thread being the techniques and philosophies employed. While technical geography mostly works with quantitative data, the techniques and technology can be applied to qualitative geography, differentiating it from quantitative geography. Within the branch of technical geography are the major and overlapping subbranches of geographic information science, geomatics, and geoinformatics [1]–[3].

The term "technical geography" is a combination of the words "technical," from the Greek v (technikós meaning art or craft), meaning relating to a specific subject or activity and requiring practical skills, and "geography," from the Greek v (geographia, a combination of the Greek words 'Geo' (The Earth) and 'Graphien' to describe. Literally "earth description"), a branch of science concerned with the study of the Earth's territories, characteristics, people, and occurrences. The term "technical geography" can be traced back to at least 1749 in the publication "Geography reformed: a new system of general geography, according to an accurate analysis of the science in four parts." This publication by Edward Cave was divided into four parts, one of which was titled "containing technical geography.""The Description confider'd as to Form is of three Sorts; the first exhibits the Earth by a Draught or Delineation; the second by Tables, or Regillers; and the third by Treties or Discourse; thus, Technical Geography may be divided into Representatory, Synoptical, and Explanatory."

As a modern concept, the term is intrinsically linked to geography's quantitative revolution in the 1950s and 1960s. It focuses on spatial statistics and visualizing spatial information, emphasizing quantitative data and the scientific method. It re-emerges as a branch of geography in the 2000s, and as such, i When subdividing the discipline within the literature, terms like "techniques of geographic analysis", "geographic information and analysis", "geographic information technology", "geography methods and techniques", and "quantitative geography" are used to describe the same or similar concepts as technical geography.

It is closely associated with, and sometimes used interchangeably with, the subfield of geographic information science. Many of these terms or phrases are "grammatically awkward" and do not explicitly link the discipline as a branch of geography. Each one also varies slightly in definition and scope, with some focusing more on how the technology applies to human or physical geography than how it is distinct in focus. The term technical geography is used by the UNESCO Encyclopedia of Life Support Systems to divide geography into themes, alongside physical geography and human geography. The benefit of this wording is that it is consistent with the other two branches and clearly places the discipline within geography.

The term technical geography as a distinct concept in geography dates back at least as far as 1749 in the publication "Geography reformed: a new system of general geography, according to an accurate analysis of the science in four parts. This book distinguishes the term as a subdivision within geography, focusing on cartography and cartographic theory.By 1917, technical geography was taught alongside mathematics, chemistry, and other natural sciences in some British schools. As techniques and concepts in technical geography advanced, geographers began to lament the lack of understanding and use of more advanced geographic concepts in society and law.

During the quantitative revolution of the 1950s and 1960s,the techniques and methods of managing geographical information were largely focused on supporting human or physical geography, rather than as a topic of study itself. In the years preceding the quantitative revolution, geography was generally fragmented and focused on descriptive approaches, with many United States universities eliminating geography departments across the country. To address this, geographers began to debate the merits of more scientific and methods-based approaches to the discipline and advocate for the benefits these methods had to other technical courses.

Some, such as influential cartographer George Jenks went as far as to suggest that cartography should be a separate academic discipline from geography entirely, even if only at a few academic institutions. This approach was shunned by more traditional geographers, who viewed it as a deviation from how geographers had always viewed and interacted with maps. While how best to approach the technical aspect of geography was heavily debated among geographers, geography departments at universities across the country began to teach a more scientific approach to geography. During the early days of the quantitative revolution, the term quantitative geography emerged as a subdiscipline within technical geography focusing exclusively on these quantitative methods for handling spatial data.

The main claim for the quantitative revolution is that it resulted in a shift from descriptive (idiographic) geography to empirical law-making (nomothetic) geography.The first of these laws was proposed by Waldo Tobler in his 1970 paper "A Computer Movie Simulating Urban Growth in the Detroit Region," and more have since been proposed. In general, some geographers argue against the idea that laws in geography are necessary or even valid. These criticisms have been addressed by Tobler and others. Examples of these laws include Tobler's first law of geography, Tobler's second law of geography, and Arbia's law of geography.

New geographical data sources evolved with computers and GIS during the quantitative revolution. Air photo technology was extensively employed in World War I and was later extended to civilian endeavors. The opening sentence of a 1941 textbook titled "Aerophotography and Aerosurverying" stated:"There is no longer any need to preach for aerial photographyat least not in the United States--because its use has become so widespread and valuable that even the farmer who plants his fields in a remote corner of the country recognizes its worth." Remote sensing technology advanced rapidly again during World War II, and the techniques used were quickly assimilated as aids in geographical studies. During the Cold War, advancements in photography, aircraft, and rockets only increased the effectiveness of remote sensing techniques.As the technology became available to the general public, geographers were soon overwhelmed with large volumes of satellite and aerial images. New ways were necessary to store, handle, evaluate, and utilize this new data stream, giving rise to remote sensing scientists.

The advent of early computers coincided with the quantitative revolution. The multidisciplinary character of geography encourages geographers to look at advancements in other domains, and geographers prefer to monitor and adopt technology breakthroughs from other disciplines rather than establishing unique methods to undertake geographic research. Computers were no exception. Waldo Tobler published the first paper detailing the use of computers in the map-making process titled "Automation and Cartography" in 1959, more than a decade after the first computers were developed. As computer technology advanced and better hardware became available, geographers quickly adopted the technology to create maps. In 1960, Roger Tomlinson created the first true geographic information system, which allowed for the storage and analysis of spatial data within a computer. These tools revolutionized the discipline of geography by contributing to the positivist scientific approaches to the discipline during the quantitative revolution. In response to critiques, British geographer Stan Openshaw stated:

The United States military launched the first satellites that enabled the modern Global Positioning System in 1978, and the system's full capability was made available to the general public in 2000. This enabled a level of rapid acquisition of spatial coordinates that was previously prohibitively expensive. Geographers started investigating ways and uses for this data.Because these new tools and approaches are generally relevant to other disciplines, geographers have expressed worry that non-geographers in other disciplines may become better at utilizing them than geographers[4]–[6].

"The risk is that non-geographers who master these methods analyze spatiotemporal data and information better than geographers, which is why the need to deal with competition induced by other sciences claiming geographic space as their subject of study and research becomes a serious challenge for geographers. Geographers must test and adapt to new methods, models, and procedures and implement them in all fields and development trends of Geography." Technical geography as a concept emerges to correct the historical trend in geography of adapting rather than developing new methods, technologies, and techniques for conducting geographic research by encouraging trained geographers to pursue this line of inquiry.While the use of the term "technical geography" itself has been debated since at least the 1700s, concepts within technical geography are often separated from the rest of geography when organizing an inquiry. While a minor journal by contrast, all works inside it fit within, and presumably support, the technical geography term.

The University Consortium for Geographic Information Science was established in response to this, and in 2006 published Geographic Information Science and Technology Body of Knowledge (GISTBoK). The GISTBoK is designed to inform curriculum teaching GIS and other geospatial technologies. Today, while GIS&T is a common descriptor for clusters of courses involving concepts described in the GISTBoK, several geography departments, including the University of Maryland and South Dakota State University, use the term technical geography to describe clusters of courses offered under the GIS&T umbrella.In 2009, the UNESCO Encyclopedia of Life Support Systems used the term technical geography to organize their geography literature, establishing a three-branch model of technical, human, and physical geography. Ionel Haidu expands on the categorization of technical geography as a branch in his 2016 paper.

Subdividing any discipline is difficult, and geography is no exception. Geography is a very fragmented discipline, with a history spanning cultures and thousands of years. Other competing terms within the discipline, often used interchangeably with technical geography and each other to subdivide the discipline, include "techniques of geographic analysis", "geographic information technology", geographic information science, geoinformation. Others, however, argue that geography's concept and practices do not form a separate field. This argument contends that geography must be applied and, as such, must concentrate on some subset of human or physical geography. They also claim that there isn't enough well-established peer-reviewed research to support the name as a distinct branch.

In response to the ideas and philosophies advanced during the quantitative revolution, critical geography emerged and advanced many criticisms of technical geographers' methods and ideas. Other geographers have criticized geography for moving away from the abstract, unquantifiable aspects of place that are essential to understanding geography.Some have claimed that technical geography has introduced gender bias into geography departments since the field is predominantly performed by males and is seen by some as more masculine.

DISCUSSION

Geography contributes to science as part of a wide, innovative, interdisciplinary endeavor to push the boundaries of knowledge forward. In doing so, it provides vital insights into some of the key challenges confronting the sciences, particularly those concerning the pursuit of knowledge for its own sake as well as for the goal of enhancing society's well-being.In this chapter, examples of geography's existing and prospective contributions to scientific knowledge are provided. The chapter is structured around the three "lenses" through which geographers see the world: integration in place, interdependencies between locations, and interdependencies across scales.

Along with spatial representation, these are the key parts of this chapter. The chapter offers examples from geography's subject matter in each of these parts to demonstrate how geographic thinking and methodologies contribute to scientific knowledge in general. The chapter then goes on to show how such thinking might be applied to major scientific and social challenges. Following these images is a similarly short and selective treatment of spatial representation.For the purpose of brevity and since the report is mainly aimed at audiences outside of the field, the chapter shows geography's contributions using a few examples selected to demonstrate the breadth of geographic study. Of fact, geographers have contributed much more to science than is particularly included here. This study is discussed in detail throughout the paper.

Similarly, geography research has emphasized the significance of location in the construction of cultural and social identities and experiences. In this late-twentieth-century world, as Americans struggle to address tensions and celebrate the richness of human differences of ethnicity, race, nationality, gender, and generation a focus on how ideas about place divide but also connect people can offer new visions for personal and social values. Geographers have also questioned the propensity of many social science studies to regard the environment in which people live as solely a result of history. They contend that the tangible aspects of people's living surroundings reflect and impact their personal, social, and environmental understandings. As the social sciences began to take the significance of symbols and pictures in human affairs more seriously, geography's interest in the social aspects of landscapes has gained increasing importance and exposure. Geographers have conducted extensive study to unearth the political/social meanings, influences, and tensions buried in landscapes and landscape representations[7]–[9].

Geographic research, through concentrating on the concrete settings in which people live and work, is part of an increasing push within the social sciences to understand the role of daily life in social change. Simultaneously, geographers are influencing the direction of that impetus by connecting human thoughts and activities to the environments in which they are entrenched.Geographic research addressing integration in place has pushed the field to the cutting edge of experimentation, with integration as a scientific issue. The experience of geography with integration in situ has also been helpful in bringing insights to topics of general scientific interest, as evidenced by the following instances of complexity and nonlinearity and central tendency and variance. Geographic study on integration in place is also essential for scientific comprehension of critical social challenges.

To demonstrate the significance of this, three examples are provided below: economic health, ecological change, and conflict and collaboration.Because locations display a broad range of interlocking processes and activities, as well as links with other places, they are ideal laboratories for the study of complexity. Nonlinear development and decrease are also seen locally, because new processes or activities may not face well-developed moderating forces. Geographers have studied place systems that are complex and nonlinear in order to better understand how and why places evolve. For example, study on the formation of the American urban system demonstrates the evolutionary character of human settlement systems. This study demonstrates that early settlement patterns might build "path dependencies" for future settlement system development. It also demonstrates how economic restructuring, such as the transition from mercantilism to industrial capitalism, may result in the "bifurcation" of settlement systems, with new nodes of expansion in some areas and growth dissipation in others. The complexity of spatial economic dynamics reflects disequilibrating contradictions and social conflicts, leading to periodic attempts by the private sector and the state to overcome emerging conflicts and crises through spatial restructuring.

Geographers have utilized systems theory to better explain the complex interactions that occur between nature and civilization as a result of natural disasters, including numerous adaptations and associated feedbacks. Geographers have also investigated the mechanics of ecosystem stability and change, particularly the role of humans and other short- and long-term agents of ecosystem change. Ideas regarding chaotic behavior or catastrophic occurrences inside locations have also influenced studies on urban expansion. These works demonstrate geographers' contributions to a more basic understanding of environmental and social systems in ways that should pique the interest of ecologists, engineers, mathematicians, physicists, and other scientists.

Other geographical study has focused on identifying and describing patterns that may have originated through nonlinear, complex, or chaotic processes. Fractal dimensions have been employed to simplify and describe the results of nonlinear, chaotic, or complicated processes. Fractals have been used to assess and describe urban environments, as well as satellite and map pictures.Interactions in space and with nature produce specific spatial and environmental regularities, leading to the investigation of predicted outcomes, or core trends, throughout geography's areas of interest. However, geographers have acknowledged that visible geometries in the social and physical environments are dynamic and multifaceted in their interpretation. Certain geographic patterns represent efficiency (as in economic production systems), but only under very specific circumstances that are prone to change (such as travel time or cost) and intrinsic unpredictability.

Change and intrinsic variability often interact to impact observed variation, which might take the shape of unsystematic deviations from central tendency, changes to the central tendency itself, or changes in the variance structure. Changes in variation may indicate transitions from one system state to another; hence, variation cannot be disregarded without negative or even catastrophic effects. Geographical study on the nature of change and variability, as well as central tendency, has revealed a great deal about place dynamics. Geographers, like other scientists, have realized that variation and central tendency are often interrelated and cannot be assessed or comprehended independently[10].

A spatial view understands that economic changes may cause or aggravate economic imbalances across areas, regardless of whether the economy is going toward or away from equilibrium. Geographers are particularly concerned with the consequences of economic development for diverse groups in society within a location, particularly those defined by class, gender, and race. Related concerns include the makeup of the labor force as a result of social pressures, as well as the possibility for cooperation vs conflict. Geographers have studied high-tech hubs to assess their potential as models for regional development in other sectors. They have observed that the locational factors for innovation centers vary from those for other industrial operations such as branch plants for example, high skill levels are very necessary for innovation centers. Because labor is less mobile than capital, regional development connected to technology change is likely to follow existing patterns of labor skill, heightening the problems for places that do not already have competitive skill levels.

Concerns about environmental change have grown significantly in recent decades. Geographers' study on human-induced climate change, ecosystem dynamics and biodiversity, and earth surface processes has made significant contributions to our knowledge of such shifts.Human populations, for example, are becoming more concentrated in urban and suburban areas. In result, land surfaces in these locations are being converted into very artificial mosaics, mosaics that are often dominated by linked and impermeable patches of buildings and transportation networks. Changes in local and regional climates accompany the transition of rural landscapes into suburban and urban landscapes. Geographers have been measuring and simulating urban heating and drying for decades. Not only has geographers' research revealed the climatic repercussions of urbanization, but their models have started to give a way of estimating the possible climatic effects of future urbanization.

CONCLUSION

Technical geography uses visualization methods to communicate geographic information in an engaging and educational way. To successfully express spatial patterns, this may entail developing interactive maps, 3D visualizations, and data-driven visuals.Although "technical geography" may not be a distinct area, it is becoming more and more important for geographers to have technical knowledge in order to evaluate and interpret spatial data, comprehend intricate geographic phenomena, and solve practical issues.

REFERENCES

[1] Ionel Haidu, "What Is Technical Geography," *Geogr. Tech.*, 2016.

[2] C. Gao, Q. Guo, D. Jiang, Z. Wang, C. Fang, and M. Hao, "Theoretical basis and technical methods of cyberspace geography," *J. Geogr. Sci.*, 2019, doi: 10.1007/s11442-019-1698-7.

[3] F. R. Munro, "The geography of socio-technical transitions: Transition–periphery dynamics," *Geogr. J.*, 2019, doi: 10.1111/geoj.12306.

[4] C. Gao, Q. Guo, D. Jiang, Z. Wang, C. Fang, and M. Hao, "The theoretical basis and technical path of cyberspace geography," *Dili Xuebao/Acta Geogr. Sin.*, 2019, doi: 10.11821/dlxb201909001.

[5] H. Rubinton, "The Geography of Business Dynamism and Skill Biased Technical Change," *SSRN*, 2020.

[6] J. Ash, "Smart Cities and the Digital Geographies of Technical Memory," *Ann. Am. Assoc. Geogr.*, 2019, doi: 10.1080/24694452.2018.1489214.

[7] L. Fuenfschilling and C. Binz, "Global socio-technical regimes," *Res. Policy*, 2018, doi: 10.1016/j.respol.2018.02.003.

[8] T. Meelen, K. Frenken, and S. Hobrink, "Weak spots for car-sharing in The Netherlands? The geography of socio-technical regimes and the adoption of niche innovations," *Energy Res. Soc. Sci.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.erss.2019.01.023.

[9] L. Coenen, T. Hansen, A. Glasmeier, and R. Hassink, "Regional foundations of energy transitions," *Cambridge Journal of Regions, Economy and Society*. 2021. doi: 10.1093/cjres/rsab010.

[10] M. A. Marfai, B. Ahmada, B. Mutaqin, and R. Windayati, "Dive resort mapping and network analysis: Water resources management in pemuteran coastal area, Bali - Indonesia," *Geogr. Tech.*, 2020, doi: 10.21163/GT_2020.152.11.

CHAPTER 11

A BRIEF OVERVIEW OF THE HUMAN GEOGRAPHY

Dr. Syed Yaseen, Associate Professor,
School of Commerce, Jain Deemed to be University, Bangalore, India,
Email Id- syedyaseen@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Geography enables us to investigate and comprehend space and place by recognizing and investigating the vast diversity in cultures, political systems, economics, landscapes, and ecosystems throughout the globe. Human geography, like physical geography, is a subfield of geography. Human geography is the study of the interrelationships between the physical environment and the sociocultural environment formed by humans via reciprocal interaction.

KEYWORDS:

Human Geography, Health Geography, Human Physical, Regional Geography, Urban Geography.

INTRODUCTION

Human geography, sometimes known as anthropogeography, is the field of geography that investigates the spatial linkages between human groups, cultures, economics, and their interactions with the environment, such as urban sprawl and urban redevelopment. It investigates the spatial interdependence of social interactions and the environment using qualitative and quantitative methodologies. Geography was not acknowledged as a distinct academic profession until the 18th century, even though numerous academics had been doing geographical research for much longer, notably via mapping.

Although the Royal Geographical Society was formed in England in 1830, the United Kingdom did not get its first official Chair in geography until 1917. Halford John Mackinder, appointed reader at Oxford University in 1887, was the first true geographical mind to emerge in the United Kingdom.In 1888, the National Geographic Society was created in the United States, and it started publishing the National Geographic magazine, which became and continues to be a tremendous popularizer of geographic knowledge. Geographic research and teaching on geographical themes have long been funded by the organization.The Association of American Geographers was created in 1904 and renamed the American Association of Geographers in 2016 to better represent its membership's increasingly worldwide nature[1]–[3].

John Snow's map of the 1854 Broad Street cholera epidemic was one of the earliest instances of geographic methodology being utilized for purposes other than describing and theorizing the physical qualities of the planet. Even though Snow was essentially a physician and epidemiologist rather than a geographer, his map is likely one of the early instances of health geography.The now-clear distinctions between the subfields of physical and human geography emerged later.

The relationship between physical and human qualities of geography is most visible in the notion of environmental determinism, popularized in the nineteenth century by Carl Ritter and others, and has strong linkages to the area of evolutionary biology at the time (Figure.1). The notion of environmental determinism holds that people's physical, mental, and moral tendencies are directly influenced by their natural environment. By the mid-nineteenth century, however, environmental determinism was being criticized for lacking the methodological rigor associated with contemporary science, and subsequently for being used to legitimize racism and imperialism.

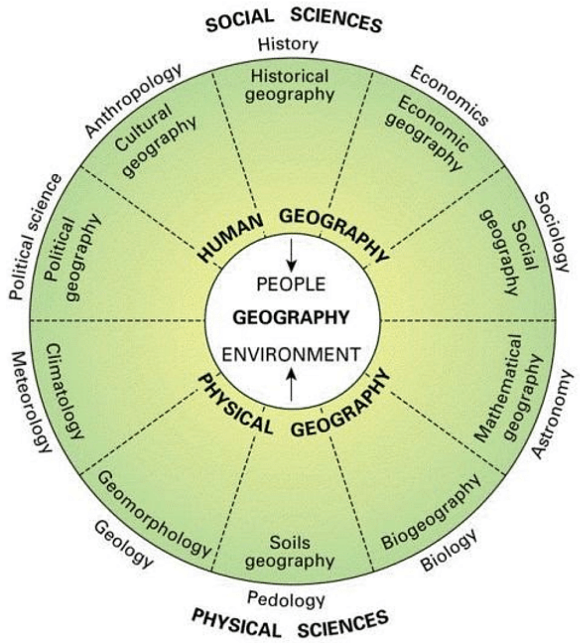

Figure 1: Diagram showing the overview of the human geography (EduRev).

During the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries, there was a comparable interest with both human and physical characteristics centered on regional geography. The purpose of regional geography was to partition space into regions and then study and characterize the distinctive qualities of each area via both human and physical components. With connections to possibilism and cultural ecology, some of the same conceptions of the environment's causal impact on society and culture continue with environmental determinism.

However, by the 1960s, the quantitative revolution had resulted in harsh criticism of regional geography. Geographers in the mid-20th century began to apply statistical and mathematical models to solve spatial problems due to a perceived lack of scientific rigor in the discipline's overly descriptive nature, as well as a continued separation of geography from its two subfields of physical and human geography and from geology. Much of the progress made during the quantitative revolution is now visible in the use of geographic information systems; statistics, spatial modeling, and positivist methods continue to be significant in many fields of human geography. Fred K. Schaefer, Waldo Tobler, William Garrison, Peter Haggett, Richard J. Chorley, William Bunge, and Torsten Hägerstrand are well-known geographers from this time period.

A variety of criticisms of the positivism now associated with geography surfaced beginning in the 1970s. These criticisms, known as 'critical geography,' were another watershed moment in the subject. For a long time, behavioral geography was used to investigate how individuals viewed spaces and locations and made locational judgments. In the 1970s and 1980s, the more influential 'radical geography' arose. It is connected with geographers such as David Harvey and Richard Peet, and depends significantly on Marxist theory and methodologies. Rather to the detachment associated with positivists, radical geographers attempt to say meaningful things about issues identified by quantitative methods, give explanations rather than descriptions, put up alternatives and answers, and be politically active. (Radical geographers criticized the quantitative revolution's impartiality and detachment as a weapon of capital). Radical geography and its connections to Marxism and similar ideologies continue to play an important role in current human geography (See: Antipode). The emergence of 'humanistic geography', related with the work of Yi-Fu Tuan, pushed for a far more qualitative approach in technique.

Critical geography's evolution has resulted in current approaches to the subject such as feminist geography, new cultural geography, settlement geography, "demonic" geographies, and interaction with postmodern and post-structural theories and philosophies.The study of cultural goods and norms - their variety across areas and regions, as well as their relationships - is known as cultural geography. It focuses on describing and evaluating how language, religion, economics, governance, and other cultural phenomena differ or stay constant from one location to the next, as well as understanding how people act geographically. Social geography, animal geographies, language geography, sexuality and space, children's geographies, and religion and geography are all subfields.

The study of the Earth's geography in relation to the standard of living and quality of life of its human inhabitants, as well as the location, distribution, and spatial organization of economic activity on the planet, is known as development geography.The researcher's methodological approach has a considerable impact on the topic matter under investigation.Economic geography investigates the interactions between human economic systems, states, and other elements, as well as the biophysical environment[4]–[6].

Medical or health geography is the study of health, illness, and health care using geographical information, viewpoints, and methodologies. Health geography is concerned with the spatial relationships and patterns that exist between individuals and their surroundings. This is a branch of human geography that studies how and why illnesses spread and are confined.The study of the past's human, physical, fictional, theoretical, and "real" geographies is known as historical geography. Historical geography is concerned with a broad range of themes and subjects. The study of previous geographies and how a location or area evolves through time is a recurrent subject. Many historical geographers explore geographical trends across time, such as how humans interacted with their surroundings and shaped the cultural landscape.

Political geography is concerned with the geographically unequal consequences of political processes as well as the ways in which political processes are impacted by spatial structures.Electoral geography, geopolitics, strategic geography, and military geography are examples of subfields.The study of how geographical differences in the distribution, composition, migration, and growth of people are connected to their environment or location is known as population geography. Settlement geography, often known as urban geography, is the study of urban and rural regions with a focus on spatial, relational, and theoretical elements of settlement. This is the investigation of places with a high concentration of structures and infrastructure. These are places with a high concentration of secondary and tertiary economic activity.

The study of cities, towns, and other regions of relatively dense habitation is known as urban geography. Site (how a settlement is positioned relative to the physical environment) and situation (how a settlement is positioned compared to other settlements) are the two key objectives. Another area of interest is the internal organization of metropolitan regions in terms of diverse population groupings and infrastructural architecture. This subdiscipline also relies on concepts from other fields of Human Geography to examine their role in the processes and patterns seen in cities.Economic geography, population geography, and settlement geography are examples of subfields. These are by no means the only subfields that may be employed to aid in the study of urban geography, but they are some key participants.

DISCUSSION

The study of the interactions between people, places, and environments, as well as how they alter geographically and temporally across and between locales. Whereas physical geography focuses on the spatial and environmental processes that shape the natural world and draws on natural and physical sciences for scientific underpinnings and methods of investigation, human geography focuses on the spatial organization and processes that shape people's lives and activities, as well as their interactions with places and nature. Human geography is more closely related to the social sciences and humanities, sharing philosophical views and methodologies (see physical geography for more on the link between human and physical geography; environmental geography)[7]–[9].

Human geography is made up of several sub-disciplines that focus on various aspects of human activity and organization, such as cultural geography, economic geography, health geography, historical geography, political geography, population geography, rural geography, social geography, transport geography, and urban geography. The application of a set of key geographical ideas to the phenomena under examination, such as space, location, size, landscape, mobility, and nature, separates human geography from other related disciplines such as development, economics, politics, and sociology. These principles emphasize the idea that the world functions geographically and chronologically, and that social ties do not exist independently of location and environment, but are deeply rooted in and through them.

In terms of methodologies, human geography employs a wide range of quantitative and qualitative approaches from the social sciences and humanities, with the goal of providing a complete geographic study. It also emphasizes fieldwork and mapping and has contributed to the development of new methodologies and techniques, particularly in the fields of spatial analysis, spatial statistics, and GIScience.Human geography's long-term growth has paralleled that of the subject as a whole. Since the Quantitative Revolution of the 1950s and 1960s, the ideology that underpins human geography research has evolved dramatically[10].

Behavioral geography, radical geography, and humanistic geography were all introduced in the 1970s. In the 1980s, they were followed by a shift toward political economics, the creation of feminist geography, and the introduction of critical social theory as a foundation for the cultural turn. These methods, taken together, created the foundation for the development of critical geography and the entry of postmodern and post-structural thought into the subject in the 1990s.

These diverse advances did not completely replace prior theoretical methods but rather contributed to an additional variety of geographic thinking. For example, quantitative geography remains a dynamic field of geographical studies, owing in part to the expansion of GIScience. As a consequence, spatial thinking is now largely pluralistic, with no one viewpoint prevailing.

CONCLUSION

Human geography is the study of the interrelationships between the physical environment and the socio-cultural environment formed by humans via reciprocal interaction.India is located in Asia, and the majority of it is made up of a peninsula that juts out into the sea. The Bay of Bengal is to the southeast of India, with the Arabian Sea to the southwest. The Himalayas, the world's highest mountain range, are located to the north of the nation.The World in Spatial Terms, Places and Regions, Physical Systems, Human Systems, Environment, and Society, and The Uses of Geography are the six key parts.It aims to explain population patterns, economic characteristics, and political configurations of areas by taking into account both the physical and cultural context.

REFERENCES

[1] J. Middleton and F. Samanani, "Accounting for care within human geography," *Trans. Inst. Br. Geogr.*, 2021, doi: 10.1111/tran.12403.

[2] C. Gibson, "Human Geography," in *International Encyclopedia of Human Geography, Second Edition*, 2019. doi: 10.1016/B978-0-08-102295-5.10888-1.

[3] C. Ye, Y. Gao, J. Yu, and Y. He, "Teaching human geography using a couplet game," *J. Geogr. High. Educ.*, 2021, doi: 10.1080/03098265.2020.1849062.

[4] B. Völker, "Network Thinking in Human Geography: Musings of a Newbie," *Tijdschr. voor Econ. en Soc. Geogr.*, 2021, doi: 10.1111/tesg.12490.

[5] J. Wainwright, "Is Critical Human Geography Research Replicable?," *Ann. Am. Assoc. Geogr.*, 2020, doi: 10.1080/24694452.2020.1806025.

[6] M. Wang, M. Lin, and H. Zhu, "Research progress and implication of the'neural turn'in human geography," *Prog. Geogr.*, 2020, doi: 10.18306/dlkxjz.2020.07.011.

[7] V. Ira and R. Matlovič, "Challenges and opportunities for human geography: A few remarks," *Geogr. Pol.*, 2020, doi: 10.7163/GPol.0184.

[8] H. Bulkeley, "Navigating climate's human geographies: Exploring the whereabouts of climate politics," *Dialogues Hum. Geogr.*, 2019, doi: 10.1177/2043820619829920.

[9] C. Fang, H. Liu, K. Luo, and X. Yu, "Process and proposal for comprehensive regionalization of Chinese human geography," *J. Geogr. Sci.*, 2017, doi: 10.1007/s11442-017-1428-y.

[10] C. Çalişkan and B. B. Dedeoğlu, "Human geography and branding in small destinations: a case study of Adıyaman," *Asia Pacific J. Tour. Res.*, 2021, doi: 10.1080/10941665.2018.1544157.

CHAPTER 12

ANIMAL GEOGRAPHY AND THEIR PROSPECTIVE

N Sathyanarayana, Assistant Professor,
School of Commerce, Jain Deemed to be University, Bangalore, India,
Email Id- n.sathyanarayana@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

The study of animal geographies focuses on the interactions between people and non-human animals. We dispute the traditional role of animals in cultural and geographical studies and advocate for research that undermines the apparent dichotomy between man and beast. Animal geography, often known as zoogeography or biogeography, is a branch of geography concerned with the geographical distribution and patterns of animal species on Earth's surface. It investigates how environmental variables such as climate, terrain, habitat features, and human activities impact animal population distribution and abundance.

KEYWORDS:

Animal Geography, Animal Human, Animal Connects, Huaman Animal, Wave Animal.

INTRODUCTION

Animal geography is a discipline of geography that falls under the nature-society/human-environment umbrella, as well as a subfield within the wider, multidisciplinary umbrella of human-animal studies (HAS). The study of "the complex entanglings of human-animal relations with space, place, location, environment, and landscape"or "the study of where, when, why, and how nonhuman animals intersect with human societies "Recent work expands on these concepts to argue for an ecology of relations in which people and animals are entwined, taking into account the inhabited spaces of animals and their conscious interactions with not just human but also other nonhuman bodies. Monica Ogra and Julie Urbanik formed the Association of American Geographers' Animal Geography Specialty Group in 2009, while Daniel Allen launched the Animal Geography Research Network in 2011[1]–[3].

From the late 1800s through the early part of the twentieth century, the first wave of animal geography, known as zoogeography, rose to prominence as a geographic discipline. The study of animals was seen as an important aspect of the subject at the time, with the purpose of "the scientific study of animal life with reference to the distribution of animals on the earth and the mutual influence of environment and animals upon each other." The creatures studied were virtually entirely wild animals, and zoogeographers were drawing on new ideas of evolution and natural selection. They studied the development and mobility of species through time and space, as well as how animals adapted to varied habitats. "The ambition was to establish general laws of how animals arranged themselves across the earth's surface or, at smaller scales, patterns of spatial co-variation between animals and other environmental factors." Newbigin's Animal Geography is a key book. Atlas of Zoogeography by Bartholomew, Clarke, and Grimshaw, and

Allee and Schmidt's Ecological Animal Geography.By the mid-twentieth century, new sciences like biology and zoology had begun to take on the traditional zoogeographic cataloging of species, their ranges, and ecologies. Zoogeography survives now as a dynamic area of biogeography in geography.

The mid-twentieth century witnessed a shift away from zoogeography (though it was never completely abandoned) and toward inquiries about and interest in the influence of people on animals and human-animal connections. Carl Sauer and Charles Bennett were two prominent geographers who shaped this era of animal geography. Sauer's interest in the cultural landscape - or cultural ecology (how human cultures create and are changed by their surroundings) - required him to examine the subject of animal domestication. Sauer's study centered on the history of domestication and how human usage of cattle (through fencing, grazing, and shelters) altered the landscape.

Bennett advocated for a 'cultural animal geography' that focuses on the relationships between animals and human societies, such as subsistence hunting and fishing. The species being researched was what caused the transition from the first to the second wave of animal geography. Instead of concentrating just on wildlife, second wave animal geography included domesticated cattle. For the following few decades, study on the origins of domestication, cultural rituals surrounding domestication, and various societies' livestock relations (sedentary vs nomadic herding) dominated animal geography as cultural ecology. A Ceremonial Ox of India by Simoons and Simoons,Gades' study on the guinea pig, and Cansdale's Animals and Man are among the key works. Baldwingives a great review of second wave animal geography studies.

Several events occurred in the early 1990s that caused geographers with an interest in animals and human-animal studies to reconsider what was achievable in animal geography. The rise of the global animal advocacy movement in the 1980s and early 1990s addressed everything from pet overpopulation to saving endangered species, exposing cruelty to animals in industrial farming (factory farms or concentrated animal feeding operations), and protesting circuses, the use of fur, and hunting - all to raise public awareness of how humans treat non-human others.

Biologists and ethologists studied animal behavior and species loss/discovery in the academy, creating awareness of the experience lives of animals as well as their precarious coexistence with humans. Social scientists were rethinking what it meant to be a subject and peering into nature's black box to get fresh insights into the relationships between people and the rest of the earth. Animal geographers recognized that there was a wide range of human-animal relationships that needed to be treated geographically. Tuan's work on pets in Dominance and Affection was at the forefront of this third wave of animal geography, as well as a special issues issue of Environment and Planning D: Society and Space edited by Wolch and Emel.

The three waves of animal geography are distinguished by two key featuresan expanded concept of human-animal relations that includes all time periods and locations of human-animal encounters (rather than just wildlife or livestock), and attempts to include the animals themselves as subjects. There has been an explosion of case studies and thinking since the 1995 release. Wolch and Emel's Animal Geographies: Place, Politics, and Identity in the Nature-Culture Borderlands is a key study that brings together third wave animal geography. Animal Spaces, Beastly Places: New Geographies of Human-Animal Relations by Philo and Wilbert,Placing Animals: An Introduction to the Geography of Human-Animal Relations by Urbanik, Critical

Animal Geographies: Politics, Intersections, and Hierarchies in a Multispecies World by Gillespie and Collard and Historical Animal Geographies by Wilcox and Rutherford.

Animal geography theory. Whatmore's Hybrid Geographies, Hobson's work on political animals via the practice of bear-file farming, and new research on animals' relationships with the material world are two key works addressing how to think about human-animal connections in general. Animal geography in cities. Researchers in this field are interested in understanding how cities have historically and now function as multi-species environments. Wolch et al.'s work on what makes a transspecies urban theory and Wolch's work on manifesting a multi-species city, as well as Philo's work on the historical backdrop for the removal of cattle from the city, provide theoretical work.

Animal geography and ethics. This subject is concerned with how distance, place, and time affect whether activities on other species are appropriate or wrong. Lynn's article on geoethics and Jones' article on an ethics of encounter are useful places to start.Animals and human identities. The usage of animals by humans to identify themselves as humans or to differentiate between human groups has a rich geographical history. Brown and Rasmussen investigate bestiality, Elder et al. investigate how animals are used to discriminate against human groups, and Neo investigates how ethnicity influences pig production in Malaysia. Others, like as Barua, think that animal identities might be cosmopolitan, formed through animal mobility and encounter with many cultures. All of them are good case studies.

Subjects are animals. One of the most challenging elements of studying animals is that they cannot communicate with us in human language. Animal geographers have been debating how to handle the reality that other species' individuals are experiencing beings. Work by Barua on elephants Bear on fish,Hinchliffe et al. on water voles, and Lorimer on nonhuman charisma are all examples. Geographers are also grappling with how to recreate the previous lives of animal subjects, how to resuscitate these lives from the historical record, and how spatially placed human-animal connections have altered through time[4]–[6].

Pets. People's most personal ties with other species are typically formed via the animals who live in their homes. The problem here is how we have moulded these creatures to meet human lives and what this entails for negotiating a more-than-human existence. Fox on dogs, Lulka on the American Kennel Club, and Nast on critical pet research are all important papers. These are working animals. Humans have long used other animals as labor, both historically and currently. The areas and locations where animals work for humans are intriguing geographies, from logging elephants to laboratory mice and zoo animals to military canines and draft animals.

For further information, see Anderson's work on zoos, Davies' work on virtual zoos and laboratory mice, and Urbanik's work on animal biotechnology politics. Animals raised in captivity. The main area of real animal usage is how we grow and farm animals - both for food and for their parts (e.g., fur). This research has focused on the evolution of modern farming systems, the ethics of eating animals, and how livestock connections influence conceptions of location. Buller and Morris analyze farm animal welfare, Holloway investigates technology improvements in dairy production, Hovorka investigates African urban livestock, and Yarwood et al. investigate the livestock landscape.

Animals in the wild. Animal geographers have done the most research on this aspect of human-animal connections to yet. This has proved to be a dynamic area, from theoretical investigations of wildlife categorization to case studies of human-wildlife conflict, wildlife tourism, and specific human-wild animal geographies. Emel's work on wolves, work on wildlife and mobility, and others are key papers. Vaccaro and Beltran's work on reintroductions, Whatmore and Thorne's work on relational typologies of wildlife,and expansions of the latter's work via animal and conservation research in historical and present trans-national settings.Even though the animal geographies project has covered a wide range of species, some have garnered more attention than others. These species have served as ideal ‘model' organisms for posing animal-related concerns in geographical theory.

Elephants have been significant in animal geography since the work of Whatmore and Thorne on wildlife spatial arrangements. They inquire about how various zoo procedures shape the African elephant Duchess, compared her with equivalents in the wild. Whatmore and Thorne's research of becoming-elephant was a watershed moment in animal and nonhuman geographies. Asian elephants have also appeared in historical animal geographies,animal geography methods,and multidisciplinary biogeography’s. They have been essential to recent work on cosmopolitan ecologies as well as discussions regarding the connections between political ecology and nonrepresentational theory.

Recent animal geography studies have also included Gullo, Lassiter, Wolch, and Collard's work on place-specific relational geographies, utilization of shared landscapes, and interactions between cougars and humans. Doubleday's research on tigers in India and Wilcox's research on jaguars in the Americas both investigate socially constructed emotional logics and their implications for conservation goals across a variety of geographies and historical periods.

DISCUSSION

The study of how nonhuman animals interact with human society is known as animal geography. Animal geographers investigate these connections through time and space to better understand why and how diverse human-animal combinations come and go, as well as to acquire a better grasp of nonhuman subjectivities. Although animals have always piqued geographers' attention, the methods for studying them have evolved through time. The first animal geography was concerned with recording wild animals, their regional ranges, and environmental adaptations. The study of domesticated animals and the way livestock were entwined in human societies, as well as the influence of livestock on the landscape, dominated a second wave of animal geography inquiry.

The third wave of animal geography evolved in the 1990s, coinciding with the increasing visibility of animal-based social movements, new scientific understandings of animals as well as human influence on biodiversity, and new innovations in social theory around subject notions. This wave of animal geography focuses on the whole socioeconomic range of human-animal connections, including wild and farmed animals, pets, captive animals, research animals, and entertainment animals, as well as the many ways in which animals are employed as cultural signifiers. With its focus on space, position, and scale, animal geography is a distinctive complement to the wider, interdisciplinary subject of human-animal studies.

Because the most recent wave of animal geography is still relatively new, just a few collections give an overview of the topic. Urbanik 2012 is a wonderful place to start since it is the only book that documents the history of animal geography and maps out how current areas of study interest overlap with the human-animal studies community outside of geography. Buller 2014 presents the most current field overview, while Buller 2015 investigates the most recent approaches in the subject. Wolch and Emel 1995 is the first collection of third wave animal geography and a special issue of Environment and Planning D: Society and Space. Articles from the special issue were included in Wolch and Emel 1998, the first anthology of animal geography. Philo and Wilbert 2000 is a second anthology of animal geography. Both volumes include introductory chapters regarding the science of animal geography as well as a wide range of themes. Steinberg 2010 is an avian geographies special issue of Geographical Review. The following anthologies might help you grasp the greater area of human-animal research. Kalof and Fitzgerald's 2007 book is an anthology of historical and current extracts from a broad range of experts who have affected the growth of human-animal studies study. Flynn 2008 is a transdisciplinary collection of major modern case studies on how to research human-animal connections. Arluke and Sanders' 2009 book is a collection of essential readings on the role of animals in Western civilizations in the early twenty-first century. Urbanik and Johnston 2017 is an encyclopedic survey of essential ideas and subjects in human-animal research in a single book.

Respect for animal subjectivity and the necessity to open Nature's "black box" in order to revitalize worldviews. The importance of animals in the social formation of culture and individual human subjects, the nature of animal subjectivity, and agency itself were all highlighted. The human-animal divide, particularly how and why this line shifts over time and space, and links between animals and human identities specifically, the ways in which ideas and representations of animals shape personal and collective identity[7]–[9].Critical race and postcolonial theorists emphasized connections between race and representations of "animality," while feminists and others working on sexuality and body emphasized the importance of animals in body part coding, stimulating new considerations of human as well as animal representations and identities. Animal geographers elaborated on these findings, concentrating on the role of animals in the construction of varied identities individual and collective that humans acquire or attach to them. These identities may be associated with certain times, regions, and countries, as well as racial/ethnic, cultural, or gendered identities.

The discovery of animal subjectivity raised issues about animal agency in general and what it may signify in both human and animal existence.Actor Network Theory geographers claimed that there is no a priori difference to be formed between humans and nonhumans, and that dividing lines between people, robots, and animals are subject to change and negotiation.Wilbert questioned whether conscious intentionality was required to recognize nonhuman agency. Debates regarding the social construction of landscapes and places prompted animal geographers to investigate how animals and the networks in which they are entangled leave imprints on specific locations, regions, and landscapes across time, inspiring animal and place studies. The places under consideration include specific sites such as zoos, "borderland" communities where humans and free animals coexist, and places impacted by powerful economic or social change affecting both people and animals—particularly those caught up in the global trade in captive or domesticated animals.

Domesticated animals are potent emblems of regions, lifestyles, and livelihoods. Place-specific breeds are inextricably linked to the history and cultures of certain locations and regions. Recent changes in capitalist agriculture have fueled both rural decline and initiatives to revitalize the countryside via agrotourism and to transform the rural environment in order to preserve its rural character. Thus, family farms became theme parks featuring historic, uncommon, and endangered cattle breeds, which are now potent and fungible cultural heritage icons.

Geographers have conducted a variety of research on the inclusion and exclusion of certain species from various sorts of environments, including urban environments. Metropolitan area urban-wildland boundary zones remain persistently porous to both humans and wildlife. Despite systematic annihilation, even inner-city areas have "a shadow population of non-humans spanning the phylogenetic scale". Seeing animals as subjects implies that establishing a "zoöpolis"—a location where humans and animals coexist might aid in the reestablishment of caring networks between people and animals.

Arguments concerning animal subjectivity prompted some geographers to reconsider environmental ethics, particularly the role of animals in the moral landscape. Many animal geographers prioritize justice for both humans and animals. Lynn defined "geographical community" to include ethical issues including humans, animals, and environment. Jones suggested that all meetings between people and animals are morally charged to extend Levinas' ethics of the encounter to human-animal relationships. Elder et al. advocated for a "pratique sauvage," or radical democracy, that included not just subaltern humans but also animals[10].

The Future of Animal Geography Geography has played a significant role in explaining the historical and cultural development of human and nonhuman animal connections, as well as its gendered and racialized nature and economic embeddedness. This job must be carried forward. There are vast expanses of unexplored territory in comparative cultural studies, animal body economics, and the spatial history of human-animal connections that need articulation and analysis. efforts between groups to build "places," livelihoods, and future visions will also involve efforts to impose certain narratives and representations as the proper interpretation. Scholars must pay much greater attention to the historical and daily creation of these different tales and representations in order for people to "see" that they do not stem from natural law, a deistic nationalism, traditionalism, or some other source of mysticism.

CONCLUSION

Animal geography aids conservation efforts by identifying places rich in species, endemism, or fragility. It aids in the prioritization of conservation measures and the development of plans for habitat protection, management of protected areas, and creating connectivity across fragmented landscapes.Field surveys, species distribution modeling, remote sensing, and spatial analytic approaches are all used in animal geography studies. To understand the spatial dynamics of animal populations and their interactions with the environment, it employs ideas and methods from geography, ecology, biology, and environmental science.

REFERENCES

[1] N. A. Puasa *et al.*, “Effects of diesel, heavy metals and plastics pollution on penguins in antarctica: A review,” *Animals*. 2021. doi: 10.3390/ani11092505.

[2] K. A. Marr, “Cryptococcus gattii as an important fungal pathogen of western North America,” *Expert Review of Anti-Infective Therapy*. 2012. doi: 10.1586/eri.12.48.

[3] T. D. Treger, J. Brok, and K. Pritchard-Jones, “Biology and treatment of Wilms’ tumours in childhood,” *Rev. d’Oncologie Hématologie Pédiatrique*, 2016, doi: 10.1016/j.oncohp.2016.06.003.

[4] E. A. Lamekhova and Y. G. Lamekhov, "Methodology for providing an integrated approach to the preparation of educational practice for prospective teachers of Geography and Biology," *Samara J. Sci.*, 2020, doi: 10.17816/snv202306.

[5] C. Hoffman, R. J. Hoss, and R. P. Gongloff, "Prehistoric, tribal, and ancient Middle Eastern," in *Dreams: Understanding biology, psychology, and culture., Vol. 2.*, 2019.

[6] D. A. Vuitton *et al.*, "Epidemiology of alveolar echinococcosis with particular reference to China and Europe," *Parasitology*. 2003. doi: 10.1017/s0031182003004153.

[7] R. A. Grossman, D. J. Gould, T. J. Smith, D. O. Johnsen, and S. Pantuwatana, "Study of japanese encephalitis virus in Chiangmai Valley, Thailand: I. Introduction and study design," *Am. J. Epidemiol.*, 1973, doi: 10.1093/oxfordjournals.aje.a121536.

[8] J. G. Regli, "Herd Health Management and Record Keeping for Dairy Sheep," in *5th Great Lakes Dairy Sheep Symposium*, 1999.

[9] S. L., W. S., and R. J., "Safety and performance of the Portico valve in patients with severe aortic stenosis and excessive surgical risk: A first report of 30-day results from the PORTICO I study," *EuroIntervention*, 2016.

[10] I. T. Kracalik, "Spatial and temporal analyses of anthrax: An exploratory retrospective and prospective examination of outbreaks in Kazakhstan," 2009.

CHAPTER 13

FEMINIST GEOGRAPHY IS A PART OF THE HUMAN GEOGRAPHY

Dr. Pooja Kumari, Assistant Professor,
School of Commerce, Jain Deemed to be University, Bangalore, India,
Email Id- k.pooja@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

The group's mission is to encourage geographic study and education on women and gender issues, to examine how gender is spatially constructed, and to comprehend disparities in the lives of men and women in various regions.Feminist economic geography is linked to feminist politics and emphasizes the social construction of gender as a category of difference, as well as the development of uneven power relations that subjugate and oppress women.

KEYWORDS:

Critical Human, Feminist Geography, Gender Relations, Human Geography, Socialist Feminist.

INTRODUCTION

Feminist geography is a sub-discipline of human geography that applies feminist theories, methods, and critiques to the study of the human environment, society, and geographical space.Feminist geography emerged in the 1970s, when members of the women's movement called on academia to include women as both producers and subjects of academic work. Several disputes have surrounded the discipline.Welfare geography and liberal feminism are theoretical influences on the geography of women, which investigates the implications of geography on gender inequality. Feminist geographers stress the different gendered restrictions imposed by distance and physical separation (for example, spatial barriers might confine women to certain regions or social spheres).

In their book Companion to Feminist Geography, Seager and Johnson argue that gender is only a narrow-minded approach to understanding women's oppression throughout colonial history. As such, understanding the geography of women requires a critical approach to questions of age, class, ethnicity, orientation, and other socio-economic factors. However, Foord and Gregson suggest that the concept of gender roles derives from a static social theory that focuses on women and presents women as victims, resulting in a limited understanding of distance. Instead, they argue that the concept of women's geography can demonstrate how spatial constraint and separation enter into the construction of women's positions.In 2004, theorist Edward Said criticized the concept of geographical spaces in such a context where actions on gendered practices of representation are fabricated through dominant ideological beliefs. As a result, feminist geographies are founded on the idea that gender should be applied and developed in terms of geography[1]–[3].

Geography as a socialist feminism

Theoretically inspired by Marxism and Socialist feminism, socialist feminist geography tries to explain inequality, the link between capitalism and patriarchy, and the interrelation of geography, gender relations, and economic growth under capitalism. Socialist feminist geography is concerned with ways to minimize gender disparity caused by patriarchy and capitalism, with a particular emphasis on geographical separation, gender place, and locality. Uncertainty over the proper articulation of gender and class analysis generates a crucial theoretical issue in socialist feminist geography.

When researching married mainland Chinese immigrant women in New York City, for example, women remain the dominant object of study, and gender remains the key social connection. Socialist feminist geographers, on the other hand, realize that many other elements, such as class, influence women's post-migration experiences and conditions.Anglo-American female geographers concentrated on the social and geographical isolation of suburban households from paid jobs when they first began working at the metropolitan scale. This was seen as critical to the establishment and preservation of conventional gender relations in capitalist cultures on a daily and generational basis.

Socialist feminist geographers also investigate how regional inequalities in gender relations not only reflect, but also influence, local economic developments. Judith Butler's idea of "citationality"investigates the lack of agency around the facilitation of women's presence in geography. As a result, feminist geographers believe that anytime performative actions are employed to reduce women's rights in geographical space, surrounding norms adjust to make it seem to be the norm.

Geographies of difference for feminists

Feminist geographies of difference is a feminist geography approach that focuses on the development of gendered identities and disparities between women. It investigates gender and nature constructs using cultural, post-structural, postcolonial, and psychoanalytic theories, as well as works by women of color, lesbian women, gay men, and third-world women. Feminist geographers use this technique to explore micro-geographies of the body, mobile identities, distance, separation, and location, imagined geographies, colonialism and post-colonialism, and the environment or nature.

Many feminist geographers have moved on to three new study topics since the late 1980s: gender categories between men and women, the construction of gender relations and identities, and the contrasts between relativism and situational knowledge.For starters, feminist geographers have questioned and enlarged gender categories between men and women. They have also started to study inequalities in gender relations constructs across color, ethnicity, age, religion, sexuality, and nationality, with a focus on women who are positioned along many axes of difference.

Second, feminist geographers have relied on a larger range of social theory and culture to acquire a clearer understanding of how gender relations and identities are constructed and assumed. Building on this theoretical foundation, feminist geographers are better equipped to explore and argue the impact of post-structuralist and psychoanalytic ideas on multiple identities.Finally, the distinction between relativism and contextual knowledge is an important topic of debate.

Feminist geographers have explored strategies to reconcile incomplete perceptions with a commitment to political action and social change as a result of these talks.

Human geography is critical

Critical human geography is defined as "a diverse and rapidly changing set of ideas and practices within human geography linked by a shared commitment to emancipatory politics within and beyond the discipline, the promotion of progressive social change, and the development of a broad range of critical theories and their application in geographical research and political practice."

Critical human geography arose in the mid-1990s from the area of Anglophonic geography, and it represents a wide coalition of progressive approaches to the subject. Anarchism, anti-colonialism, critical race theory, environmentalism, feminism, Marxism, nonrepresentational theory, post-Marxism, post-colonialism, post-structuralism, psychoanalysis, queer theory, situationism, and socialism are among the key publications studied by critical human geographers.

Critical human geography is seen as multifaceted, dynamic, and disputed

Rather than being a distinct sub-discipline of geography, feminist geography is sometimes seen as part of a wider, postmodern, critical theory approach that relies on the ideas of Michel Foucault, Jacques Derrida, and Judith Butler, as well as numerous postcolonial thinkers. Feminist geographers often concentrate on the lived realities of people and communities in their own local geographies, rather than theoretical progress without practical work.Many feminist geographers examine the same topics as other geographers, but with an emphasis on gender divisions. This has evolved into concerns about broader themes of gender, family, sexuality, racism, and class. Examples of focal areas includeGender inequality and geographical disparities in gender relations. Women's geography (for example, geographical restrictions and welfare geography). Gender identity creation via the usage and character of areas and places. Sexuality geographies (queer theory). Geographies for children. Feminist geographers are also highly influenced by and react to transnational and trans local manifestations of globalization and neoliberal ideologies.

Feminist geography also criticizes human geography and other academic disciplines, arguing that academic structures have traditionally been characterized by a patriarchal perspective and that contemporary studies that do not confront the nature of previous work reinforce academic study's masculine bias. British geographer Gillian Rose's Feminism and Geography is one such sustained criticism, claiming that the approach to human geography in Britain is historized. This spatial masculinization entails writing landscapes as feminine spaces—and hence submissive to male geographers—as well as later assumptions of a separation of mind and body. Such distinction is referred regarded as "Cartesian dualism" by Johnston and Sideway, who go on to explain its impact on geography[4]–[6].

"'Cartesian dualism underlines our thinking in a myriad of ways, not least in the divergence of the social sciences from the natural sciences, and in a geography which is based on the separation of people from their environments. Thus while geography is unusual in its spanning of the natural and social sciences and in focusing on the interrelations between people and their environments, it is still assumed that the two are distinct and one acts on the other. Geography, like all of the social sciences, has been built upon a particular conception of mind and body which sees them as separate, apart and acting on each other. Thus, too, feminist work has sought to transform approaches to the study of landscape by relating it to the way that it is represented ('appreciated' so to speak), in ways that are analogous to the heterosexual male gaze directed towards the female body. Both of these concerns (and others)- about the body as a contested site and for the Cartesian distinction between mind and body - have been challenged in postmodern and poststructuralist feminist geographies."

Other feminist geographers have questioned how geography depicts and reproduces the heterosexual male gaze. Feminist geographers such as Katherine McKittrick have asserted that how we see and understand space are fundamentally bound up in how we understand the hegemonic presence of the white male subject in history, geography and in the materiality of everyday space.Building off of Sylvia Wynter's theories of the racialized production of public and private space, McKittrick challenges "social landscapes that presume subaltern populations have no relationship to the production of space" and writes to document black female geographies in order to "allow us to engage with a narrative that locates and draws on black histories and black subjects in order to make visible social lives which are often displaced, rendered ungeographic." McKittrick stakes claim in the co-articulation of race and gender as they articulate space, writing: "I am emphasizing here that racism and sexism are not simply bodily or identity-based; racism and sexism are also spatial acts and illustrate black women's geographic experiences and knowledges as they are made possible through domination." Moreover, many feminist geographers have critiqued human geography for centering masculine knowledge emphasizing "objective" knowledge, arguing instead for the use of situated knowledge which understands both observation and analysis as being rooted in partial objectivity.

Linda McDowell and Joanne P. Sharp, both foundational feminist geographers and scholars, describe the struggle of gaining recognition in academia, saying, "a long struggle to gain recognition within geography as a discipline that gender relations are a central organizing feature both of the material and symbolic worlds and of the theoretical basis of the discipline." For starters, concepts that emerge from feminist discourse are sometimes accepted as common sense by the larger field, leaving distinctively feminist geography invisible. Furthermore, feminist geography is seen to be the only area of geography that overtly addresses gender, allowing the larger discipline to avoid feminist concerns. Finally, some geographers argue that feminist practice is now completely incorporated into academia, rendering feminist geography outmoded.

Feminist geography's challenges are likewise incorporated in the discipline. The epistemology of feminist geography contends that geographers' positionalities and lived experiences are as important to scholarship as the study itself. To truly engage with the profession, feminist geographers must retain several identities. While feminist geography has addressed gender issues in over twenty-five countries around the world, scholarship in the field is primarily conducted by white female scholars from institutions in the Global North. As a result, feminist geography faces not only barriers rooted in the academy but also a lack of diversity in its own field.

To build a more complete knowledge of how gender relations and identities are constructed and assumed, feminist geographers rely on a wide spectrum of social and cultural theory, including psychoanalysis and post-structuralism. This has resulted in a fundamental rethinking of gender, as well as the conflicts and opportunities given by the seeming instability and persistent repetitions of gender norms in practice. The emphasis on various identifications, as well as the impact of post-structuralist and psychoanalytic theories, has enabled feminist geographers to engage in discourse with other critical geography strands. This open discourse, however, has led to conflicts between geographers in the United States and geographers in the United Kingdom. Theoretical differences among feminist geographers are more visible than in the past, although national disparities between American and British geographers have started to fade since 1994, as both groups seek new approaches.

In 2018, a renowned feminist geography magazine, Gender, Place, and Culture, was the victim of the Grievance studies incident, a scientific publication scam. Several authors submitted a fraudulent paper titled "Human Reactions to Rape Culture and Queer Performativity in Urban Dog Parks in Portland, Oregon." The paper proposed that dog parks are "rape-condoning spaces," as well as a site of rampant canine rape culture and systemic oppression against "the oppressed dog," and that human attitudes to both problems can be measured and analyzed using black feminist criminology. According to the article, this might give insight on educating males to avoid sexual assault and intolerance. The article has now been retracted. The hoax has been attacked as unethical and mean-spirited, as well as race-baiting and sexist, with critics claiming that the hoaxers distorted the peer-review process.

DISCUSSION

The use of feminist philosophy and approaches to better understand human geography. Feminism seeks to research, expose, confront, and change gendered disparities in society. These distinctions often show as geographic divisions, with men and women having different patterns of spatial activity, behavior, and place experiences. Feminist geography has therefore worked to comprehend the link between gender and geographical divides, as well as to question their assumed naturalness and legality. Examining gender roles and divisions in the discipline itself with regard to the foci of study, the history, and practice of geography, and the balance of men and women working as professional geographers and career structures, as well as challenging how geographical research is conceptualized and practiced, fall under this category[7]–[9].

Feminist geography emerged in the late 1970s, expanding on the second wave feminist movement of the 1960s and radical geography's demand to analyze and reform societal spatial boundaries. One important point was that geographers had hitherto mainly overlooked gender norms and the uneven and unequal positions and power of men and women in society. Early research indicated that gender relations were the result of and reflected in society's geographical organization. Material disparities between men and women in terms of access to labor, income, power, and status establish unequal spatial connections in terms of access to public and private space and time-geographies.

Women, for example, are considerably more likely to exhibit spatial behavior constrained to the house and limited by child-care and domestic obligations, as well as to engage in employment that aids these tasks, such as a part-time job near to home. These inequities were shown to be maintained by patriarchy, which is embedded in social, political, and economic institutions, as well as popular discourse and the media, and serves to sustain a permanent, gendered power structure. Following this, feminist geographers emphasized the interrelationships between patriarchy, identity, embodiment, and geographical subjectivities, and how their entanglement produced gendered, embodied, and emotional geographies. Importantly, feminist study has looked at how gendered divides have changed historically and geographically across time, as well as across place and cultures. Gender studies demonstrate how gender relations have developed in certain locations and how they are structured and perceived differently in various areas. As with feminism in general, feminist geography has evolved over time into a family of theoretical positions ranging from approaches that are more structuralist in orientation, such as socialist feminism, that situates women's oppression within the broader framework of class oppression and capital exploitation, to post-structuralism, which recognizes the plurality and differences amongst women and the contingent, relational, and conte Furthermore, because of its emphasis on power, feminist theory has been expanded to comprehend and explain various types of spatial division centered on identity and cultural politics. This has resulted in fruitful collaborations between feminist theory and other social ideas, such as postcolonialism. What these varied methods have in common is a commitment to exposing and addressing gender and geographical disparities. Unlike many theoretical methods that strive for objectivity and impartiality in the creation of knowledge, feminism is clearly ideological in the sense that it tries to modify the subject of study.

Part of this commitment is to modify geography's practices and systems. To that end, feminist geographers have introduced feminist epistemologies and methodologies that challenge the masculinist formulation of science as objective, neutral, and value-free, instead arguing that research always has a positionality that produces situated knowledge. As a result, they have emphasized the masculinist character of fieldwork and argued for more interpretive approaches to research that include qualitative methodologies. These new epistemologies and approaches have been extensively accepted across the profession and applied to a broad variety of topics other than gender[10].

CONCLUSION

Gender geography studies how gendered social processes interact with space, location, and scale. Gender is characterized in this debate as a social construct mediated by numerous power axes such as race, class, ethnicity, and sexuality.Gender inequality is a common theme of feminist thought. Discrimination, objectification (particularly sexual objectification), oppression, patriarchy, stereotyping, art history, and current art, and aesthetics are all common themes in feminist philosophy. If Women Counted, written by Waring in 1988, is widely recognized as the "founding document" of the field. Feminism has given Western women more educational possibilities, the freedom to vote, protection against job discrimination, and the ability to make personal pregnancy choices. Feminism has also succeeded in addressing established cultural norms regarding women in certain cultures.

REFERENCES

[1] L. McDowell, “Doing Gender: Feminism, Feminists and Research Methods in Human Geography,” *Trans. Inst. Br. Geogr.*, 1992, doi: 10.2307/622707.

[2] R. Lund, N. G. Berg, M. Jones, and G. Setten, ‘Feminist geographies in Norway from the turn of the millennium,” *Gender, Place Cult.*, 2019, doi: 10.1080/0966369X.2018.1555151.

[3] C. McEwan and M. K. Goodman, “Place Geography and the Ethics of Care: Introductory Remarks on the Geographies of Ethics, Responsibility and Care,” *Ethics, Place Environ.*, 2010, doi: 10.1080/13668791003778602.

[4] L. H. N. Chiang and Y. chun Liu, "Feminist geography in Taiwan and Hong Kong," *Gender, Place Cult.*, 2011, doi: 10.1080/0966369X.2011.583341.

[5] K. F. Doubleday, "Tigers and 'Good Indian Wives': Feminist Political Ecology Exposing the Gender-Based Violence of Human–Wildlife Conflict in Rajasthan, India," *Ann. Am. Assoc. Geogr.*, 2020, doi: 10.1080/24694452.2020.1723396.

[6] A. Gorman-Murray, "Embodied Emotions in the Geographies of Sexualities," *Tijdschrift voor Economische en Sociale Geografie*. 2017. doi: 10.1111/tesg.12260.

[7] V. S. Morgan, "Anarchy, Geography, Modernity: Selected Writings of Elisée Reclus," *AAG Rev. Books*, 2016, doi: 10.1080/2325548x.2016.1146000.

[8] K. Simonsen, "Bodies, sensations, space and time: The contribution from Henri Lefebvre," *Geogr. Ann. Ser. B Hum. Geogr.*, 2005, doi: 10.1111/j.0435-3684.2005.00174.x.

[9] M. Cope, "Organizing and Analyzing Qualitative Data," in *Qualitative Research Methods in Human Geography*, 2021.

[10] J. McLean, S. Maalsen, and S. Prebble, "A feminist perspective on digital geographies: activism, affect and emotion, and gendered human-technology relations in Australia," *Gender, Place Cult.*, 2019, doi: 10.1080/0966369X.2018.1555146.

CHAPTER 14

A BRIEF OVERVIEW OF THE GEOMATICS AND THEIR FUNCTIONS

N Sathyanarayana, Assistant Professor,
School of Commerce, Jain Deemed to be University, Bangalore, India,
Email Id- n.sathyanarayana@jainuniversity.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Geomaticians, as a professional field, have specialized skills, knowledge, and understanding to deliver services that satisfy societal demands and contribute to social and political stability, quality of life, and the management of natural heritage and resources. Land surveying, remote sensing, cartography, geographic information systems (GIS), global navigation satellite systems, photogrammetry, geophysics, geography, and other types of earth mapping are all covered under geomatics.

KEYWORDS:

Geomatics Engineering, Information Systems, Remote Sensing, Surveying Engineering, Spatial Science.

INTRODUCTION

Geomatics is described as the "discipline concerned with the collection, distribution, storage, analysis, processing, and presentation of geographic data or geographic information" in the ISO/TC 211 family of standards. It also includes goods, services, and technologies used in the collecting, integration, and administration of geographic (geospatial) data. Geomatic(s) engineering (geodesy and geoinformatics engineering or geospatial engineering) is another name for it. Geomatic(s) engineering was formerly known as surveying engineering. The word "géomatique" was coined by scientist Bernard Dubuisson at the end of the 1960s to represent recent developments in the roles of surveyor and photogrammetrist. The phrase was first used in a memorandum issued by the French Ministry of Public Works on June 1, 1971, establishing a "standing committee of geomatics" in the government.

The word was coined in English by French-Canadian surveyor Michel Paradis in his 1981 essay The Little Geodesist Who Could and in a keynote talk at the centennial congress of the Canadian Institute of Surveying (now known as the Canadian Institute of Geomatics) in April 1982. He claimed that by the end of the twentieth century, the demand for geographical information would be unprecedented in history, and that in order to meet these demands, it would be necessary to combine traditional land surveying disciplines with new data capture, manipulation, storage, and dissemination tools and techniques in a new discipline[1]–[3].

Land surveying, remote sensing, cartography, geographic information systems (GIS), global navigation satellite systems (GPS, GLONASS, Galileo, BeiDou), photogrammetry, geophysics, geography, and other types of earth mapping are all covered under geomatics. The term was coined in Canada but has since been adopted by the International Organization for

Standardization, the Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors, and many other international organizations, though some (particularly in the United States) prefer the term geospatial technology, which can be defined as a synonym for "geospatial information and communications technology. "Although many definitions of geomatics, such as the one above, appear to encompass the entire field of geographic information - including geodesy, geographic information systems, remote sensing, satellite navigation, and cartography - the term is almost entirely restricted to the surveying and engineering perspectives on geographic information.Geoinformatics has been offered as an alternative comprehensive word, however it is only widely used in some regions of the globe, particularly Europe.

The related discipline of hydro geomatics encompasses surveying work performed on, above, or below the surface of the sea or other bodies of water. The former word hydrographic was seen to be overly specialized to the compilation of marine charts, and did not include the larger notion of location or measurements in all maritime situations.A growing number of university departments that were previously titled "surveying", "survey engineering", or "topographic science" have been renamed "geomatics" or "geomatics engineering", while others have switched to program titles such as "spatial information technology" and similar names.Since the 1990s, breakthroughs in computer hardware, computer science, and software engineering, as well as airborne and space observation remote-sensing technologies, have enabled quick growth and increasing visibility in geomatics.

Geospatial science, often known as spatial information science, is an academic area that encompasses surveying, geographic information systems, remote sensing, and mapping. The measurement, management, analysis, and presentation of spatial information representing the Earth, its physical properties, and the design environment is often the focus of spatial science.In Australia, the phrase spatial science or spatial sciences is most often used. Curtin University,the University of Tasmania, the University of Adelaide, Melbourne University, and RMIT University are among the Australian institutions that offer degrees in spatial science.

Texas A&M University in the United States provides a bachelor's degree in Spatial Sciences and has its own Spatial Sciences Laboratory. Beginning in 2012, the University of Southern California began to emphasize the spatial science branch of its geography department, with conventional human and physical geography courses and majors being discontinued or reduced in frequency. Instead of the original geography major, the institution now provides graduate programs solely dedicated to spatial science, and its geography department offers a spatial science minor.The Surveying and Spatial Sciences Institute (SSSI) is the professional organization that represents spatial information practitioners in the Asia-Pacific area.

Geomatic(s) Engineering, Geodesy and Geoinformatics Engineering, or Geospatial Engineering is a fast growing engineering profession that focuses on spatial information (that is, information with a location). The fundamental factor utilized to integrate a broad variety of data for spatial analysis and visualization is location. Geomatics engineers use geomatics and operate as spatial information engineers by applying engineering concepts to spatial information and implementing relational data structures including measurement sciences. Geomatics engineers manage spatial data infrastructures at the local, regional, national, and global levels. Geomatics Engineering comprises elements of computer engineering, software engineering, and civil engineering.

Geomatics is an umbrella term for various fields, including the older area of land surveying engineering, as well as many other elements of spatial data management spanning from data science and cartography to geography. The nature of the tasks required of the professional land surveyor has evolved significantly in recent years as a result of advanced developments in digital data processing, and for an increasing number of people, the term "surveying" no longer accurately covers the entire range of tasks that the profession deals with. As our societies grow more complicated, information with a geographical location linked with it becomes increasingly crucial to decision-making, both personally and professionally, as well as locally and nationally. As a result, a geomatics engineer might be engaged in a broad range of information collecting activities and applications. Geomatics engineers design, build, and run systems that gather and analyze spatial data on the land, seas, natural resources, and man-made features.

The more typical geomatics engineering strand is concerned with the determination and recording of real property parcel borders and areas, as well as the production and interpretation of legal land descriptions. Civil engineering activities include the design and layout of public infrastructure and urban subdivisions, as well as mapping and control surveys for building projects.Geomatics engineers benefit society by gathering, monitoring, archiving, and maintaining various geographical data infrastructures. Geomatics experts use cutting-edge technology such as digital theodolite/distance meter total stations, GPS devices, digital aerial imaging (both satellite and airborne), and computer-based geographic information systems (GIS). These technologies allow geomatics engineers to collect, process, analyze, display, and manage spatially connected information in order to address a variety of technical and social challenges[4]–[6].

Geomatics engineering is the practice of acquiring, processing, analyzing, displaying, and managing geographical information. It is a fascinating and novel grouping of disciplines in the spatial and environmental information sciences, with many job prospects and difficult pure and practical research challenges in a wide variety of multidisciplinary domains.The same education curriculum is administered in different schools and countries under the names geomatics, civil engineering surveying, geomatics engineering, geospatial (information) engineering, surveying engineering, or geodesy and geoinformatics. While these jobs were formerly often taught in civil engineering education programs, universities are increasingly include geo-data science departments under informatics, computer science, or applied mathematics. These facts highlight the breadth, depth, and extent of geomatics engineering's extremely multidisciplinary character. The position of geospatial engineer is widely established in the United States military.

DISCUSSION

Geomatics is a branch of geography that is studied separately. Geography is the study of the organization, interaction, and change of physical/natural features on and near the Earth's surface, as well as human activities. Human activity both influences and is impacted by the environment; geography is concerned in these interactions, as well as particular characteristics or feature distributions. Geomatics is a broad field of techniques and technology for gathering, organizing, and interpreting data about the Earth and the processes that occur on and near its surface. Geographic Information Systems (GIS) are an essential component of geomatics; GIS employs spatial data to investigate geographic phenomena. GIS covers the communication and visualization of geographic data; these features of GIS are typically (and historically) connected with cartography (the art and science of map creation).

This work will cover a wide range of Geomatics, GIS, and Cartography subjects. In addition to Geomatics, GIS, and Cartography, the following subjects will be covered. Geodesy is the study of the size and shape of the Earth, with one purpose of defining geodetic datums (models of Earth size and form).

Aerial Photography & Remote Sensing making physical observations without direct contact or touch; aerial photography is limited to observations made with photographic technology, whereas remote sensing is often associated with digital images, despite the fact that the two share many common concepts and methods. Global Positioning System (GPS) a system of earth-orbiting satellites that emit accurate time signals that are used to identify exact and accurate position on the Earth's surface using a mathematical process known as trilateration. The investigation and expansion of GIS capabilities. GIS could not exist without the numerous improvements in what we know about Earth as an object of study, how to systematically simplify it, and how we may evaluate the patterns that arise from presenting reality using models (simple representations) that occurred in the 1990s.

Waldo Tobler, a geographer and cartographer, created the first rule of geography in 1970the "1st Law" argues that everything is linked to everything, but close objects are more related. This succinct statement encapsulates why GIS, geomatics, and mapping are feasible. Because the globe is so vast and the physical and social landscapes so complex, it is vital in geography to model and describe what we know. Making models of Earth that reduce its size and form is one of the first stages toward mapping. When mapping phenomena that are distributed throughout the Earth's surface, we must generalize and aggregate separate data. We may develop maps that reduce the complexity of the actual world because the physical terrain evolves continually rather than suddenly.

Similarly, when describing social phenomena on maps, such as income, voting, residence style, race, ethnicity, and so on, we often assign a single value to places populated by numerous individuals.For example, in the three figures below, income in Saskatoon, SK is represented by averaging the income of three distinct sorts of locations. Each "area," or unit of analysis, has a single value, which is utilized to decide what shade of green it receives. The number might be the average, total, median, or mode; regardless of how we numerically aggregate the numerous distinct values, the fact that we can reduce reality in this manner is significant. The maps that result show the spatial pattern of income throughout Saskatoon[7]–[9].

A choropleth map is a form of map that will be explored in the third part of the Maps and Mapmaking section. When you compare the three maps, you should be able to see that the overall pattern of income is similar, but that each differs in minor ways. The benefit of generalizing income by taking an average is that the map reader can see the geographic pattern; the downside is that we cannot know the income of any individual person or the particular average income for a neighborhood. However, if we plotted each household's income on the map, the pattern would be gone.

The fact that we accept such maps as credible representations of the pattern of income variation in Saskatoon exemplifies what may be accomplished as a consequence of the first "law" of geography. My decision to place the term "law" in quotation marks is a last remark on the first "law." This implies that the term "law" should not be used literally. In this scenario, it is critical to recognize that although the first "law" of geography holds true for many phenomena and under many circumstances, it is not a physical or immutable law. Even in a pattern like the one shown above, low-income people may be found in high-income neighborhoods and vice versa. Furthermore, we should not assume that everyone who lives in a high-income neighborhood is a high-income person or has an income that is equal to or close to the value ascribed to that neighborhoodis an example of the ecological fallacy, and it is a typical danger when creating themed maps like these choropleth maps[10].

Geographic Information Systems (GIS) are available as a tool for geographic exploration and inquiry. GIS is a digital depiction of geography that relies on data, databases, computing, and abstraction. GIS representations have trouble depicting features of reality that cannot be quantified or given a value since their core is digital. Emotions, feelings, and other qualitatively judged occurrences are included. GIS focuses on storing information as data to depict geography digitally. GIS data is classified into two types: spatial data and non-spatial data. Non-spatial data is ascribed a spatial structure based on spatial data. Both geography (political units, physical characteristics, places, roads, cities, etc.) and cartography (being anything that can be "drawn," such as points, lines, and areas) must be accommodated in the spatial framework. If a line symbolizes a road and a string of Latitude and Longitude coordinates defines the location and extent of the line, then the combination of spatial data (string of coordinates) with non-spatial data (categorized as road) creates geographic information.

CONCLUSION

Geomatics use their knowledge and abilities in a variety of fields such as urban planning, natural resource management, environmental monitoring, infrastructure construction, transportation planning, and emergency response. They help with land development, resource mapping, hazard assessment, and geospatial data integration initiatives.Geomaticians are often employed by government organizations, commercial businesses, research institutes, and consulting firms. They work with experts from a variety of fields, including geographers, engineers, urban planners, and environmental scientists, to meet spatial data demands and contribute to sustainable development and effective decision-making.

REFERENCES

[1] M. Kim, “Airborne waveform lidar simulator using the radiative transfer of a laser pulse,” *Appl. Sci.*, 2019, doi: 10.3390/app9122452.

[2] L. Wang and Y. Zhao, “Scaled Unscented Transformation of Nonlinear Error Propagation: Accuracy, Sensitivity, and Applications,” *J. Surv. Eng.*, 2018, doi: 10.1061/(asce)su.1943-5428.0000243.

[3] J. C. Trinder, “Competency Standards - a Measure of the Quality of a Workforce,” *Int. Arch. Photogramm. Remote Sens. Spat. Inf. Sci. . Beijing 2008*, 2008.

[4] Ş. Yalpır, “Enhancement of parcel valuation with adaptive artificial neural network modeling,” *Artif. Intell. Rev.*, 2018, doi: 10.1007/s10462-016-9531-5.

[5] M. S. Guettouche, A. Derias, M. Boutiba, M. ou A. Bounif, M. Guendouz, and A. Boudella, “A Fire Risk Modelling and Spatialization by GIS,” *J. Geogr. Inf. Syst.*, 2011, doi: 10.4236/jgis.2011.33022.

[6] S. Rapinel, B. Clément, and L. Hubert-Moy, “Delineation and characterization of wetlands using remote-sensing: A multiscalar approach to environmental planning,” *CyberGeo*, 2019, doi: 10.4000/cybergeo.31606.

[7] D. Abdul Halim and A. R. Abdul Rasam, “Education 4.0 in cartography: an integrated e-learning materials portal for cartography and digital mapping course,” *Proc. ICA*, 2021, doi: 10.5194/ica-proc-4-1-2021.

[8] R. Abdalla, *Trends in Geomatics - An Earth Science Perspective*. 2019. doi: 10.5772/intechopen.75730.

[9] A. P. Sani and C. Rinner, “A scalable geoweb tool for argumentation mapping,” *Geomatica*, 2011, doi: 10.5623/cig2011-023.

[10] R. Crassard *et al.*, “Addressing the Desert Kites Phenomenon and Its Global Range Through a Multi-proxy Approach,” *J. Archaeol. Method Theory*, 2015, doi: 10.1007/s10816-014-9218-7.

CHAPTER 15

COGNITIVE, BEHAVIORAL GEOGRAPHY AND ITS SIGNIFICANCE

Prof. Rita Arora, Director,
School of Education, Jaipur National University, Jaipur, India,
Email Id:ritaarora@jnujaipur.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

The study of the human mind and activity involving space, location, and environment, including its symbolic representation as information in words, pictures, and other media, is known as cognitive and behavioral geography.A cognitive map is a mental representation or image of the actual environment's arrangement. A motorist returning home from work on a memorized course without a GPS is an example of employing a cognitive map.

KEYWORDS:

Cognitive Geography, Cognitive Map, Cognitive Process, Geographic Knowledge, Human Geography.

INTRODUCTION

Cognitive geography is a field of research that combines cognitive science with geography. It seeks to comprehend how people perceive space, location, and environment. It entails formalizing aspects that impact our spatial cognition in order to develop a more efficient spatial representation. These improved models help with a variety of issues, such as developing better-communicating maps, providing easier-to-follow navigation instructions, utilizing space more practically, accounting for cultural differences in spatial thinking for more effective cross-cultural information exchange, and overall increased understanding of our environment.Among the notable researchers in this field are David Mark, Daniel Montello, Max J. Egenhofer, Andrew U. Frank, Christian Freksa, Edward Tolman, and Barbara Tversky.

The Conference on Spatial Information Theory (COSIT) is an international biannual conference focusing on the theoretical aspects of space and spatial information.The Committee on Support for Thinking Spatially wrote a book titled "Learning to Think Spatially (2006)" for the US National Research Council. GIS and other spatial technologies, according to the group, would foster spatial thinking and reasoning in the K-12 curriculum[1]–[3].

Since ancient times, there has been a link between spatial cognition, human activity, and survival. According to etymology, geometry derives from land surveying of the Nile River's yearly floods. Spatial cognition evolved from the study of cognitive psychology, which became recognized as a distinct discipline in the late 1960s with the publication of Ulric Neisser's book Cognitive Psychology. Initially, spatial cognition research was hampered because many top scholars believed that the visual and spatial worlds could be described via language processing. Later imaging study revealed that by restricting the representation of the visual and spatial environment into words, researchers disregarded 'fascinating' difficulties. Geographers were examining how individuals viewed and remembered the geographical environment at the same time.

Tolman's notions of "cognitive maps" are used in cognitive and behavioral geography. These cognitive geographers concentrate on the cognitive processes underpinning spatial cognition, decision-making, and action. Materialists are more behaviorally oriented geographers who examine the function of fundamental learning processes and how they shape landscape patterns or even group identity.Tolman's "Cognitive maps in rats and men" was an early study on Cognitive Geography that related laboratory rat behavior to human navigation and wayfinding skills. During that time period, similar research was conducted on people's perceptions of direction and spatial links. For example, Americans often believe that South America is aligned exactly south of North America, but, much of South America lies considerably farther east. In the early 1970s, the emphasis was on how to enhance maps by giving relevant information, communicating a clear message, and making them more visually appealing.

Geographers are particularly interested in the relationship between people and the environment. The goal of this study topic is to reduce the discrepancy between the world and its geometric representation, as well as to eliminate intrinsic spatial cognitive biases (Figure.1). Overestimating the distance between two sites when there are numerous crossings and nodes in the route is an example of spatial cognitive bias. It is common to recall irregular streets or rivers as straighter, more parallel, or more perpendicular than they really are. David Mark's study demonstrates how spatial elements such as inland water bodies (lakes, ponds, and lagoons) are classified differently in the English and French-speaking populations, thus causing problems in cross-cultural geographical information transmission.

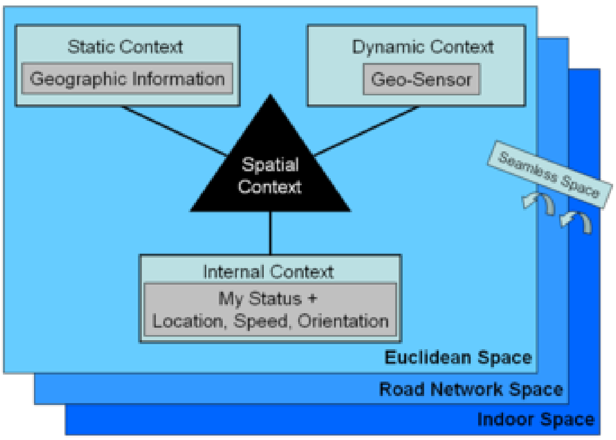

Figure 1: Diagmrae showing the elements of spatial contextual awareness.

Wayfinding and navigation research has been conducted. Wayfinding is defined as "the mental processes involved in determining a route between two points and then following that route" and includes trip planning, route optimization, and discovering new areas. The researchers are attempting to determine the optimal quantity of information, neither too much nor too little, to improve navigation efficiency. Landmarks are vital in wayfinding and navigation; thus academics are working to automate the selection of landmarks, making maps simpler to follow.

The use of maps to display information has influenced how people perceive space and direction. Many cartographers find it difficult to communicate successfully using maps. Symbols, their hue, and their relative size, for example, play a vital part in the interaction between the map and the mapmaker.Geo-ontology has also piqued the attention of academics in this discipline. Geo-ontology is the study of how different cultures perceive and perceive landforms, how to communicate spatial knowledge with other cultures while overcoming cultural barriers, an understanding of the cognitive aspects of spatial relations, and how to represent them in computational models. For example, there might be some geographical significance that cannot be adequately expressed using words. When spatial information is conveyed vocally rather than nonverbally, there may be some disparities in comprehension.

Some of the issues that cognitive geographers address includes the effect of size on the information presented in maps and the differences in how we perceive geographic knowledge from various sources, such as text-based, map-based, or any real-world experience. A typical Cognitive Geography research includes participants answering a questionnaire after being presented some geographical data. The researchers utilize this information to determine the range of volunteer interpretations of the issue under consideration.Behavioral geography is a method of studying human behavior that divides it into several components. Furthermore, behavioral geography is a human geography ideology/approach that use the methodologies and assumptions of behaviorism to discover the cognitive processes involved in an individual's perception of, response to, and reaction to their environment. The cognitive processes underpinning spatial thinking, decision making, and action are the focus of behavioral geographers.

Behavioral geography is a discipline of human science that studies cognitive processes and their responses to their environment using behaviorism.Because of the name, it is sometimes considered to have origins in behaviorism. While some behavioral geographers definitely have origins in behaviorism because of the focus on cognition, the majority are cognitively oriented. Indeed, it seems that interest in behaviorism is more recent and expanding. This is especially true in the field of human landscaping. Behavioral geography builds on early behaviorist studies such as Tolman's notions of "cognitive maps" Behavioral geographers are more cognitively focused, focusing on the cognitive processes underpinning spatial thinking, decision making, and action. Materialists are more behaviorally oriented geographers who examine the function of fundamental learning processes and how they shape landscape patterns or even group identity.Environmental perception and cognition, navigation, the formation of cognitive maps, place attachment, the development of attitudes about space and place, choices and behavior based on incomplete knowledge of one's surroundings, and a variety of other issues are among the cognitive processes.

The technique used in behavioral geography is like that of psychology, but it relies on research results from a wide range of disciplines, including economics, sociology, anthropology, transportation planning, and many more.Nature is the world that surrounds us, and it includes all forms of life (plants, animals, creatures, people, and so forth) as well as physical aspects. Social Construction is the mental process through which humans process the world around them. Plato's 'Classical Theory of Categorization' states that people build categories from what they observe via experience and imagination. Thus, social constructionism is the characterization that allows language and semantics to exist. If these feelings and images are not classified, the human capacity to think about them is restricted.

The social construction of nature seeks to call into question many facts and understandings about how humans regard nature depending on when and where they live. Academics investigate how facts exist (ontology) and how truths are justified (epistemology). Construction is both a process and a result, where people's interpretations of the term nature may be both literal and metaphorical,such as by endowing it with a human character (Mother Nature).It may also be used to cast doubt on science or philosophy.

The social construction of nature, as a subset of behavioral geography, encompasses environmental ethics and values, which influence how people treat and interact with the natural world. To bring together the social, cultural, and environmental components of life, it includes concepts from environmental science, ecology, sociology, geography, biology, religion, philosophy, psychology, politics, economics, and other disciplines. Social constructionism integrates facts from different world views, such as Traditional Knowledge of Aboriginal cultures, or more particularly ecofeminismand cosmologyin India, or ubuntu philosophy in Africa. It is also tied to postmodernism and the notion of the Anthropocene, which sees people as a force rewriting Earth's geological history and destroying nature.

DISCUSSION

The study of cognition, particularly human cognition, concerning space, location, and environment is known as cognitive geography. Cognition is the acquisition of information and understanding by sentient creatures such as humans, nonhuman animals, and artificially intelligent technology. Sensation, perception, thinking, learning, memory, attention, imagination, conceptualization, language, reasoning, and problem-solving are all cognitive structures and processes. Some of these structures and processes are conscious, or potentially conscious, while others are nonconscious, or outside of consciousness. Affect, motivation, and conduct are all functionally and experientially connected with cognition. Our ideas and knowledge both impact and are influenced by how we feel and act.

Cognitive geography arose as a human geography method and an interdisciplinary relationship with psychology and other sciences in the 1960s, although it mirrored strands of investigation dating back to the early twentieth century. An interest in understanding and improving spatial orientation and disorientation, geographic education, map design, urban planning and landscape design, and models of spatial behavior and interaction, including transport, communication, and economic activity, were among the threads. Geographers are interested in cognition because it includes basic geographic concerns such as space, location, and environment. Cognitive research not only has the prospect of developing noncognitive models of human action, but it also covers concerns that fall within the purview of geography[4]–[6].

Cognitive geography arose as a component of the behavioral approach in human geography, and hence shares many of the conceptual characteristics of behavioral geography. The behavioral approach holds that we may learn a lot about human geography by studying it at the most basic level of analysis - the individual person. As a result, behavioral geographers evaluate data on individual behavior, allowing for the possibility that people differ from one another due to characteristics such as intellectual skills, gender, education, and culture. Behavioral geographers believe that more realistic assumptions about human behavior might enhance models of human activity and interaction. For example, the assumption of economic rationality argues that economic actors are primarily driven to maximize profit and have full and correct knowledge of profit-relevant facts. This assumption is frequently highly impractical, particularly when investigating individual economic actors. Behavioral geographers suggest that assumptions about human psychology, such as economic rationality, may be replaced with more realistic assumptions. Gravity theories, for example, assert that spatial interaction decreases when distance is increased to the power of some exponent. According to behavioral geographers, the word "distance" should correctly relate to cognitive distance (distance as thought) rather than real physical distance (or cognitive travel time rather than actual journey time, and so on).

Attempts to study human geography at the disaggregate level naturally led behavioral researchers to regard what the individual knows or believes about the world as playing an important role in explaining what the individual does or will do. That is, a basic premise of cognitive geography stemming from its origins in the behavioral approach is that individuals do what they do, at least in part, because of what they believe to be true. People make behavioral choices in space and location by evaluating various decision possibilities based on their views. What individuals believe is formed by perceptual information gained via the senses, as structured and interpreted by pre-existing beliefs and schematic knowledge structures and processes. These, in turn, are the result of individuals' genetic and experience histories. Environmental geography, social physics, classical economic geography, and other types of critical geography are all approaches to human geography that vary from cognitive geography. Its thematic emphasis, preferred techniques and epistemological assumptions, and core understanding of the human-earth connection - its version of a human geographic ontology - varies. The thematic emphasis of cognitive geography, as well as its epistemological and ontological assumptions, are expressed in four major tenets:

A suitable level of analysis is disaggregated. Over and beyond the social or geographical group (aggregate or macroscopic level), the individual person is an instructive unit of study (disaggregate or microscopic level). Individual diversity based on genetic and experience variance is allowed and even encouraged in disaggregate analysis. Individual variation is thought to reside within causally organized networks of interconnectedness in cognitive geography, rather than being purely random or idiographic. Individual variation, in other words, may both explain and be explained by other constructions to which it is related. Individual variation is often investigated in terms of categories that describe groups of people and may be causally important, such as sex, gender, age, education, culture, home environment, activity patterns, and socioeconomic class. Thus, cognitive geographers think that studying individual variation scientifically, that is, via systematic empirical observation and logically coherent reasoning that is possibly reproducible, accumulable, and generalizable, is legitimate. Of course, correlation patterns between measures of group constructs and measures of spatial behavior (and cognition) are equivocal in terms of causal explanation. Variations in behavior might be caused by the group construct, variations in the behavior could be caused by the group construct, or variations in behavior could be caused by another construct or collection of constructs that have not yet been assessed.

Subjective or perceived reality informs behavior. Affect and action are directly influenced by subjective, or perceived, realities (plural due to individual variance). Behavior is only loosely and approximatively based on actual reality. Because subjective reality is directly dependent on one's perception of objective reality, which differs considerably between people, subjective reality mediates many of the indirect consequences of objective reality. Cognitive geographers realize that subjective realities often diverge significantly from empirical realities. Internal mental structures and processes that are thought to mediate observable behavior are not always accessible to conscious awareness. Much behavior, in fact, is dependent on cognitive structures and processes that are not consciously accessible, such as when we react positively to a certain location for reasons we do not recall or comprehend. Furthermore, we sometimes delude ourselves about the reasons for our actions; we may provide explicit explanations for our actions that are actually personal theories or rationalizations, because we sometimes lack direct conscious access to our true motivations and are unwilling to accept this lack of awareness.

The relationship between humans and the environment is dynamic and bidirectional. Environmental determinism, as well as its polar opposites, cultural determinism and autonomy, are not valid theoretical frameworks for comprehending human geography. Human-environment links are bidirectional in the sense that humans' actions and cognitions both cause and are caused by physical and social settings. Furthermore, these relationships are dynamic, continually arising and fading yet staying generally stable over long enough time periods to warrant scientific investigation. The concept of dynamic and bidirectional human-environment connections is mirrored in the idea that people are active gatherers and processors of information, not merely passive receivers, within the framework of cognition[7]–[10].

The mind arises from the brain and nerve system of a body in a physical and social environment. Cognitive geographers, like psychologists and other cognitive scientists, realize that the mind is dependent on the brain and the rest of the nervous system. Cognitive geographers in the early twenty-first century are starting to exhibit interest in cognitive neuroscience, the scientific field that examines mind-brain links, following in the footsteps of other cognitive scientists. Much recent interest in cognitive neuroscience among geographers and others has been spurred by enthusiasm over relatively new brain scanning technologies, particularly functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI). However, cognitive geographers do not equate mind with brain; thought arises from the brain, but it also arises from the human body, living in a social and physical context. Mind, in other words, is embodied and located. Attempting to comprehend cognitive geography only via the brain is like to attempting to explain glaciers purely through hydrogen and oxygen. That is, cognitive geography is not reductionistic, even while it acknowledges that reductionistic analysis may lead to a more complete understanding of geography. Although cognitive geographers were formerly chastised for studying the mind too individually, they now realize that the mind arises and works within a social and cultural framework. Similarly, the criticism that cognitive theory leaves people locked in daydreams or considering possibilities has been substantially replaced by ecological and functional approaches to cognition that link the knowing person to action and the real world.

Topics for Study in Cognitive Geography

This section provides a short overview of some of cognitive geography's study subjects, including particular ideas, hypotheses, research problems, and empirical results. Cognitive geography research encompasses all elements of human cognition concerning spatial, temporal, and thematic aspects of the Earth, as well as external representations of the Earth. The remainder of this article focuses on research in four areas: geographic knowledge and reasoning, navigation and orientation, learning and development, and symbolic geographic information sources. Other cognitive geography study subjects include spatial choice, artificial intelligence, environmental preference and esthetics, danger perception, and individual and group variations in geographic cognition.

Geographical Understanding and Reasoning

The premise that humans acquire geographic knowledge about the spatial and nonspatial aspects of the Earth's surface, as well as the natural and human structures and processes found there, is central to cognitive geography. This information is recorded in the neurological system as patterned internal, or mental, representations. Cognitive (or mental) maps, mental models, memory pictures, schemas, ideas, and other terms are used to describe these representations. Geographic information may also be found in the form of symbolic objects, which are patterned outward representations. Cartographic maps, verbal explanations, numerical formulae, and other examples are provided. Geographic knowledge, whether internal or external, includes knowledge of distances, directions, connectivity, and other spatial properties of varying geometric sophistication, as well as nonspatial knowledge of temporal and thematic properties such as storm frequency, soil fertility, city populations, and so on.

The phrase cognitive map alludes to a metaphorical relationship between geographic knowledge and cartographic maps. This metaphor is appropriate because both cognitive and cartographic maps are representations, contain spatial and nonspatial information, selectively distort and schematize spatial and nonspatial properties, can encode information from various perspectives, represent on a scale of abstraction, and serve a variety of functions. The metaphor is misleading in that cognitive maps are not unified and uniform representations, as the erroneous notion that they are mental images in the mind implies. Cognitive maps are more like atlases or collages in that they are made up of various representations that aren't always mutually coordinated or consistent, and they don't have constant or continually fluctuating sizes. Furthermore, cognitive maps, like multimedia presentations, are created from numerous sources of information and recorded in a number of ways other than graphical or pictorial.

Cognitive maps do not always encode Euclidean or other metric spatial links. Much research in cognitive geography and related domains has documented diverse patterns of distorted distances, directions, and other spatial linkages that are visible in cognitive map-based behavioral data. Cognitive maps are assumed to be made up of distinguishing components such as landmarks, pathways, regions, and borders. Landmarks are distinguishing items or aspects in the environment that may be seen and recalled. They organize experience and memory, guide behavior such as navigation, and provide as a foundation for talking about the world. Although linear and areal elements such as pathways and regions are frequently thought of as point-like characteristics, they may also function as landmarks. Although landmarks are often thought of as independent features, such things frequently operate as landmarks only within the context of their location or surrounding environment.

Regions are roughly two-dimensional components, or spatial categories of the Earth's surface. Lay people use regions to arrange their cognition of the Earth surface in the same way as geographers use regions to organize the Earth surface and institutions use regions to organize administration of the Earth surface. Cognitive or perceptual areas are mental regions. People informally regionalize based on physical boundaries and other discontinuities in the structure or appearance of the Earth's surface, but they also regionalize based on activities, residential and cultural patterns, past events, and other factors that are not visible on the Earth's surface. Geographers and others have also observed that individuals arrange areas into complete or partial hierarchies; hierarchical structures connect regions at various degrees of status (size, functional relevance) based on containment or connectedness links. Provinces, for example, are found inside nations. When individuals reason about geographical connections using superordinate, rather than direct, linkages between regions and locations, they are using hierarchical spatial reasoning. Regional organization and reasoning, including hierarchical reasoning, can be inferred from patterns of judgments people make in recalling places and their relationships, as well as estimating distances and directions (Figure 1). Patterns of time people require to make such judgments also reveal information about knowledge organization.

Orientation and Navigation

Navigation is the coordinated and goal-directed movement of oneself through one's surroundings, with the objective being a place or location to which one aspires. It is an important phase in both temporary and permanent travel behavior that human geographers are very interested in. A practical motivation for studying navigation is to better understand cognitive components of accessibility, such as what information various types of passengers, such as older folks and those with sensory-motor impairments, need.

Navigation may be divided into two basic categories: locomotion and navigation. Locomotion is the coordinated movement component of navigation in which we walk or drive while keeping a directional heading and avoiding obstacles, among other things. Locomotion is coordinated to the immediate surroundings the environment that one's sensory and motor systems can directly access. Active locomotion occurs when a person controls his or her own mobility, such as when driving a vehicle; passive locomotion occurs when a person rides in a car. Wayfinding is the goal-directed planning and decision-making component of navigation that takes the locomoting individual to a destination. It comprises trip planning and decision making during traveling, such as route selection and orientation to nonperceptible things. Wayfinding is coordinated to the distal world, which is not immediately available to one's sensory and motor systems but may be accessed via internal or external information, such as that contained in cognitive or cartographic maps.

Orientation is an important aspect of navigation. Geographic orientation is understanding where you are on the Earth's surface and how to get there. People are spatially bewildered to the extent that they are unsure of their position and/or direction. Orientation and disorientation are always related to some reference system, whether based on one's own body, external landmarks, or macroscopic Earth or surrounding environment qualities such as magnetic north or the alignment of a visible mountain range. People's orientation is often updated as they navigate. This may be accomplished via one of two major kinds of methods, or a combination of the two. Landmark-based updating (piloting, position fixing) relies on the recognition of external elements such as landmarks. Dead reckoning update (path integration, inertial navigation) entails calculating or inferring a new location/heading from a known starting point based on information about movement speed and direction but without identification of individual landmarks. Internal cues, such as vestibular sensation of body acceleration, or external signals, such as optic flow in the visual field, may be used to determine movement speed and direction.

Geographic Knowledge Development and Learning

People's geographic knowledge differs in part based on their age, education, and experience. That is, geographic knowledge is formed via learning and maturity. Infants are born with no precise geographic knowledge, despite the fact that their neural systems are intrinsically geared to learn certain forms of information (such as depth and directional relationships) when exposed to the environment via sensory-motor experience. Because of changes in the nervous system, new experiences, and reorganizations of cognitive structures and processes that occur across time irrespective of individual events, babies and children's geographic knowledge changes as they grow. Different theoretical views see development as taking place in relatively abrupt changes between qualitatively separate phases, or as taking place in relatively gradual and continuous transitions. These changes are both broad, such as learning about spatial connections like hierarchical confinement, and specific, such as learning about the structure of a specific neighborhood one has visited. Although these changes are often thought of in terms of gaining more information and improving the depth or subtlety of one's thinking, they also entail forgetting and a loss of the capacity to keep complicated spatial links in working memory.

Individuals' cognitive growth throughout the course of their lives involves changes that occur over relatively short time periods as a result of experience - learning. A widely held hypothesis of particular interest to geographers claims that persons travelling to a new location develop an awareness of the layout of that location via the three phases of landmark, route, and survey knowledge. Landmark knowledge is knowledge about the identify of landmarks that is not spatial in nature. Route knowledge is the understanding of linear sequences of landmarks linked by travel patterns; routes are ordered but have little metric scaling. Survey knowledge is information about two-dimensional layout from which spatial linkages between locations may be established even if direct transit between them has never happened; such knowledge is often regarded to be particularly beneficial for devising shortcuts and other examples of creative navigation. Recent theories call into doubt the sequential character of this evolution, as well as the existence of such qualitatively separate phases of knowledge representation.

Geographic information is learned both directly and indirectly via sensory and motor action in the environment. Sensory systems are the nervous system's first reaction to external input. Sensory receptors convert patterned world energy in space and time into patterned nervous system energy. Electromagnetic, chemical, physical pressure and vibration, gravity, and heat are all significant sources of energy in the environment for people; nervous system energy is electrical and chemical. Vision, hearing, smell, taste, pressure, texture, temperature, kinesthesis (body limb position and movement), and vestibular sensation (gravity and acceleration) are all qualitatively distinct sensory modalities caused by different types of sensory receptors responding to different types of world energy. Humans clearly have more than the five senses traditionally assumed to exist. All senses contribute to the perception of geographic features, but vision is particularly effective for apprehending detailed and exact spatial and thematic information at a distance in humans. Motor activity is also used to gain knowledge about the world. Turning one's head or stepping around a corner supply us with information about our surroundings. That is, we migrate not just to see new locations, but also to learn about them. Geographers are interested in how diverse means of movement, whether mechanically assisted or not, influence our sense of place as we travel and the information we gather.

Geographic Information from Symbolic Sources

Static pictorial representations such as maps, photographs, and remotely sensed imagery; static object representations such as physical models; dynamic pictorial representations such as movies and animations; and linguistic representations such as spoken or written natural languages, gestural languages, and formal computational or mathematical languages are examples of indirect symbolic sources of geographic information. Virtual environments (virtual reality) are dynamic and actively controlled first person computer graphic representations of knowledge, but fully immersive systems simulate direct sensory-motor experience in real environments with increasing effectiveness.

Maps and other representations of geographic information, from a cognitive standpoint, serve the aim of expressing information about space, location, and environment to individuals, or inspiring ideas or thoughts. Much cognitive research is devoted to determining the ability of geographic information displays to either enhance knowledge and creative thinking or to encourage misunderstandings and incorrect conclusions. Cartographers and cognitive geographers investigate how information from maps and other information displays is viewed, understood, and stored in memory, how it is used to reason and solve issues, and how it is used to direct action. Maps and other displays use visual symbols to depict features and other information. The visibility, readability, and semantic interpretation of these symbols, as well as the sheer volume of information that may be shown successfully at one time, are all critical considerations. Some symbols are very iconic, resembling or at least implying visually what they indicate; for example, choosing blue to symbolize water may be simple to understand, but it may also imply that most bodies of water are a certain shade of blue when they are really green, brown, or black. Other symbols are more abstract and may need more knowledge to comprehend; for example, contour lines are used to depict elevation. Computer technologies enable adjusting information displays to individual users' cognitive features; study must find the best approach to quantify these variances and assist evaluate how displays should be updated to account for them.

Cognitive geographers and others study the qualities of geographical and environmental information as it is expressed via natural language, both spoken and written. This study will aid in the improvement of human interaction with digital geographic information systems, such as navigation systems, digital libraries, and information systems for tourists and people with impairments. Most grammatical classes of words include spatial information; practically all prepositions link to spatiality or temporality. Spatiality communicated in prepositions and other linguistic components is nearly always inaccurate and nonmetric, failing to express quantitative distances and directions. Many geographic words are interpreted differently depending on context; 'near the barn' and 'near Beijing' clearly relate to quite different proximities Verbal route directions are linguistic descriptions of spatial arrangement aimed to facilitate navigation. Cognitive geographers are interested in defining how humans build and perceive route directions. For example, as in other examples of language communication, it has been found that a speaker would seek to analyze what a listener understands in order to determine what degree of complexity the listener can likely grasp.

CONCLUSION

The study of the link between human cognition, behavior, and the physical environment is known as cognitive and behavioral geography. It focuses on how people perceive, understand, and interact with their environment, both physical and social. To explain the cognitive processes and behavioral patterns associated with spatial experiences, this area incorporates ideas and techniques from geography, psychology, cognitive science, and behavioral sciences.

REFERENCES

[1] D. R. Montello, *Handbook of behavioral and cognitive geography*. 2018. doi: 10.4337/9781784717544.

[2] D. M. Mark, C. Freksa, S. C. Hirtle, R. Lloyd, and B. Tversky, "Cognitive models of geographical space," *Int. J. Geogr. Inf. Sci.*, 1999, doi: 10.1080/136588199241003.

[3] D. R. Montello, "Behavioral and cognitive geography: Introduction and overview," in *Handbook of Behavioral and Cognitive Geography*, 2018. doi: 10.4337/9781784717544.00006.

[4] P. I. Chow *et al.*, "A secondary analysis of the role of geography in engagement and outcomes in a clinical trial of an efficacious Internet intervention for insomnia," *Internet Interv.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.invent.2019.100294.

[5] "Cognitive behavioral geography and repetitive travel," in *Behavioral Problems in Geography Revisited*, 2020. doi: 10.4324/9781315668314-17.

[6] C. Ferrás, Y. García, A. Aguilera, and Á. Rocha, "How Can Geography and Mobile Phones Contribute to Psychotherapy?," *J. Med. Syst.*, 2017, doi: 10.1007/s10916-017-0742-3.

[7] J. M. Blaut and D. Stea, "Studies of Geographic Learning," *Ann. Assoc. Am. Geogr.*, 1971, doi: 10.1111/j.1467-8306.1971.tb00790.x.

[8] P. T. Bengel and C. Peter, "Modern technology in geography education—attitudes of pre-service teachers of geography on modern technology," *Educ. Sci.*, 2021, doi: 10.3390/educsci11110708.

[9] S. R. Munt, "Journeys of resilience: The emotional geographies of refugee women," *Gender, Place Cult.*, 2012, doi: 10.1080/0966369X.2011.610098.

[10] İ. Südaş, "Davranişsal Coğrafyada Bilişsel Haritalar: Ege Üniversitesi Kampüsü Örneği," *Türk Coğrafya Derg.*, 2018, doi: 10.17211/tcd.470931.

CHAPTER 16

CARTOGRAPHY STUDY ON CREATING AND UTILIZING MAPS

Mr. Hemant Ajmera, Assistant Professor,
School of Education, Jaipur National University, Jaipur, India,
Email Id:hemantajmera@jnujaipur.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Cartography is the art, science, and technology of visually portraying the known physical attributes of the planet or any celestial body, at any size, using maps, charts, three-dimensional models, and globes.A dot map of maize production in Indiana or a shaded area map of Ohio counties organized into numerical choropleth classes are two examples.Cartographic design, often known as map design, is the process of creating a map's look by using design principles and understanding how maps are used to produce a map with both aesthetic appeal and functional purpose.

KEYWORDS:

Cartography Created, Century BCE, Global Map, Geographic Information, Printing Press.

INTRODUCTION

Cartography is the study and practice of creating and utilizing maps. Cartography, which combines science, aesthetics, and method, assumes that reality (or an imagined reality) may be depicted in ways that successfully express spatial information.Traditional cartography's primary goals are as follows to Create the map's agenda and pick the characteristics of the item to be mapped. This is where map editing comes in. Physical characteristics, such as roads or land masses, might be abstract, such as toponyms or political borders. Represent the mapped object's geography on flat media. This is the issue with map projections. Remove mapped object features that are irrelevant to the map's purpose. This is the issue with generalization.Reduce the complexity of the mapped attributes. This is also a generality issue.Arrange the map's features to effectively express its message to its audience. This is the responsibility of map designers.Many theoretical and practical underpinnings of geographic information systems (GIS) and geographic information science (GISc) are built on modern cartography.

History

What is the oldest known map is debatable, partly because the word "map" is not precisely defined and partly because certain artifacts that seem to be maps may really be something else. A wall painting that may depict the ancient Anatolian city of atalhöyük (previously known as Catal Huyuk or atal Hüyük) has been dated to the late 7th millennium BCE. Geometric patterns consisting of dotted rectangles and lines are widely interpreted in archaeological literature as depicting cultivated plots among the prehistoric alpine rock carvings of Mount Bego (France) and Vulcanizate oldest surviving world maps are from 9th century BCE Babylonia. One depicts Babylon on the Euphrates, surrounded by Assyria, Urartu, and several cities, all surrounded by a "bitter river" (Oceanus)[1]–[3].

From the time of Anaximander in the sixth century BCE,[10] the ancient Greeks and Romans made maps. In the second century CE, Ptolemy authored his book on mapping, Geographic,which includes Ptolemy's globe map of the world then known to Western civilization (Ecumene). Arab academics began translating Greek geographers' writings into Arabic as early as the eighth century.Geographical writing in ancient China stretches back to the 5th century BCE. The first existing Chinese maps are from the State of Qin in the 4th century BCE, during the Warring States era. A star map on the equidistant cylindrical projection appears in the book of the Xin Yi Xiang Fa Yao, published in 1092 by the Chinese scientist Su Song. Although this method of charting appears to have existed in China prior to this publication and scientist, the greatest significance of the star maps by Su Song is that they represent the oldest existent star maps in printed form. Early Indian cartography contained drawings of the pole star and neighboring constellations, which might have been utilized for navigation.Mappae mundi ("maps of the world") are medieval European world maps. About 1,100 of them are known to have survived: 900 are discovered illustrating texts, while the rest exist as stand-alone papers.

In 1154, the Arab geographer Muhammad al-Idrisi published his medieval atlas Tabula Rogeriana (Book of Roger). He was able to write detailed descriptions of a variety of countries by combining his knowledge of Africa, the Indian Ocean, Europe, and the Far East (which he learned from contemporary accounts from Arab merchants and explorers) with the information he inherited from the classical geographers. Along with the extensive material he had written, he constructed a global map inspired mostly by the Ptolemaic vision of the world, but also by several Arab geographers. For the following three centuries, it was the most accurate global map. The map was split into seven climatic zones, with full descriptions of each zone. A smaller, circular map was created as part of this project, with the south on top and Arabia in the middle. Al-Idrisi also provided an estimate of the world's diameter that was within 10% of being correct.

From the 15th through the 17th centuries, European cartographers both replicated prior maps (some of which had been handed down for generations) and created their own, based on explorers' findings and new surveying methods. The development of the magnetic compass, telescope, and sextant allowed for greater precision. Martin Behaim, a German cartographer, created the earliest known globe of the Earth in 1492.Martin Waldseemüller published the first globular world map and a massive 12-panel world wall map (Universalis Cosmographia) carrying the name "America" in 1507. Diego Ribero, a Portuguese cartographer, created the first documented planisphere with a graded Equator. Battista Agnese, an Italian cartographer, created at least 71 manuscript atlases of marine charts. Johannes Werner improved and popularized the Werner projection. This was a 16th and 17th century equal-area, heart-shaped global map projection (also known as a cordiform projection). Other variations of this map type emerged throughout time, the most noteworthy of which are the sinusoidal projection and the Bonne projection. The Werner projection has its standard parallel at the North Pole, the sinusoidal projection has its standard parallel at the equator, and the Bonne projection is in the middle.

Gerardus Mercator, a mapmaker, released the first map based on his Mercator projection in 1569, which employs equally-spaced parallel vertical lines of longitude and parallel latitude lines spaced increasingly apart as one moves away from the equator. Courses with constant bearing are readily represented as straight lines for navigation using this technique. The same feature restricts its use as a general-purpose global map since areas seem bigger than they are as you go away from the equator. Mercator is also credited with coining the term "atlas" to refer to a collection of maps. In his senior years, Mercator determined to write his Atlas, a book packed with numerous maps of various parts of the globe, as well as a chronological history of the planet from God's creation of the Earth until 1568. He was unable to finish it to his satisfaction before passing away. Despite this, certain improvements to the Atlas were made after his death, and fresh versions were published.

Maps were used to dazzle onlookers and create the owner's image as smart, educated, and global throughout the Renaissance. As a result, by the end of the Renaissance, maps were displayed alongside paintings, sculptures, and other works of art. Through the introduction of printmaking in the sixteenth century, maps became increasingly available to consumers, with about 10% of Venetian homes having some sort of map by the late 1500s.

Written instructions to reach there were more widespread in medieval times than the usage of maps. Cartography became a metaphor for power throughout the Renaissance. Political leaders could lay claim to areas using maps, which was significantly facilitated by Europe's religious and imperial expansion. During the Renaissance, the Holy Land and other holy sites were the most regularly mapped locations.From the late 1400s through the late 1500s, map-making and commerce were controlled by Rome, Florence, and Venice. It began in the mid- to late-1400s in Florence. The map trade swiftly transferred to Rome and Venice, but was eventually supplanted by atlas producers in the late 16th century. Map publication in Venice was finished with humanities and book publishing with mind, rather than only informative usage.

Printing technology

In the Renaissance, there were two primary printing technologies: woodcut and copper-plate intaglio, which referred to the media used to transfer the picture onto paper.The map graphic is constructed as a relief carved from medium-grain hardwood in woodcut. The printing regions are inked and pushed against the sheet. Because the map lines are elevated above the rest of the block, they generate indentations in the paper that can frequently be felt on the reverse of the map. There are benefits to employing relief to create maps. For one thing, a printer does not need a press since the maps may be created as rubbings. Woodblock is strong enough to be used repeatedly before flaws show. Instead of building a new printing press, existing ones may be utilized to generate the prints. The relief method, on the other hand, makes it difficult to obtain precise detail. Linework inconsistencies are more visible in woodcut than in intaglio. To increase quality, a type of relief workmanship evolved in the late fourteenth century that employed delicate chisels to carve the wood rather than the more widely used knife.

Lines are etched onto usable metals, usually copper but occasionally brass, in intaglio. The engraver applies a thin layer of wax to the metal plate and then draws the details with ink. The engraver then draws the lines with a stylus to etch them into the plate beneath. Alternatively, the engraver may use styli to prick holes along the drawn lines, trace them with colored chalk, and then engrave the map. Lines in the same direction are cut at the same time, and the plate is then flipped to carve lines in the other way. To print from the final plate, ink is applied to the metal surface and scraped away, leaving just the etched channels. The plate is then pushed firmly against the paper, transferring the ink in the channels to the paper. The pressing is so strong that it leaves a "plate mark" around the edge of the plate, within which the paper is depressed compared to the margins. Because copper and other metals were expensive at the time, the plate was frequently reused for new maps or melted down for other purposes.

The printed map, whether woodcut or intaglio, is hung to dry. When the paper is dry, it is frequently flattened in another press. The map could be printed on any sort of paper available at the time, although thicker paper was more durable.By the end of the fifteenth century, relief and intaglio were utilized almost equally.Lettering is used to indicate information on maps. To increase quality, mapmakers devised delicate chisels to carve the relief. Because intaglio writing did not suffer from the limitations of a coarse media, it was possible to express the looping cursive that became known as cancellaresca. Custom-made reverse punches were also utilized in metal engraving alongside freehand lettering.

Color

The early use of color in mapmaking cannot be attributed to a single factor. Some argue that color was originally used to represent information on maps, with aesthetics coming second. There are various claims that color was originally employed on maps for aesthetic purposes and eventually developed into transmitting information. In any case, many Renaissance maps left the publisher uncolored, a practice that lasted far into the 1800s. Most publishers, however, welcomed requests from their customers to have their maps or atlases colored if they so desired. Because all coloring was done by hand, the client might order basic, inexpensive color or more costly, complex color, including silver or gold plating. The simplest coloring was just outlines, such as those seen around borders and rivers. Wash color denoted the use of inks or watercolors to paint areas. Limning was the process of applying silver and gold leaf to a map to highlight writing, heraldic emblems, or other ornamental characteristics[4]–[6].

During the Early Modern Period, cartographical skills converged throughout Eurasia, and commercial mapping techniques were exchanged over the Indian Ocean.A Chinese cartographer developed the Selden map in the early seventeenth century. Historians believe it was founded about 1620, however this is up to controversy. The relevance of this map stems from historical myths about East Asian cartography, the most prominent of which being that East Asians did not do mapping until Europeans came. The display of commerce routes, a compass rose, and a scale bar on the map represents the culmination of several map-making methods used in Chinese mercantile cartography.

In 1689, representatives of the Russian tsar and the Qing Dynasty met near the disputed border of the two powers, in eastern Siberia. The two parties, with the Qing negotiation party bringing Jesuits as intermediaries, worked out a treaty that established the Amur River as the border between the Eurasian powers, and opened up trading relations between the two. The importance of this treaty stems from the interaction between the two parties and the mediators, who were recruited from a diverse range of ethnicities.

The Age of Enlightenment

Enlightenment-era maps almost generally employed copper plate intaglio, abandoning the brittle, coarse woodcut method. The use of map projections increased, with the double hemisphere becoming more popular and Mercator's famed nautical projection steadily gaining popularity.Because of the scarcity of knowledge and the enormous difficulties of surveying at the time, mapmakers routinely copied data without crediting the original mapper. Herman Moll, for example, created a renowned map of North America known as the "Beaver Map" in 1715. This map is a near replica of a work by Nicolas de Fer from 1698. De Fer, in turn, had replicated pictures initially printed in books by Louis Hennepin and François Du Creux. By the late 18th century, mapmakers often honored the original publisher with "After " in the map's title or cartouche.

DISCUSSION

Cartography technology has evolved in response to the needs of successive generations of mapmakers and map consumers. Because the original maps were created by hand, using brushes and paper, their quality varied and their availability was restricted. With the invention of magnetic instruments such as the compass and, subsequently, magnetic storage devices, it became possible to create significantly more accurate maps as well as store and alter them digitally. Mechanical advancements such as the printing press, quadrant, and vernier enabled mass manufacture of maps as well as the generation of exact copies from more accurate data. Hartmann Schedel was a pioneer in using the printing press to make maps more readily accessible. Optical technology, such as the telescope, sextant, and other telescope-based equipment, enabled precise land surveys and enabled mapmakers and navigators to calculate latitude by measuring angles to the North Star at night or the Sun at midday.

Advances in photochemical technology, such as the lithographic and photochemical processes, enable the production of maps with fine features that do not deform in shape and are resistant to moisture and wear. This also removed the need for engraving, which sped up map creation even further.Aerial photography, satellite images, and remote sensing enabled efficient, accurate ways for mapping physical features such as coasts, roads, buildings, watersheds, and terrain throughout the twentieth century. The US Geological Survey has developed many new map projections, most notably the Space Oblique Mercator for understanding satellite ground tracks for mapping the surface. Researchers can now map other planets and moons in outer space using satellites and space telescopes.

Advances in electronic technology ushered in another revolution in cartography: the widespread availability of computers and peripherals such as monitors, plotters, printers, scanners (remote and document), and analytic stereo plotters, as well as computer programs for visualization, image processing, spatial analysis, and database management, have democratized and simplified cartography. The capacity to superimpose geographically situated data onto existing maps has given rise to new applications for maps as well as new enterprises to investigate and capitalize on these opportunities. Also see digital raster graphic.

Three key technological advances transformed cartography in the early years of the new millennium. the removal of Selective Availability in the Global Positioning System (GPS) in May 2000, which improved locational accuracy for consumer-grade GPS receivers to within a few meters; the creation of OpenStreetMap in 2004, a global digital counter-map that allowed anyone to contribute and use new spatial data without complex licensing agreements; and the launch of Google in 2006. These advancements improved the precision of geographical and location-based data and broadened the breadth of cartographic applications, such as in the creation of satnav devices. Most commercial-quality maps are now created using one of three kinds of software: CAD, GIS, and specialist illustration tools. Spatial data may be kept in a database and retrieved on demand. These methods result in more dynamic, interactive maps that may be digitally modified.Field-rugged computers, GPS, and laser rangefinders enable the creation of maps immediately from data taken on the ground.

Producing maps has both technical and cultural implications. Maps are often considered to be skewed in this manner. The study of bias, influence, and agenda in the creation of a map is what constitutes map deconstruction. Maps have power, according to a core premise of deconstructionism. Other claims include that maps are inherently biased and that we seek metaphor and rhetoric in maps. One commonly held idea is that science advances, resulting in more accurate map representations. According to this notion, European maps must be superior than others, which must have used distinct map-making methods. "There was a 'not cartography' land where lurked an army of inaccurate, heretical, subjective, valuative, and ideologically distorted images... Cartographers developed a 'sense of the other' in relation to nonconforming maps."

Deconstructionists often criticize depictions of Africa. Cartography, according to deconstructionist theories, was employed for strategic goals related with imperialism, as tools and representations of power throughout the invasion of Africa. Because of the reduced proportions of those areas compared to higher latitudes where European powers were concentrated, the portrayal of Africa and the low latitudes in general on the Mercator projection has been regarded as imperialistic and symbolic of servitude. Maps aided imperialism and colonization of Africa by depicting essential facts such as highways, geography, natural resources, towns, and communities. Maps enabled European business in Africa by illustrating probable commercial routes and natural resource exploitation by representing resource locations. Such maps also facilitated and facilitated military conquests, and imperial governments utilized them to show their victories[7]–[9].

These identical maps were later used to consolidate territorial claims, such as during the 1884-1885 Berlin Conference.Prior to 1749, maps of the African continent depicted African kingdoms with assumed or fictitious borders, as well as unknown or uncharted regions with animal illustrations, fictitious physical geographic characteristics, and descriptive writings. Jean B. B. was born in 1748. d'Anville produced the first map of the African continent with blank spots to symbolize uncharted regions.

Types of Maps

The subject of cartography may be separated into two fundamental categories for comprehending basic maps: general cartography and theme mapping. General cartography refers to maps that are designed for a broad readership and hence include a range of elements. General maps include several reference and location systems and are often created in series. In comparison to the 1:50,000 scale Canadian maps, the 1:24,000 scale topographic maps of the United States Geological Survey (USGS) constitute a benchmark. The UK government publishes the iconic 1:50,000 (replacing the previous 1 inch to 1 mile) "Ordnance Survey" maps of the whole country, as well as a variety of connected larger- and smaller-scale maps with considerable detail. Many private mapping businesses have also created series of themed maps.

Thematic cartography is creating maps based on certain geographic topics for specific audiences. A dot map of maize production in Indiana or a shaded area map of Ohio counties organized into numerical choropleth classes are two examples. Thematic cartography has become more relevant and required to comprehend geographical, cultural, and social data as the amount of geographic data has increased over the previous century.An "orienteering," or special purpose map, is a third form of map. This map type is somewhere between themed and generic maps. They mix standard map features with themed qualities to create a map for a particular audience. Orienteering maps are often created for a certain business or occupation's target audience. A municipal utility map is an example of this kind of map[10].

Figure 1: Diagram showing the Topographic map of Easter Island.

Topographic vs. topological

A topographic map is largely concerned with the topographic description of a location, including the use of contour lines to depict elevation particularly in the twentieth and twenty-first centuries. There are many techniques to illustrate terrain or relief. One of the most common and sophisticated approaches for creating topographic maps in the modern day is to utilize computer software to build digital elevation models with shaded relief. Cartographers had to sketch shaded relief by hand before such software existed. The Swiss professor Eduard Imhof, whose efforts in hill shading were so important that his approach became utilized across the globe despite being so labor-intensive, is regarded as a master of hand-drawn shaded relief.

A topological map is a very broad form of map that might be drawn on a napkin. In the purpose of presenting precise route or relationship information, it often disregards size and detail (Figure.1). An notable example is Beck's London Underground map. Although it is the most generally used map of "The Tube," it keeps little of reality: it continually and suddenly changes size, straightens curved lines, and contorts directions. The river Thames is the only topography on it, indicating whether a station is north or south of the river. That, together with the topology of station order and interchanges between train lines, is all that remains of the geographic space. However, this is all that a typical passenger wants to know, therefore the map serves its function.

Map Design

Modern technology, such as innovations in printing, the introduction of Geographic information systems and Graphics software, and the Internet, has greatly simplified the map-creation process and expanded the palette of design possibilities accessible to cartographers. This has resulted in a decreasing emphasis on manufacturing competence and an increasing emphasis on quality design, with the goal of creating maps that are both visually beautiful and functional for their intended functions.A map serves a function and has an audience. Its goal may be as wide as explaining the world's fundamental physical and political aspects, or as small as encouraging a neighbor to move a fence. The audience might be as large as the whole public or as small as one individual. Mapmakers use design principles to create maps that are successful for their purpose and audience.

Cartographic Procedure

The cartographic process has numerous phases, beginning with the requirement for a map and concluding with its consumption by an audience. Conception starts with an environment, whether actual or imagined. While gathering information on the topic, the cartographer considers how that information is arranged and how that structure should impact the map's design. The cartographers then experiment with generalization, symbolization, typography, and other map features to discover methods to depict the information in such a manner that the map reader can comprehend the map as intended. The cartographer agrees on a design and develops the map, whether in physical or electronic form, based on the results of these studies. The map is then presented to its intended audience. The map reader analyses the symbols and patterns on the map in order to form conclusions and maybe act. Maps impact our perceptions of the world by providing spatial views. In Figure 2 shown **the overview on Cartographic procedure**

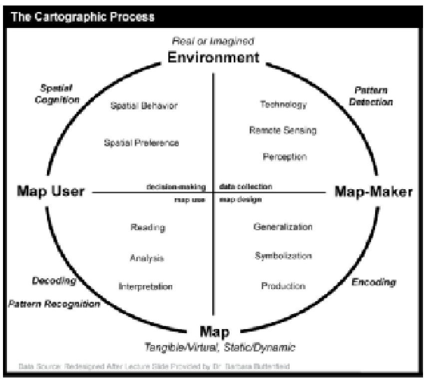

Figure 2: Diagram showing the overview onCartographic procedure.

Map design considerations

Designing a map entail bringing together several aspects and making many judgments. The aspects of design are divided into numerous main categories, each with its own philosophy, research goal, and best practices. However, there are synergistic effects between these parts, which means that the total design process is an iterative feedback loop of tweaking each to reach the desired gestalt, rather than focusing on each piece one at a time.The plane on which the map lays whether paper or screen is the basis of the map, but projections are necessary to flatten the earth's surface. All projections affect this surface, but the cartographer may choose how and where the distortion occurs.

Because all maps must be created at a lower scale than reality, the information shown on a map must be a very limited sampling of the amount of information available about a location. The process of modifying the degree of detail in geographic information to be suitable for the size and purpose of a map by techniques such as selection, simplification, and categorization is known as generalization.Map symbols, graphical renderings made of numerous visual variables such as size, shape, color, and pattern, are used to graphically represent the position and features of geographic phenomena on any map.

As all of the symbols are combined, their interactions, such as grouping and visual hierarchy, have a significant impact on map reading.Text on the map serves a variety of functions, including assisting with feature identification, but labels must be properly designed and positioned to be successful.The map picture must be put on the page (whether on paper, the web, or another medium), together with other components such as the title, legend, supplementary maps, text, photos, and so on. Each of these aspects has its own design concerns, as does their integration, which mostly adheres to graphic design standards.Different types of maps, particularly themed maps, have different design requirements and best practices.

Errors in cartography

Some maps deliberately incorporate inaccuracies or distortions, either as propaganda or as a "watermark" to assist the copyright owner in identifying infringement if the fault arises in rivals' maps. The latter are often nonexistent, misnamed, or misspelled "trap streets". Other names and forms for this include paper towns, fictional entries, and copyright easter eggs.Another reason for intentional inaccuracies is cartographic "vandalism": a mapmaker trying to leave their imprint on the work. Mount Richard, for example, was a fake mountain on the continental divide of the Rocky Mountains that featured on a Boulder County, Colorado map in the early 1970s. Draftsman Richard Ciacci is said to have created it. Two years later, the falsehood was exposed. Sandy Island in New Caledonia is an example of a fake place that persists, reappearing on new maps that are copies of previous maps while being erased from other new versions.With the advent of the internet and Web mapping, tools that enable anyone without adequate cartography skills to create and distribute maps have become widely accessible. This has resulted in maps that defy cartographic standards and may be deceptive.

CONCLUSION

Cartographers are in charge of efficiently transmitting spatial information to map users. When developing maps, they take into account the target audience's requirements, preferences, and knowledge. Clear map legends, labels, and symbology assist users in understanding and interpreting the data shown on the map. Cartography is a multidisciplinary science that integrates geographical, mathematical, design, data analysis, and technological components. It is essential in many fields, including urban planning, environmental management, transportation, navigation, geology, and social sciences. Maps are critical tools for comprehending geographical connections, making educated choices, and displaying complicated geographic data.

REFERENCES

[1] S. Lee, B. Yoon, and Y. Park, “An approach to discovering new technology opportunities: Keyword-based patent map approach,” *Technovation*, 2009, doi: 10.1016/j.technovation.2008.10.006.

[2] W. Yuan and D. Choi, “UAV-based heating requirement determination for frost management in apple orchard,” *Remote Sens.*, 2021, doi: 10.3390/rs13020273.

[3] K. Maddox, D. Baggetta, J. Herout, and K. Ruark, “Lessons Learned from Journey Mapping in Health Care,” *Proc. Int. Symp. Hum. Factors Ergon. Heal. Care*, 2019, doi: 10.1177/2327857919081024.

[4] R. Barvir, A. Vondrakova, and J. Brus, “Efficient interactive tactile maps: A semi-automated workflow using the touchit3d technology and openstreetmap data,” *ISPRS Int. J. Geo-Information*, 2021, doi: 10.3390/ijgi10080505.

[5] J. hyuck Lee, “Setting the governance of a participatory ecosystem service assessment based on text mining the language of stakeholders’ opinions,” *J. Environ. Manage.*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.jenvman.2021.112003.

[6] G. Levakov, G. Rosenthal, I. Shelef, T. R. Raviv, and G. Avidan, “From a deep learning model back to the brain—Identifying regional predictors and their relation to aging,” *Hum. Brain Mapp.*, 2020, doi: 10.1002/hbm.25011.

[7] C. Y. Liu and D. B. Polk, “Cellular maps of gastrointestinal organs: Getting the most from tissue clearing,” *American Journal of Physiology - Gastrointestinal and Liver Physiology*. 2020. doi: 10.1152/ajpgi.00075.2020.

[8] A. Jha and P. Tukkaraja, “Monitoring and assessment of underground climatic conditions using sensors and GIS tools,” *Int. J. Min. Sci. Technol.*, 2020, doi: 10.1016/j.ijmst.2020.05.010.

[9] L. Sadita *et al.*, “Collaborative concept mapping with reciprocal kit-build: a practical use in linear algebra course,” *Res. Pract. Technol. Enhanc. Learn.*, 2020, doi: 10.1186/s41039-020-00136-6.

[10] M. N. Wibisono, “Perancangan Sistem Informasi PONDASI: Peta Online Budaya Indonesia sebagai Model Media Pembelajaran Interaktif Lagu Daerah,” *JoLLA J. Lang. Lit. Arts*, 2021, doi: 10.17977/um064v1i42021p542-559.

CHAPTER 17

A BRIEF OVERVIEW OF THE GEOGRAPHICAL INFORMATION SYSTEM (GIS)

Mr. Hemant Ajmera, Assistant Professor,
School of Education, Jaipur National University, Jaipur, India,
Email Id:hemantajmera@jnujaipur.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

A geographic information system (GIS) is a computer system that generates, maintains, analyzes, and maps various kinds of data. GIS links data to a map by combining location data (where things are) with various forms of descriptive information. GIS file formats are classified into two types: raster and vector. Raster formats are cell or pixel grids. Raster formats are good for storing variable GIS data, such as elevation or satellite images. Vector formats are polygons made up of points and lines.

KEYWORDS:

Geographic Data, GIS Application, Information System, Spatial Data,Spatial Information.

INTRODUCTION

A geographic information system (GIS) is a collection of integrated computer hardware and software that stores, manages, analyzes, edits, outputs, and visualizes geographic data. While much of this occurs within a spatial database, it is not required to meet the definition of a GIS. In a broader sense, such a system may also include human users and support staff, procedures and workflows, the body of knowledge of relevant concepts and methods. Geographic information systems, sometimes abbreviated GIS, is the most commonly used word for the business and profession involved with these systems. It is broadly synonymous with geoinformatics and a subset of the wider geospatial discipline, which encompasses GPS, remote sensing, and other technologies. Geographic information science (GIScience), the academic discipline that studies these systems and their underlying geographic principles, may also be abbreviated as GIS, but the unambiguous GIScience is more common.Geographic information systems (GIS) are used in a variety of technologies, processes, approaches, and methodologies. They are associated with a wide range of operations and applications, including engineering, planning, management, transportation/logistics, insurance, telecommunications, and business.As a result, GIS and location intelligence applications are at the heart of location-enabled services that rely on geographic analysis and visualization[1]–[3].GIS enables the linking of previously unconnected data by using location as the "key index variable." Locations and extents observed in Earth's spacetime may be documented using the date and time of occurrence, as well as x, y, and z coordinates, which denote longitude (x), latitude (y), and elevation (z). All Earth-based, spatial-temporal, location, and extent references should be comparable to one another and, eventually, to a "real" physical place or extent. This essential feature of GIS has started to open up new lines of scientific inquiry and research.

History and Evolution

While digital GIS goes back to the mid-1960s, when Roger Tomlinson invented the word "geographic information system," many of the geographic ideas and processes that GIS automates are decades older.In the "Rapport sur la marche et les effets du choléra dans Paris et le department de la Seine", French geographer and cartographer Charles Picquet created a map outlining the forty-eight Districts in Paris, using halftone color gradients, to provide a visual representation for the number of reported deaths due to cholera per 1,000 inhabitants.

Through the application of geographical analysis, John Snow, an epidemiologist, and physician, was able to pinpoint the origins of a cholera epidemic in London in 1854. Snow accomplished this by charting each casualty's dwelling, as well as adjacent water supplies, on a map of the region. After marking these spots, he was able to pinpoint the water source inside the cluster that was causing the epidemic. This was one of the first effective applications of a geographic technique in epidemiology to determine the origins of an epidemic. While the fundamental aspects of topography and subject had previously existed in cartography, Snow's map was unusual in that he used cartographic tools not just to portray, but also to evaluate clusters of spatially dependent phenomena.

The introduction of photozincography in the early twentieth century enabled maps to be divided into layers, such as one for vegetation and another for water. This was especially useful for printing contours; creating them was a time-consuming operation, but having them on a distinct layer allowed them to be worked on without the other layers confusing the draughtsman. This work was originally created on glass plates, but plastic film was subsequently used, with the benefits of being lighter, taking up less storage space, and being less brittle, among other things. When all of the layers were completed, they were merged into a single picture with the use of a huge process camera. When color printing became popular, the layers concept was used to the creation of distinct printing plates for each color. While the use of layers became a common component of modern GIS much later, the photography method described above is not regarded a GIS in and of itself since the maps were simply photographs with no database to connect them to.

Two more early advances in GIS include Ian McHarg's book "Design with Nature"and its map overlay approach, as well as the establishment of a street network in the United States. DIME (Dual Independent Map Encoding) system of the Census Bureau.Waldo Tobler wrote the first book documenting the use of computers to aid cartography in 1959. Further computer hardware development pushed by nuclear weapon research led to more widespread general-purpose computer "mapping" applications by the early 1960s.

The federal Department of Forestry and Rural Development created the world's first fully operational GIS in Ottawa, Ontario, Canada, in 1960. The Canada Geographic Information System (CGIS) was created by Dr. Roger Tomlinson and was used to store, analyze, and manipulate data collected for the Canada Land Inventory, an effort to determine the land capability for rural Canada by mapping information about soils, agriculture, recreation, wildlife, waterfowl, forestry, and land use at a scale of 1:50,000. Permit analysis now includes a rating categorization element.

CGIS was superior to "computer mapping" programs since it allowed for data storage, overlay, measuring, and digitizing/scanning. It supported a continental coordinate system, coded lines as arcs with genuine embedded topology, and kept attribute and locational information in separate files. Consequently, Tomlinson has come to be hailed as the "Father of GIS," notably for his use of overlays in supporting the spatial analysis of convergent geographic data. CGIS persisted until the 1990s, and it helped to build a massive digital land resource database in Canada. It was created as a mainframe-based system to assist with federal and provincial resource planning and management. Its strength was in analyzing complicated datasets across continents. The CGIS was never commercially available.

In 1964, Howard T. Fisher established the Laboratory for Computer Graphics and Spatial Analysis at the Harvard Graduate School of Design, which developed several important theoretical concepts in spatial data handling and by the 1970s had distributed seminal software code and systems, such as SYMAP, GRID, and ODYSSEY, to universities, research centers, and corporations worldwide.

By the late 1970s, two public domain GIS systems (MOSS and GRASS GIS) were in development, and by the early 1980s, M&S Computing (later Intergraph) and Bentley Systems Incorporated for the CAD platform, Environmental Systems Research Institute (ESRI), CARIS (Computer Aided Resource Information System), and ERDAS (Earth Resource Data Analysis System) emerged as commercial vendors of GIS software, successfully incorporating many CGIS features and combining. The first desktop GIS program, Mapping Display and Analysis System (MIDAS), was published for the DOS operating system in 1986. When it was transferred to the Microsoft Windows platform in 1990, it was called MapInfo for Windows. This marked the beginning of the transition of GIS from the research department to the corporate world.

By the end of the twentieth century, the fast expansion of diverse systems had been consolidated and standardized on a small number of platforms, and users were starting to experiment with viewing GIS data through the Internet, necessitating data format and transmission standards. Recently, there has been an increase in the number of free, open-source GIS applications that operate on a variety of operating systems and may be configured to accomplish certain tasks. The integration of GIS capabilities with other Information Technology and Internet infrastructure, including as relational databases, cloud computing, software as a service (SAAS), and mobile computing, has been a prominent development in the twenty-first century.

GIS software

A distinction must be made between a singular geographic information system, which is a single installation of software and data for a specific use, along with associated hardware, staff, and institutions (e.g., the GIS for a specific city government), and GIS software, which is a general-purpose application program that is intended to be used in many individual geographic information systems in a variety of application domains. The GIS Market is presently dominated by Esri's ArcGIS, which comprises ArcGIS Pro and the heritage product ArcMap. Other desktop GIS applications include Autodesk and MapInfo Professional, as well as open-source programs such as QGIS, GRASS GIS, MapGuide, and Hadoop-GIS.These and other desktop GIS applications include a full suite of capabilities for entering, managing, analyzing, and visualizing geographic data and are designed to be used on their own.

As computer network technology advanced, GIS infrastructure and data began to move to servers, providing another mechanism for providing GIS capabilities. This was facilitated by standalone software installed on a server, like other server software such as HTTP servers and relational database management systems, enabling clients to have access to GIS data and processing tools without having to install any software. Distributed GIS refers to these networks. This method has been expanded via the Internet and the development of cloud-based GIS platforms such as ArcGIS Online and GIS-specialized software as a service (SAAS). Internet GIS refers to the use of the Internet to allow distributed GIS.

A different option would be to incorporate some or all of these capabilities into other software or information technology platforms. A spatial extension to object-relational database software, which provides a geometry datatype so that spatial data may be stored in relational databases, and SQL extensions for geographic analytical procedures such as overlay are two examples. Another example is the proliferation of geospatial libraries and application programming interfaces that enable the incorporation of GIS data and processing into custom software, such as web mapping sites and location-based services in smartphones.

Management of Geospatial Data

The database at the heart of every GIS is a collection of representations of geographic occurrences, representing their geometry (location and form) as well as their qualities or attributes. A GIS database may be stored in many ways, either as a collection of individual data files or as a single spatially-enabled relational database. Collecting and handling this data often consumes most of the a project's time and financial resources, significantly more than other components such as analysis and mapping.

Geographic Data Aspects

The essential index variable for all other information in GIS is spatiotemporal (space-time) location. Similarly, to how a relational database holding text or numbers may connect many diverse tables by utilizing common key index variables, GIS can connect otherwise unrelated data by using location as the key index variable. The position and/or extension in space-time are crucial.A GIS may be used to reference any variable that can be found geographically and, increasingly, time. Dates/times of occurrence, as well as x, y, and z coordinates denoting longitude, latitude, and elevation, may be used to record locations or extents in Earth space-time[4]–[6].

Other quantified systems of temporo-spatial reference (for example, film frame number, stream gage station, highway mile-marker, surveyor benchmark, building address, street junction, entry gate, water depth sounding, POS or CAD drawing origin/units) may be represented by these GIS coordinates. Units used to represent recorded temporal-spatial data can vary greatly, but all Earth-based spatial-temporal location and extent references should ideally be relatable to one another and, eventually, to a "real" physical location or extent in space-time.An incredible variety of real-world and projected past or future data can be analyzed, interpreted, and represented when linked by accurate spatial information. This key feature of GIS has begun to open new avenues of scientific inquiry into behaviors and patterns of real-world information that were previously unsystematically correlated.

Data Modeling

GIS data represents real-world phenomena such as highways, land use, elevation, trees, rivers, and states. The most common types of phenomena represented in data can be divided into two conceptualizations: discrete objects (e.g., a house, a road) and continuous fields (e.g., rainfall amount or population density).Other types of geographic phenomena, such as events (e.g., location of World War II battles), processes (e.g., extent of suburbanization), and masses (e.g., types of soil in an area),

Historically, two basic ways have been utilized to store data in a GIS for both types of abstractions mapping references: raster pictures and vector. Vector data of mapped location attribute references is represented by points, lines, and polygons.Identifying point clouds is a novel hybrid data storage approach that combines three-dimensional points with RGB information at each location, yielding a "3D color image." GIS thematic maps are thus becoming more visually descriptive of what they set out to represent or decide.

Data Collection

GIS data acquisition encompasses several methods for gathering spatial data into a GIS database, which can be classified into three categories: primary data capture, which is the direct measurement of phenomena in the field (e.g., remote sensing, the global positioning system); secondary data capture, which is the extraction of information from existing sources that are not in a GIS format, such as paper maps, through digitization; and data transfer, which is the copying of existing GIS data from external sources. All of these ways may take a substantial amount of time, money, and other resources.

Primary Data Collection

Using a technology known as coordinate geometry (COGO), survey data may be easily imported into a GIS from digital data gathering systems on survey devices. Positions from a global navigation satellite system (GNSS), such as GPS, may also be gathered and integrated into a GIS. A current trend in data collection allows users to use field computers to edit live data using wireless connections or disconnected editing sessions. Another current trend is to use applications available on smartphones and PDAs - Mobile GIS.This has been aided by the availability of low-cost mapping-grade GPS units with decimeter accuracy in real time. This removes the requirement for fieldwork data to be post-processed, imported, and updated in the office. This includes the capability of incorporating laser rangefinder locations. New technologies also enable users to build maps and conduct analyses immediately in the field, improving project efficiency and mapping accuracy.

Remotely sensed data, which consists of sensors mounted to a platform, is also significant in data collecting. Cameras, digital scanners, and lidar are examples of sensors, whereas airplanes and satellites are common platforms. In the mid-1990s, hybrid kite/balloons known as helikites pioneered the use of miniature aerial digital cameras as airborne geo-information systems in England. To correlate the images and measure the ground, aircraft measuring software with a resolution of 0.4 mm was employed. Helikites are less costly than airplanes and provide more precise data. Helikites may fly over highways, trains, and cities where unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs) are prohibited.

Aerial data collecting has recently become more accessible thanks to small UAVs and drones. For example, the Aeryon Scout was used to map a 50-acre region in 12 minutes at a ground sample distance of 1 inch (2.54 cm).Currently, the bulk of digital data comes from visual interpretation of aerial pictures. To digitize features directly from stereo pairs of digital pictures, soft-copy workstations are employed. These devices record data in two and three dimensions, with heights measured directly from a stereo pair utilizing photogrammetry principles. Analog aerial images must be scanned before they can be put into a soft-copy system; high-quality digital cameras bypass this step.Another key source of geographical data is satellite remote sensing. Satellites utilize various sensor packages to passively monitor the reflectance of electromagnetic spectrum or radio waves put out by an active sensor such as radar. Remote sensing takes raster data, which may then be processed using several bands to identify items and classes of interest, such as land cover.

Secondary Data Collection

Digitization is the most typical form of data production, in which a hard copy map or survey plan is translated to a digital medium using a CAD application and geo-referencing capabilities. With the widespread availability of ortho-rectified images (from satellites, airplanes, Helikites, and UAVs), heads-up digitizing is quickly becoming the primary method for extracting geographic data. Heads-up digitization entails tracing geographic data directly on top of aerial photography rather than drawing the geographic form on a separate digitizing tablet (heads-down digitizing).

Heads-down digitization, also known as manual digitizing, use a special magnetic pen, or stylus, to enter information into a computer, resulting in an equivalent digital map. Instead of a pen, some tablets utilize a mouse-like tool called a puck.The puck includes a tiny window with cross-hairs that allows for higher accuracy for identifying map objects. Although heads-up digitization is increasingly frequent, heads-down digitizing is still effective for digitizing low-quality maps[7]–[9].

Existing paper or PET film map data may be digitized or scanned to create digital data. As an operator traces point, line, and polygon boundaries from a map, a digitizer generates vector data. Scanning a map generates raster data, which may then be processed to generate vector data.When capturing data, the user should evaluate whether the data should be acquired with relative or absolute correctness, since this might affect not just how information is processed but also the cost of data acquisition.

After inputting data into a GIS, it generally must be edited to eliminate mistakes or further processed. Vector data must be "topologically correct" before it can be utilized for further analysis. In a road network, for example, lines must link with nodes at intersections. Undershoots and overshoots must also be eliminated. Blemishes on the source map may need to be eliminated from the final raster for scanned maps. A speck of dirt, for example, might link two lines that should not be connected.

Projections, Coordinate Systems and Registration

The Earth may be represented by a variety of models, each of which can offer a unique set of coordinates (e.g., latitude, longitude, elevation) for each given place on its surface. The most basic model assumes the earth is a perfect spherical. As more measurements of the globe have been collected, earth models have gotten more complex and precise. There exist models known as datums that apply to various portions of the globe to give improved precision, such as the North American Datum of 1983 for measurements in the United States and the World Geodetic System for measurements worldwide.

The latitude and longitude of a map drawn against a local datum may differ from the latitude and longitude retrieved from a GPS device. Converting coordinates from one datum to another requires a datum transformation, such as the Helmert transformation, however in certain cases a simple translation may suffice.Data projected in latitude/longitude is often represented as a Geographic coordinate system in common GIS applications. For example, if the datum is the 'North American Datum of 1983,' data in latitude/longitude is indicated by 'GCS North American 1983'.

Data Quality

While no digital model can be a perfect reflection of the actual world, high-quality GIS data is essential. In accordance with the concept of homomorphism, the data must be near enough to reality that the outcomes of GIS operations accurately match to the outcomes of real-world activities. This implies that there is no uniform standard for data quality since the required level of quality is determined by the magnitude and purpose of the activities for which it will be employed. GIS data must meet certain data quality criteria:

Accuracy

The degree of resemblance between a reported measurement and its real value; error is the amount of difference between them. In GIS data, accuracy is concerned with representations of place (positional accuracy), property (attribute accuracy), and time. For example, the US 2020 Census states that the population of Houston was 2,304,580 on April 1, 2020; if it was really 2,310,674, this would be an inaccuracy and hence a lack of attribute accuracy.

The degree to which a represented value has been refined. This is the number of significant digits in the measured value of a quantitative property. An imprecise value is unclear or confusing, containing a range of potential values. For example, if one were to assert that Houston's population on April 1, 2020 was "about 2.3 million," this statement would be imprecise but likely true since the right figure (and many wrong ones) are included. Location, property, and time representations may all be exact, just like accuracy. Resolution is a popular phrase for positional accuracy, particularly in raster data sets.

Uncertainty

A general acknowledgement of the presence of error and imprecision in geographic data. That is, it is a degree of general skepticism, given that it is difficult to know exactly how much error is present in a data set, though some form of estimate may be attempted (a confidence interval being one such estimate of uncertainty). This word is occasionally used to refer to all or most elements of data quality.

ambiguity or Fuzziness

The degree to which an aspect (location, property, or time) of a phenomenon is inherently imprecise, rather than the imprecision being in a measured value. To handle ambiguity in geographic data, mathematical approaches such as fuzzy set theory are often utilized.The extent to which a data collection reflects all of the real elements that it claims to cover. For example, if a layer of "roads in Houston" is missing certain actual streets, it is incomplete.The most recent moment in time at which a data collection purports to reflect reality accurately. This is an issue for most GIS applications, which seek to depict the world "at present," in which case older data is of lesser quality.The degree to which the representations of the many phenomena in a data set correctly correspond with each other. Consistency in topological relationships between spatial objects is an especially important aspect of consistency.

Uncertainty Propagation

The extent to which the quality of the results of Spatial analysis methods and other processing tools is determined by the quality of the input data. For example, interpolation is a common operation used in many ways in GIS; because it generates estimates of values between known measurements, the results are always more precise, but less certain (because each estimate has an unknown amount of error).

The accuracy of GIS is determined by the source data and how it is encoded to be data referenced. Land surveyors have been able to provide a high level of positional accuracy using GPS-derived positions. High-resolution digital terrain and aerial imagery, powerful computers, and Web technology are changing the quality, utility, and expectations of GIS to serve society on a large scale, but there are other sources of data that affect overall GIS accuracy, such as paper maps, which may be of limited use in achieving the desired accuracy.

Aerial photography and satellite photos are additional methods for gathering data and identifying features that may be mapped in layers over a geographic replica of scale when constructing a digital topographic database for a GIS. The scale of a map and the geographical rendering area representation type, or map projection, are critical factors since the information content is mostly determined by the scale set and the loanability of the map's representations. To digitize a map, it must first be examined for theoretical dimensions, then scanned into a raster format, and the resultant raster data must be assigned a theoretical dimension by a rubber sheeting/warping technology process known as georeferencing.A quantitative study of maps highlights accuracy difficulties. The electrical and other technology required to make measurements for GIS is significantly more exact than traditional map analysis tools. All geographical data are intrinsically erroneous, and these flaws will spread via GIS activities in unpredictable ways[10].

Raster-to-vector conversion

A GIS may do data restructure to translate data into multiple representations. A GIS, for example, may be used to transform a satellite image map to a vector structure by producing lines around all cells of the same classification while detecting cell spatial connections such as adjacency or inclusion. Image processing, a technology developed in the late 1960s by NASA and the commercial sector to give contrast enhancement, false color rendering, and a number of other techniques including the use of two-dimensional Fourier transforms, may enable more sophisticated data processing. Because digital data is acquired and stored in a variety of ways, the two data sources may not be completely interoperable. As a result, a geographic information system (GIS) must be capable of converting geographic data from one structure to another. In doing so, the implicit assumptions behind various ontologies and classifications must be examined. Object ontologies have grown in popularity as a result of object-oriented programming and the ongoing work of Barry Smith and others.

Spatial ETL

geographical ETL technologies provide the same data processing capability as standard extract, transform, and load (ETL) software, but with a major emphasis on geographical data management. They enable GIS users to convert data between multiple standards and proprietary formats while geometrically modifying the data in the process. These tools may be added-ins to current multi-purpose applications, such as spreadsheets.GIS spatial analysis is a fast-evolving area, and analytical tools are increasingly being included as standard built-in facilities, extra toolsets, add-ins, or 'analysts' in GIS packages. In many circumstances, they are given by the original software providers (commercial vendors or collaborative non-commercial development teams), although in other cases, third-party facilities have been built and are offered.

Many solutions also provide software development kits (SDKs), programming languages and language support, scripting capabilities, and/or unique interfaces for creating one's own analytical tools or variations. Increased accessibility has given rise to a new layer of business intelligence known as "spatial intelligence," which, when offered publicly through intranet, democratizes access to geographic and social network data. Geospatial intelligence, based on GIS spatial analysis, has also become an important security component. GIS may be defined as the process of converting to a vectorial representation or any other kind of digitization.

Geoprocessing is a GIS procedure that involves the manipulation of spatial data. A typical geoprocessing operation takes an input dataset, runs an operation on it, and delivers the result as an output dataset. Geographic feature overlay, feature selection and analysis, topological processing, raster processing, and data conversion are all common geoprocessing processes. Geoprocessing enables the definition, administration, and analysis of data utilized to make choices.

Many geographic responsibilities, such as hydrology, earthworks, and biogeography, include the topography, or the contour of the earth's surface. As a result, topography data is often used as a fundamental datum in GIS, typically in the form of a raster Digital elevation model (DEM) or a Triangulated irregular network (TIN). Most GIS software has a number of tools for evaluating topography, frequently by building derivative datasets that reflect a particular element of the surface. Some of the most popular are as follows: Slope or grade is the steepness or gradient of a unit of terrain, which is commonly defined as an angle in degrees or as a percentage.

The direction in which a unit of terrain faces is characterized as its aspect. Aspect is often stated in degrees from the north. To estimate expenses, cut and fill is a calculation of the difference between the surface before and after an excavation activity.With the analysis of variables such as slope, aspect, and watershed or catchment area, hydrological modeling can provide a spatial element that other hydrological models lack. Terrain analysis is fundamental to hydrology, because water always flows down a slope.

Because basic terrain analysis of a digital elevation model (DEM) involves calculation of slope and aspect, DEMs are very useful for hydrological analysis. Slope and aspect may then be used to determine the direction of surface runoff and, as a result, the accumulation of flow for the development of streams, rivers, and lakes. Divergent flow areas may also provide a strong indicator of a catchment's borders. Once a flow direction and accumulation matrix have been created, queries that show contributing or dispersal areas at a specific point can be performed. More detail can be added to the model, such as terrain roughness, vegetation types, and soil types, which can influence infiltration and evapotranspiration rates, and thus surface flow. Environmental contamination study is one of the primary applications of hydrological modeling. Groundwater and surface water mapping, as well as flood risk maps, are further uses of hydrological modeling.

Most of them are constructed utilizing discrete vector calculus simplification methods. In terrain analysis, slope, aspect, and surface curvature are all derived from neighborhood operations using elevation values of a cell's adjacent neighbors. Each of these is strongly influenced by the level of detail in the terrain data, such as the resolution of a DEM, which should be carefully chosen.

Proximity analysis

Distance is an important factor in many geographic jobs, owing to the friction of distance. As a result, a broad range of analytic methods, such as buffers, Voronoi or Thiessen polygons, Cost distance analysis, and network analysis, assess distance in some way. Wetland maps are difficult to link to rainfall levels collected at many locations such as airports, television stations, and schools. A GIS, on the other hand, may be used to represent two- and three-dimensional properties of the Earth's surface, subsurface, and atmosphere based on data points.

A GIS, for example, may easily produce a map with isopleth or contour lines indicating varying quantities of rainfall. This kind of map is like a rainfall contour map. Many sophisticated algorithms can estimate surface properties from a small number of point observations. A two-dimensional contour map derived from surface modeling of rainfall point data may be overlaid and examined with any other map in a GIS covering the same region. This GIS-generated map may then be used to give further information, such as the feasibility of water power potential as a renewable energy source. Similarly, GIS may be used to analyze various renewable energy resources in order to determine which location has the most geographic potential.

In addition, isopleth lines depicting elevation contours, slope analysis, shaded relief, and other elevation products may be created from a set of three-dimensional points or a digital elevation model. Watersheds for any specific reach may be simply identified by determining all of the regions contiguous and upwards from any given point of interest. Similarly, given elevation data in the GIS, an estimated thalweg of where surface water would wish to move in intermittent and permanent streams may be derived.

Topological modeling

A geographic information system (GIS) can detect and evaluate geographical connections in digitally recorded spatial data. These topological linkages enable extensive spatial modeling and analysis. Adjacency (what adjoins what), confinement (what encloses what), and proximity (how near something is to something else) are fundamental topological connections between geometric elements.

Geometric networks

Geometric networks are object-based linear networks that may be used to describe linked elements and conduct spatial analysis on them. A geometric network is made up of edges that link at junction points, much to graphs in mathematics and computer science. Networks, like graphs, may have weight and flow given to their edges, which can be utilized to depict numerous interrelated properties better precisely. Road networks and public utility networks such as electric, gas, and water networks are often modeled using geometric networks. Transportation planning, hydrological modeling, and infrastructure modeling all use network modeling.

Cartographic modeling

Dana Tomlin coined the term "cartographic modeling" in his PhD dissertation, and it was later used as the title of his book, Geographic Information Systems and Cartographic Modeling. Tomlin employed raster layers, but the overlay approach is more universal. Operations on map layers may be coupled to form algorithms, which can then be used to create simulation or optimization models (Figure1).

Overlay Map

Combining various spatial datasets (points, lines, or polygons) results in a new output vector dataset that looks like stacking many maps of the same area. These overlays are analogous to Venn diagram overlays in mathematics. A union overlay merges both inputs' geographic characteristics and attribute tables into a single new output. An intersect overlay delineates the region where the two inputs overlap and keeps a set of attribute data for each. The output area of a symmetric difference overlay contains the whole area of both inputs except for the overlapping region.

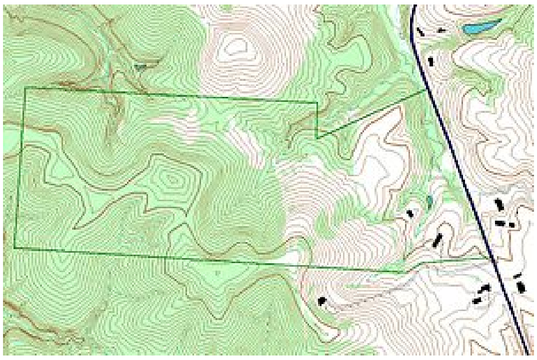

Figure 1: Diagram showing the overview of the topographic layer in GIS application.

Data extraction is a GIS procedure that is like vector overlay, although it may be utilized in both vector and raster data analysis. Data extraction entails utilizing a "clip" or "mask" to extract the aspects of one data set that lie inside the geographic area of another dataset, rather than merging the properties and features of both datasets.The overlay of datasets in raster data analysis is performed by a method known as "local operation on multiple rasters" or "map algebra," which involves a function that combines the values of each raster's matrix. This function may prioritize certain inputs over others by using a "index model" that represents the impact of numerous elements on a geographic phenomenon.

Geostatistics

Geostatistics is a statistical discipline that works with field data, geographical data with a continuous index. It includes techniques for modeling spatial correlation and predicting values at any point (interpolation).When events are measured, the techniques of observation determine the accuracy of any later interpretation. The measurement always loses a constant or dynamic degree of accuracy due to the nature of the data (e.g., traffic patterns in an urban area; weather patterns across the Pacific Ocean). The volume and dispersion of the data gathering affect this loss of accuracy.

An average is calculated to assess the statistical significance of the study, so that points (gradients) outside of any immediate measurement may be added to forecast their behavior. Because of the constraints of the statistics and data gathering techniques used, interpolation is essential to anticipate the behavior of particles, points, and places that are not directly observable.

Interpolation is the process of creating a surface, generally a raster dataset, using data gathered at several sample points. There are various types of interpolation, each of which processes the data differently based on the data set's attributes. When evaluating interpolation algorithms, the first thing to evaluate is whether the source data will change (precise or approximate). The next question is whether the procedure is subjective, based on human interpretation, or objective. Then there's the question of whether transitions between points are sudden or gradual. Finally, whether a technique is global (it forms the model using the complete data set) or local (an algorithm is performed for a limited part of terrain).interpolation is a legitimate measurement because of the spatial autocorrelation principle, which acknowledges that data obtained at any site will have a high resemblance to, or impact on, data collected at nearby locations.

Interpolating spatial locations (X,Y coordinates) from street addresses or other geographically related data such as ZIP Codes, parcel lots, and address locations is known as geocoding. To geocode individual addresses, a reference theme, such as a road centerline file containing address ranges, is necessary. Historically, individual address locations were interpolated, or guessed, by checking address ranges along a road section. These are often in the form of a table or database. The program will then put a dot about where that address should be along the centerline section. An address point of 500, for example, will be in the halfway of a line segment that begins with address 1 and ends with address 1,000. Geocoding may also be used to real parcel data, such as municipal tax maps. In this situation, the geocoding will provide a real positioned space rather than an interpolated location. This method is increasingly being utilized to deliver more exact location information.

The practice of returning an approximated street address number as it pertains to a given location is known as reverse geocoding. For instance, a user may click on a road centerline motif (thereby giving a coordinate) and get information corresponding to the anticipated home number. This home number is calculated using a range allotted to that road section. If the user clicks in the middle of a segment that begins with address 1 and finishes with address 100, the returned result will be close to 50. It is important to note that reverse geocoding does not yield real addresses, but rather predictions of what should be there based on the predefined range. Multi-criteria decision analysis approaches, when combined with GIS, assist decision-makers in weighing a collection of possible spatial solutions, such as the most probable biological habitat for restoration, against many criteria, such as plant cover or highways. MCDA aggregates the criteria using decision rules, allowing various solutions to be rated or prioritized. GIS MCDA may minimize the costs and time associated in locating viable restoration locations.

Mining GIS data

The application of data mining methodologies to geographic data is known as GIS or spatial data mining. Data mining, or the partly automated search for hidden patterns in huge datasets, has enormous potential advantages for GIS-based decision making. Environmental monitoring is a common use. The spatial connection between data measurements, which is a feature of such applications, necessitates the adoption of specific algorithms for more effective data processing.

Data output and cartography

The creation and production of maps, or visual representations of geographical data, is known as cartography. The great majority of current cartography is done on computers, mainly using GIS, although professional cartography may also be produced by importing layers into a design application and refining them. Most GIS software allows the user a lot of discretion over how the data looks.

First, it generates visuals on the computer or on paper that transmit the findings of analysis to those who make resource choices. Wall maps and other visuals may be constructed, enabling the user to see and thereby comprehend the findings of prospective event studies or simulations. Web Map Servers make it possible to distribute created maps through web browsers by using different implementations of web-based application programming interfaces (AJAX, Java, Flash, and so on).Second, more database data may be created for future study or usage. A list of all addresses within one mile (1.6 km) of a harmful spill is one example.

An archeochrome is a new kind of spatial data presentation. It is a 3D map theme that is applied to a single building or section of a structure. It is appropriate for displaying heat-loss data visually.Traditional maps are abstractions of the actual world, depicting a selection of significant components on a piece of paper with symbols to represent tangible things. Map readers must understand these symbols. Topographic maps depict the form of the ground surface using contour lines or colored relief.Today, visual display approaches such as altitude-based coloring in a GIS may make links between map components obvious, improving one's capacity to extract and evaluate data. For example, in a GIS, two kinds of data were integrated to create a perspective image of a region of San Mateo County, California.

The digital elevation model depicts high elevations as white and low altitudes as black, based on surface elevations measured on a 30-meter horizontal grid.A GIS was used to register and combine the two images to render the three-dimensional perspective view looking down the San Andreas Fault, using the Thematic Mapper image pixels but shaded using the elevation of the landforms. The GIS display is dependent on the observer's viewing location and the time of day to appropriately represent the shadows cast by the sun's rays at that latitude, longitude, and time of day.

Web mapping

There has been an explosion of free and widely available mapping software in recent years, including the commercial online programs Google Maps and Bing Maps, as well as the free and open-source alternative OpenStreetMap. These services provide the general public with access to massive volumes of geographic data, which many users see as trustworthy and useable as professional knowledge.Some, such as Google Maps and Open Layers, provide an application programming interface (API) that allows users to build bespoke apps. These toolkits often include street maps, aerial/satellite images, geocoding, search, and routing capabilities. Web mapping has also shown the possibility of crowdsourcing geodata through initiatives such as OpenStreetMap, a collaborative effort to produce a free editable map of the globe. These mashup initiatives have shown a high degree of value and utility to end users that is not feasible with standard geographic information.There are certain disadvantages to using web mapping. Web mapping enables users with no cartographic experience to create and distribute maps. This has resulted in maps that defy cartographic standards and may be deceptive.

DISCUSSION

GIS has been employed in an ever-expanding spectrum of applications since its inception in the 1960s, validating the pervasive relevance of location and supported by the ongoing decrease in the obstacles to adopting geospatial technology. The potentially hundreds of distinct GIS applications may be categorized in numerous ways:The goal of an application might be characterized roughly as scientific research or resource management. The goal of research, as broadly defined as possible, is to uncover new information; this may be done by someone who considers herself a scientist, but it can also be done by anybody who wants to understand why the world seems to operate the way it does. In this respect, research might be something as practical as determining why a company location failed.

Management (also known as operational applications) is the use of knowledge to make practical choices on how to deploy the resources under one's control to accomplish one's objectives. These resources could include time, capital, labor, equipment, land, mineral deposits, wildlife, and so on. Decision level: Management applications have been further classified as strategic, tactical, and operational, which is a common classification in business management. Tactical tasks are medium-term choices regarding how to attain strategic objectives, such as developing a grazing management plan for a national forest. Day-to-day chores, such as determining the fastest route to a pizza restaurant, are the focus of operational choices.

Topic: the domains in which GIS is used are primarily concerned with the human world (e.g., economics, politics, transportation, education, landscape architecture, archaeology, urban planning, real estate, public health, crime mapping, national defense) and the natural world (e.g., geology, biology, oceanography, climate). However, one of GIS and the spatial viewpoint of geography's outstanding features is their integrative capacity to compare diverse issues, and many applications are concerned with several domains. Natural hazard mitigation, wildlife management, sustainable development, natural resources, and climate change response are examples of integrated human-nature application fields.

GIS has been used in a range of institutions, including government (at all levels from municipal to worldwide), business (of all sorts and sizes), non-profit organizations (including churches), and personal usage. With the emergence of location-enabled cellphones, the latter has gained prominence.GIS implementations can be focused on a project or an enterprise. A Project GIS is focused on completing a single task: data is gathered, analysis is performed, and results are produced separately from any other projects the person may be working on, and the implementation is essentially transitory. A company GIS is meant to be a permanent institution, containing a database that is deliberately built to be helpful for a range of projects over a long period of time, and is expected to be utilized by many people throughout a company, with some engaged full-time only to manage it.

Integration: Traditionally, most GIS applications were standalone, requiring specialist GIS software, hardware, data, and expertise. Although they are still popular today, the number of linked apps has expanded dramatically as geospatial technology has been blended into larger business applications, sharing IT infrastructure, databases, and software, and often leveraging enterprise integration platforms such as SAP.

GIS deployment is often motivated by jurisdictional (such as a city), purpose, or application constraints. In general, a GIS installation may be tailored to a specific enterprise. As a result, a

GIS deployment created for one application, jurisdiction, business, or purpose may not be interoperable or compatible with another application, jurisdiction, enterprise, or purpose.GIS is also evolving into location-based services, which allow GPS-enabled mobile devices to display their location in relation to fixed objects (such as the nearest restaurant, gas station, or fire hydrant) or mobile objects (such as friends, children, or a police car), or to relay their position back to a central server for display or other processing.

The Open Geospatial coalition (OGC) is a global industry coalition comprising 384 organizations, government agencies, institutions, and people working together to establish openly accessible geoprocessing standards. Open interfaces and protocols defined by Open-GIS Specifications enable interoperable solutions that "geo-enable" the Web, wireless and location-based services, and mainstream IT, as well as empowering technology develop-rs to make complex spatial information and services accessible and useful with a wide range of applications. Web Map Service and Web Feature Service are two Open Geospatial Consortium standards.Software products that implement Open-GIS Specifications but have not yet passed a compliance test are referred to as implementing products (Figure.2). Not all standards have compliance testing available. Although developers may register their products as implementing draft or approved standards, the OGC has the authority to evaluate and validate each registration.

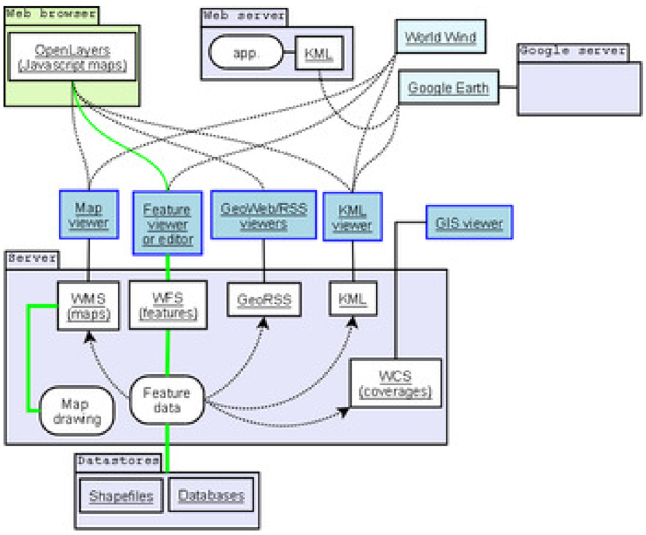

Figure 2: Diagram showing the overview of the Open Geospatial Consortium standards.

Satellite data may be used to analyze the state of the Earth's surface, atmosphere, and subsurface. Using cartographic visualizations, GIS technology allows researchers to examine variations in Earth processes over days, months, and years. For example, the changes in vegetation vigor during a growing season can be animated to determine when drought was most severe in a particular region. The resultant graph is an approximate estimate of plant health. Using two variables over time, researchers would be able to discern regional variations in the lag between a decrease in rainfall and its impact on vegetation.

Such assessments are made possible by GIS technology and the availability of digital data on regional and global sizes. The advanced very-high-resolution radiometer (AVHRR) produces the satellite sensor data necessary to construct a vegetation graphic. For surface regions of roughly 1 square kilometer, this sensor system monitors the quantities of energy reflected from the Earth's surface across different bands of the spectrum. Twice a day, the satellite sensor captures photos of a specific spot on Earth. Only two of the numerous sensor systems utilized for Earth surface investigation are the AVHRR and, more recently, the moderate-resolution image spectroradiometer (MODIS).

In addition to incorporating time into environmental research, GIS is being investigated for its potential to monitor and predict human development during their daily routines. The recent release of time-specific demographic statistics by the United States is a clear example of development in this area. Census. The populations of cities are depicted during daytime and nighttime hours in this data set, emphasizing the pattern of concentration and dispersion caused by North American commuting patterns. Without GIS, the data processing and production necessary to obtain this data would not have been feasible.Planners have been able to evaluate policy options using geographic decision support systems by employing models to project data contained by a GIS ahead in time. The World Wide Web Consortium's Semantic Web tools and technologies are proven effective solving data integration difficulties in information systems. Similarly, comparable technologies have been suggested as a technique to improve interoperability and data reuse across GIS applications, as well as to allow novel analytical tools.

Ontologies are an important part of this semantic approach since they allow for the formal, machine-readable characterization of ideas and connections in a particular domain. As a result, a GIS may concentrate on the intended meaning of data rather than its syntax or structure. For example, reasoning that a land cover type classified as deciduous needleleaf trees in one dataset is a subset of land cover type forest in another more broadly classified dataset can assist a GIS in automatically merging the two datasets under the more general land cover classification.

Tentative ontologies in GIS-related domains have been produced, such as the hydrology ontologydeveloped by the Ordnance Survey in the United Kingdom and the SWEET ontologiesdeveloped by NASA's Jet Propulsion Laboratory. The W3C Geo Incubator Groupis also proposing simpler ontologies and semantic metadata standards to describe geographical data on the web. GeoSPARQL is a standard developed by the Ordnance Survey, the United States Geological Survey, Natural Resources Canada, the Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organization of Australia, and others to support ontology creation and reasoning using well-known OGC literals (GML, WKT), topological relationships (Simple Features, RCC8, DE-9IM), RDF, and the SPARQL database query protocols.Recent research findings in this field may be found at the International Conference on Geospatial Semantics and the International Semantic Web Conference's Terra Cognita - Directions to the Geospatial Semantic Webworkshop.

Scholars have begun to scrutinize the social and political implications of GIS with the popularization of GIS in decision-making. GIS can also be misused to distort reality for individual and political gain. It has been argued that the production, distribution, utilization, and representation of geographic information are largely related to the social context and have the potential to increase citizen trust in government. Using GIS as a tool for public engagement is a more positive sociological approach to GIS adoption.

CONCLUSION

GIS is a computer-based system that is used for geographical data input, output, storage, modification, retrieval, and analysis. These systems are made up of both computer hardware and software. Geographic information systems (GIS) are rapidly being utilized in applications such as natural resources, tourism, transportation, trade and commerce, and so on.Simple Features (formally Simple Feature Access) is a collection of standards that provide a common storage and access model for geographic features composed mostly of two-dimensional geometries that are used by geographic information systems.It makes it simple to keep track of geographical changes for future studies.GIS relies heavily on data privacy and integrity. When it comes to Privacy violations, poses extra dangers.

REFERENCES

[1] R. L. Church, "Geographical information systems and location science," *Computers and Operations Research*. 2002. doi: 10.1016/S0305-0548(99)00104-5.

[2] S. Abdollahi, M. Madadi, and K. Ostad-Ali-Askari, "Monitoring and investigating dust phenomenon on using remote sensing science, geographical information system and statistical methods," *Applied Water Science*. 2021. doi: 10.1007/s13201-021-01419-z.

[3] A. Tiwari and M. Aljoufie, "A qualitative geographical information system interpretation of mobility and covid-19 pandemic intersection in Uttar Pradesh, India," *Geospat. Health*, 2021, doi: 10.4081/gh.2021.911.

[4] M. Z. Idris, R. Suratman, and S. Samsuddin, "An Improvement Of Integrated Geographical Information System In Managing Sewerage Treatment Plant," *Plan. Malaysia*, 2021, doi: 10.21837/pm.v19i18.1043.

[5] S. Milton *et al.*, "A qualitative geographical information systems approach to explore how older people over 70 years interact with and define their neighbourhood environment," *Heal. Place*, 2015, doi: 10.1016/j.healthplace.2015.10.002.

[6] F. Rahimi, A. Goli, and R. Rezaee, "Hospital location-allocation in Shiraz using geographical information system (GIS)," *Shiraz E Med. J.*, 2017, doi: 10.5812/semj.57572.

[7] H. Charreire *et al.*, "Measuring the food environment using geographical information systems: A methodological review," *Public Health Nutrition*. 2010. doi: 10.1017/S1368980010000753.

[8] M. Hiloidhari *et al.*, "Emerging role of Geographical Information System (GIS), Life Cycle Assessment (LCA) and spatial LCA (GIS-LCA) in sustainable bioenergy planning," *Bioresource Technology*. 2017. doi: 10.1016/j.biortech.2017.03.079.

[9] H. Teixeira, A. Magalhães, A. Ramalho, M. de F. Pina, and H. Gonçalves, "Indoor Environments and Geographical Information Systems: A Systematic Literature Review," *SAGE Open*. 2021. doi: 10.1177/21582440211050379.

[10] S. G. Meshram, S. K. Sharma, and S. Tignath, "Application of remote sensing and geographical information system for generation of runoff curve number," *Appl. Water Sci.*, 2017, doi: 10.1007/s13201-015-0350-7.

CHAPTER 18

WORLD POPULATION DISTRIBUTION, DENSITY AND GROWTH

Dr. Savitri Mathur, Assistant Professor,
School of Education, Jaipur National University, Jaipur, India,
Email Id:savitri_mathur@jnujaipur.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

The global population, distribution, density, and growth represent each geographical zone's progress and development. The global population has a significant influence on the global economy and climate change.The world population dispersion refers to how people are distributed around the globe. In general, 90% of the world's population lives in around 10% of its geographical area. The world's ten most populated nations account for over 60% of the global population.

KEYWORDS:

Global Population, Human Population, Millions Of Years, Population Density, World Population.

INTRODUCTION

The total number of people now alive is referred to as the global population in demography. According to the United Nations, it will have surpassed eight billion by mid-November 2021. It took almost 200,000 years of human prehistory and history to achieve one billion, and just 219 years more to reach eight billion.Following the Great Famine of 1315-1317 and the end of the Black Death in 1350, the human population was nearly 370,000,000. The highest global population growth rates, with increases of over 1.8% per year, occurred between 1955 and 1975, peaking at 2.1% between 1965 and 1970. The growth rate declined to 1.1% between 2015 and 2020, and is projected to decline further in the twenty-first century. According to some demographers, the human population will begin to drop in the second part of the twenty-first century.

The total number of births worldwide is currently (2015-2020) 140 million/year, with a projected peak of 141 million/year during the period 2040-2045, followed by a gradual decline to 126 million/year by 2100.The total number of deaths is currently 57 million/year, with a projected increase to 121 million/year by 2100.Estimates of global population are a feature of modernity, only achievable since the Age of Discovery. Early estimates for the world's population date back to the 17th century: William Petty estimated the world population in 1682 at 320 million (current estimates range close to twice this number); by the late 18th century, estimates ranged close to one billion (consistent with current estimates).Estimates are difficult to be more than broad approximations since even current population estimates are riddled with errors ranging from 3% to 5%[1]–[3].

Estimates of the world's population at the time agriculture emerged, around 10,000 BC, have ranged between 1 million and 15 million. Even earlier, genetic evidence suggests humans may have experienced a population bottleneck of 1,000 to 10,000 people around 70,000 BC, according to the now largely discredited Toba catastrophe theory. In the 4th century AD, the united eastern and western Roman Empire was believed to have 50-60 million people.

Between the 6th and 8th centuries AD, the Plague of Justinian caused Europe's population to drop by around 50%.Europe's population was more than 70 million in 1340. From 1340 to 1400, the world's population fell from an estimated 443 million to 350-375 million,with the Indian subcontinent suffering the most tremendous loss and Europe suffering the Black Death pandemic; it took 200 years for European population figures to recover.

Starting in AD 2, the Han dynasty of ancient China kept consistent family registers to properly assess the poll taxes and labor service duties of each household. In that year, the population of Western Han was recorded as 57,671,400 individuals in 12,366,470 households, decreasing to 47,566,772 individuals in 9,348,227 households by AD 146, towards the end of the Han dynasty. From 200 to 400, the world population fell from an estimated 257 million to 206 million, with China suffering the greatest loss. At the founding of the Ming dynasty in 1368, China's population was reported to be close to 60 million; toward the end of the dynasty in 1644, it may have approached 150 million.England's population reached an estimated 5.6 million in 1650, up from an estimated 2.6 million in 1500. New crops that were brought to Asia and Europe from the Americas by Portuguese and Spanish colonists in the 16th century are believed to have contributed to population growth. Since their introduction to Africa by Portuguese traders in the 16th century, maize and cassava have similarly replaced traditional African crops as the most important staple food crops grown on the continent.

The pre-Columbian population of the Americas is unknown; historian David Henige referred to it as "the most unanswerable question in the world." By the end of the twentieth century, scholarly consensus favored an estimate of roughly 55 million people, but figures from various sources have ranged from 10 million to 100 million. Encounters between European explorers and populations in the rest of the world frequently introduced local epidemics of extraordinary virulence.During the European Agricultural and Industrial Revolutions, children's life expectancy increased dramatically. The percentage of children born in London who died before the age of five decreased from 74.5% in 1730-1749 to 31.8% in 1810-1829. Between 1700 and 1900, Europe's population increased from about 100 million to over 400 million.

After the introduction of vaccination and other improvements in medicine and sanitation, the population of Britain increased from 10 million to 40 million in the 19th century. The population of the United Kingdom reached 60 million in 2006. The population of the United States increased from around 5.3 million in 1800 to 106 million in 1920, exceeding 307 million in 2010.The first half of the twentieth century in Imperial Russia and the Soviet Union was marked by a series of major wars, famines, and other disasters that resulted in large-scale population losses (approximately 60 million excess deaths). Following the collapse of the Soviet Union, Russia's population declined significantly - from 150 million in 1991 to 143 million in 2012, but this decline appeared to have halted by 2013.

Because of economic progress and advances in public health, many emerging nations have witnessed exceptionally fast population increase since the early twentieth century. China's population increased from about 430 million in 1850 to 580 million in 1953 and today exceeds 1.3 billion. The population of the Indian subcontinent increased from approximately 125 million in 1750 to 389 million in 1941 today, India, Pakistan, and Bangladesh are collectively home to approximately 1.63 billion people. Java, an island in Indonesia, had approximately 5 million inhabitants in 1815; it had a population of over 139 million in 2020. Mexico's population increased from 13.6 million in 1900 to around 112 million in 2010. Kenya's population increased from 2.9 million to 37 million during the 1920s and the 2000s. In 1804 the UN projected that the global population had surpassed one billion for the first time. It took another 123 years to reach two billion in 1927, but only 33 years to reach three billion in 1960. It then took 14 years to reach four billion in 1974, 13 years to reach five billion in 1987, 12 years to reach six billion in 1999, and 13 years to reach seven billion in March 2012. The United Nations, on the other hand, estimated that the world population reached seven billion in March 2012.

According to the UN, the global population reached eight billion in November 2021, but because the rate of growth is slowing, it will take another 15 years to reach around 9 billion by 2037 and another 20 years to reach 10 billion by 2057. Alternative scenarios for 2050 range from a low of 7.4 billion to a high of more than 10.6 billion. Long-term predictions to 2150 range from 3.2 billion in the "low scenario" to 24.8 billion in the "high scenario." One extreme scenario predicted a massive increase to 256 billion by 2150, assuming the global fertility rate remained at its 1995 level of 3.04 children per woman; however, the global fertility rate had declined to 2.52 by 2010.

There is no specific date or month when the world's population topped one or two billion. The points at which it reached three and four billion were not officially recorded, although the United States Census Bureau's International Database put them at July 1959 and April 1974, respectively. The United Nations did establish and observe the "Day of 5 Billion" on July 11, 1987, and the "Day of 6 Billion" on October 12, 1999. The United Nations Population Division proclaimed 31 October 2011 to be the "Day of Seven Billion." The United Nations celebrated the birth of the eight billionth person on 15 November 2021.

DISCUSSION

Demographics throughout the world

As of 2012, the global sex ratio was approximately 1.01 males to 1 female. Approximately 26.3% of the global population is under the age of 15, 65.9% is between the ages of 15 and 64, and 7.9% is 65 or older.The median age of the world's population is estimated to be 31 years in 2020, and is expected to rise to 37.9 years by 2050.According to the World Health Organization, the global average life expectancy is 73.3 years as of 2020, with women living an average of 75.9 years and men living an average of 70.8 years. In 2010, the global fertility rate was estimated to be 2.44 children per woman.

The IMF estimated nominal 2021 gross world product at US$94.94 trillion, implying an annual global per capita figure of around US$12,290. Approximately 9.3% of the world population lives in extreme poverty, subsisting on less than US$1.9 per day; approximately 8.9% are malnourished.87% of the world's over-15s are considered literate. As of April 2021, there were approximately 5 billion global Internet users, constitute.

The Han Chinese are the world's biggest single ethnic group, accounting for more than 19% of the worldwide population in 2011. The most widely spoken languages are English (1.132 billion), Mandarin Chinese (1.117 billion), Hindi (615 million), Spanish (534 million), and French (280 million). Over three billion people speak an Indo-European language, which is the most populous language family in terms of speakers. Standard Arabic has no native speakers; however the total number of speakers is estimated to be 274 million individuals.As of 2020, the world's major religious groups are expected to be as follows: Christianity (31%), Islam (25%), Unaffiliated (16%), and Hinduism (15%).

On a broad scale, six of the Earth's seven continents are permanently populated. Asia is the most populated continent, accounting for 60% of the world's population with 4.64 billion people. China and India, the world's two most populous nations, account for around 36% of the global population. With around 1.34 billion people, or 17% of the world's population, Africa is the second most populous continent. As of 2020, Europe's 747 million people account for 10% of the global population, while Latin America and the Caribbean account for 653 million (8%). Northern America, primarily comprised of the United States and Canada, has a population of approximately 368 million (5%), while Oceania, the least populated region, has approximately 42 million inhabitants (0.5%). Antarctica has a very small, fluctuating population of approximately 1200 people, primarily engaged in polar science.

Population size varies at different rates across geographies. Nonetheless, population expansion has long been a tendency on all inhabited continents, as well as in the majority of individual governments. The worldwide population increased from roughly 1.6 billion in 1900 to over 6 billion in 2000 over the twentieth century, when the whole globe began the early stages of what has come to be known as the "demographic transition." Some of the key factors contributing to this increase included lower mortality rates in many countries due to improved sanitation and medical advances, as well as a massive increase in agricultural productivity attributed to the Green Revolution. By 2000, there were roughly ten times as many people on Earth as there had been in 1700.

This quick rise, however, did not endure. The United Nations estimates that the world's population grew at an annual rate of 1.3% (equivalent to around 80 million people) between 2000 and 2005, down from a peak of 2.1% between 1965 and 1970. Globally, although the population growth rate has been steadily declining since its peak in 1968, growth remains high in Sub-Saharan Africa. In reality, owing to sub-replacement fertility rates, Japan and other European nations started to see population declines in the 2010s[4]–[6].

The United Nations announced in 2019 that the pace of population increase continues to slow as a result of the continuing global demographic change. If this trend continues, the rate of growth may reach zero by 2100, coinciding with a world population plateau of 10.9 billion. However, this is only one of many estimates published by the UN; in 2009, UN population projections for 2050 ranged between around 8 billion and 10.5 billion. An alternative scenario is presented by statistician Jorgen Randers, who argues that traditional projections fail to account for the downward impact of global warming. Randers' "most likely scenario" predicts a peak in the world population of around 8.1 billion people in the early 2040s, followed by a decline. According to Adrian Raftery, a University of Washington statistics and sociology professor, "there's a 70 percent probability the world population will not stabilize this century. Population, which had sort of fallen off the world's agenda, remains a very important issue."

It is difficult to forecast long-term global population increase. The United Nations and the United States Census Bureau both give different estimates: the UN says the world population reached seven billion in late 2011, while the US Census Bureau says it happened in March 2012. Since 1951, the UN has issued multiple projections of future world population based on various assumptions. The UN continually updated these forecasts downward from 2000 to 2005, until the 2006 revision, announced on 14 March 2007, raised the 2050 mid-range estimate higher by 273 million.

The fact that average global birth rates and mortality rates are both declining rapidly as the nations of the world progress through the stages of the demographic transition complicates the UN's and others' attempts to project future populations, but both vary greatly between developed countries (where birth rates and mortality rates are frequently low) and developing countries (where birth and mortality rates typically remain high). Different races also have different birth rates, which may alter quickly owing to disease outbreaks, wars, and other mass disasters, or breakthroughs in medicine and public health.

According to the UN's initial report in 1951, the crude birth rate was 36.9/1,000 people between 1950 and 1955, while the crude death rate was 19.1/1,000. By the year 2015-20, both figures had declined dramatically, with the crude birth rate falling to 18.5/1,000 and the crude death rate falling to 7.5/1,000. According to UN forecasts for 2100, the crude birth rate would fall further to 11.6/1,000, while the crude death rate will rise to 11.2/1,000.The total number of births worldwide is currently (2015-20) 140 million/year, is projected to peak at 141 million/year during the period 2040-45, and then gradually decline to 126 million/year by 2100. The total number of deaths is currently 57 million/year, and is projected to grow steadily to 121 million/year by 2100.

2012 United Nations projections show a continued increase in population soon with a steady decline in population growth rate; the global population is expected to reach between 8.3 and 10.9 billion by 2050. 2003 UN Population Division population projections for the year 2150 range between 3.2 and 24.8 billion. One of many independent mathematical models supports the lower estimate,while a 2014 estimate forecasts between 9.3 and 12.6 billion in 2100, and continued growth thereafter. The 2019 Revision of the UN estimates gives the "medium variant" population as; nearly 8.6 billion in 2030, about 9.7 billion in 2050 and about 10.9 billion in 2100.

In December 2019, the German Foundation for World Population projected that the global population will reach 8 billion by 2021 as it increases by 156 every minute. In a modeled future projection by the Institute for Health Metrics and Evaluation the global population was projected to peak in 2064 at 9.73 billion people and decline to 8.79 billion in 2100.Some analysts have questioned the sustainability of further world population growth, highlighting the growing pressures on the environment, global food supplies, and energy resources[7]–[9].

It is believed that there have been around 100 billion people who have ever lived. Even modern population estimates are subject to 3% to 5% uncertainty. Kapitsa cites estimates ranging from 80 to 150 billion.The PRB puts the figure at 117 billion as of 2020, estimating that the current world population is 6.7% of all humans who have ever lived.Hau prepared another figure, updated in 2002 and 2011; the 2011 figure was approximately 107 billion. Only statistics for the past two or three centuries are available. Few governments have ever conducted an accurate census prior to the late 18th century. Many early efforts, such as those in historical Egypt and the Persian Empire, focused on counting just a portion of the population for taxation or military service. As a result, estimating historical world populations has a wide margin of error.

Another key aspect for such an assessment is pre-modern infant mortality rates; these rates are difficult to estimate for ancient periods owing to a lack of precise records. According to Haub, around 40% of people who have ever lived did not live through their first birthday. Haub also noted that "life expectancy at birth probably averaged only about ten years for most of human history", which should not be confused with adult life expectancy. The latter was equally affected by time, place, and social position, although computations revealed averages spanning around 30 years.The rise in the number of persons in a population or scattered group is referred to as population growth. Actual global human population growth amounts to around 83 million per year, or 1.1% per year. The global population has grown from 1 billion in 1800 to 7.9 billion in 2020. The UN projected population to continue growing, with estimates putting the total population at 8.6 billion by mid-2030, 9.8 billion by mid-2050, and 11.2 billion by 2100.

Since the end of the Black Death, approximately 1350, the world's population has been expanding due to a combination of technical advancements that improved agricultural output and sanitation, as well as medical advancements that lowered mortality. This has slowed in certain areas due to a trend known as demographic transition, in which many countries with high standards of living have witnessed a major reduction of population growth. This is in stark contrast to less developed countries, where population increase continues. Globally, the pace of population growth has slowed from a high of 2.2% per year in 1963.The global human population is expected to peak in the mid-twentieth century and fall by 2100.

Population growth, along with increased consumption, is a driver of environmental concerns, such as biodiversity loss and climate change, due to overexploitation of natural resources for human development. International policy focused on mitigating the impact of human population growth is concentrated in the Sustainable Development Goals, which seek to improve global living standards while reducing society's impact on the environment and advancing sustainable development.

The world population growth rate peaked in 1963 at 2.2% per year and then declined. In 2017, the estimated annual growth rate was 1.1%, according to the CIA World Factbook. The last 100 years have seen a massive fourfold increase in population due to medical advances, lower mortality rates, and an increase in agricultural productivity made possible by the Industrial Revolution. The yearly rise in the number of live people peaked at 88.0 million in 1989, then gradually decreased to 73.9 million in 2003, before rising to 75.2 million in 2006. In 2017, the human population increased by 83 million. In general, developed nations' growth rates have declined in recent decades, though annual growth rates remain above 2% in some Middle Eastern and Sub-Saharan African countries, as well as South Asia, Southeast Asia, and Latin America.

Population declines are occurring in several nations, particularly in Eastern Europe, owing to low birth rates, high mortality rates, and emigration. Growth in Southern Africa is faltering as a result of the high number of AIDS-related fatalities. Some Western European nations may also see population declines. Japan's population started to drop in 2005. According to the United Nations Population Division, the world's population will reach 11.2 billion by the end of the twenty-first century. According to the Institute for Health Metrics and Evaluation, the world population will reach 9.73 billion in 2064 before declining to 8.89 billion in 2100. According to a 2014 study published in Science, the global population will reach 11 billion by 2100, with a 70% chance of continuing growth into the 22nd century. In December 2019, the German Foundation for World Population reported that the global human population is growing at a rate of 2.6 people every second, and could reach 8 billion.

Population projections are attempts to show how human population statistics may change in the future. These projections are an important input to forecasts of the population's impact on this planet and humanity's future well-being.Models of population growth take trends in human development and apply projections into the future.According to the United Nations Population Division's 2021 projections, annual world population growth peaked at 2.3% per year in 1963, has since dropped to 0.9% in, equivalent to about 74 million people per year, and is projected to drop even further to minus 0.1% by 2100[10].

Based on this, the UN projected that the world population, 8 billion, would peak around the year 2086 at around 10.4 billion, and then begin a slow decline,However, estimates outside of the UN have put forward alternative models based on additional downward pressure on fertility (such as successful implementation of education and family planning goals in the UN's Sustainable Development Goals), which could result in peak population during the 2060-2070 period rather than later.According to the UN, all of the predicted growth in world population between 2020 and 2050 will come from less developed countries, with more than half coming from Sub-Saharan Africa. Half of the growth will come from just eight countries, five of which are in Africa. It is predicted that the population of Sub-Saharan Africa will double by 2050.

Throughout the rest of the century, some nations will enjoy population expansion, while others will suffer population reduction. According to the UN, Nigeria would add over 340 million people, roughly the current population of the United States, to become the third most populous nation, while China will lose almost half of its population.Population density (also known as standing stock or plant density in agriculture) is a measure of population per unit land area. It is usually applicable to people, but it may also be used to other living species. It is an important geographical word. In layman's terms, population density is the number of people who live in a certain location per square kilometer or other unit of geographical area.

Densities of Biological Populations

Population density is defined as population divided by total land area, which may include seas and oceans as needed.Low densities may result in an extinction vortex, reducing fertility even more. The Allee effect is named after the scientist who discovered it. Examples of reasons of poor fertility at low population density include. Increased difficulty in finding sexual partners. Human densities have increased due to increased inbreeding.Population density (people per square kilometer) per nation, 2006.World population density (people per square kilometer) map from 2005.

The number of people per unit of area, commonly expressed as "per square kilometer" or "per square mile," may include or omit, for example, expanses of water or glaciers. This is often computed for a county, city, nation, another area, or the whole planet.The world's population is around 8,000,000,000, while the entire area (including land and ocean) of the Earth is 510,000,000 km2 (197,000,000 sq. mi.). As a result of this extremely rough computation, the global human population density is around 7,800,000,000 510,000,000 = 15.3/km2 (40 per square mile). However, if just the Earth's surface area of 150,000,000 km2 (58,000,000 square miles) is included, human population density is 50/km2 (129 per square mile). This contains all continents and islands, as well as Antarctica. If Antarctica is omitted, population density jumps to more than 55 people per square mile (142 per square mile).

The European Commission's Joint Research Centre (JRC) has developed the Global Human Settlement Layer (GHSL), a suite of (open and free) data and tools to improve science for policy support to European Commission Directorate Generals and Services, as well as support to the United Nations system.City-states, microstates, and urban dependencies are among the world's most densely inhabited areas. In truth, 95% of the world's population lives on just 10% of the planet's territory. These regions have a limited land area and a high degree of urbanization, with an economically specialized city population depending on rural resources outside the territory, demonstrating the distinction between high population density and overcrowding.

Due to a lack of moisture, deserts have extremely limited potential for agricultural cultivation. As a result, their population density is low in general. However, certain Middle Eastern towns, such as Dubai, have seen rapid population and infrastructural expansion.Mongolia is the world's least densely inhabited nation owing to its severe environment and geology.Some perceive cities with high population densities to be overcrowded, yet this depends on aspects such as housing quality, infrastructure, and access to resources.

Very densely populated cities are mostly found in Asia (especially Southeast Asia); Africa's Lagos, Kinshasa, and Cairo; South America's Bogotá, Lima, and So Paulo; and Mexico City and Saint Petersburg are further examples.However, city population and area are heavily dependent on the definition of "urban area" used: densities are almost always higher for the center alone than when suburban settlements and intervening rural areas are included, as in the agglomeration or metropolitan area (the latter sometimes including neighboring cities).Based on a global population of 7.8 billion, the world's people, if seen as a loose throng occupying just under 1 m2 (10 sq. ft) per person (cf. Jacobs Method), would fill a space somewhat bigger than Delaware's geographical area.

CONCLUSION

The phrase population distribution relates to how the population spreads throughout a specific region changes. Population density is the best approach to quantifying population dispersion. The number of people living per square mile or square kilometer is often used to describe population distribution and density.Population pyramids formed from age-sex distributions are classified into three types: expanding, constrictive, and stable.Many variables influence population density, including birth rate, mortality rate, and dispersion. Death and emigration, or people leaving a community, tend to reduce population density, while births and immigration, or people coming into a population, tend to raise population density. Population size refers to the number of people in a population. Population density is defined as the average population per unit of area or volume. The characteristics of a species or its habitat may impact the pattern of spacing of individuals in a population, which is what population size means.

REFERENCES

[1] UNDP, “World population prospects 2019 - Highlights,” *Dep. Econ. Soc. Aff. World Popul. Prospect. 2019.*, 2019.

[2] ONU, *World population prospects 2019*. 2019.

[3] A. Sahasranaman and H. J. Jensen, “Spread of COVID-19 in urban neighbourhoods and slums of the developing world: Spread of COVID-19 in urban neighbourhoods and slums of the developing world,” *J. R. Soc. Interface*, 2021, doi: 10.1098/rsif.2020.0599.

[4] United Nations, "World Population Prospects 2019," 2019.

[5] J. J. Nieves *et al.*, "Examining the correlates and drivers of human population distributions across low-and middle-income countries," *J. R. Soc. Interface*, 2017, doi: 10.1098/rsif.2017.0401.

[6] United Nations, "World population prospects 2019 - Highlights," *Dep. Econ. Soc. Aff. World Popul. Prospect. 2019.*, 2019.

[7] M. Nadeem, A. Aziz, M. A. Al-Rashid, G. Tesoriere, M. Asim, and T. Campisi, "Scaling the potential of compact city development: The case of lahore, pakistan," *Sustain.*, 2021, doi: 10.3390/su13095257.

[8] A. Nahar, S. Kashem, and A. Das, "Regionalization of Bangladesh: A Key to Identify Regional Disparities of the Pattern of Population Distribution," *Landsc. Archit. Reg. Plan.*, 2019, doi: 10.11648/j.larp.20190401.12.

[9] J. T. Thorson, J. Jannot, and K. Somers, "Using spatio-temporal models of population growth and movement to monitor overlap between human impacts and fish populations," *J. Appl. Ecol.*, 2017, doi: 10.1111/1365-2664.12664.

[10] S. Dutta, S. Bardhan, S. Bhaduri, and S. Koduru, "Understanding the relationship between density and neighbourhood environmental quality - A framework for assessing Indian cities," *Int. J. Sustain. Dev. Plan.*, 2020, doi: 10.18280/IJSDP.150711.

CHAPTER 19

DEMOGRAPHY AND THE POPULATION COMPOSITION

Prof. Grishma Shukla, Professor,
School of Education, Jaipur National University, Jaipur, India,
Email Id:grishmashukla@jnujaipur.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Demography is the scientific study of human populations' size, structure, distribution, and dynamics. It investigates population characteristics such as age, gender, ethnicity, education, employment, fertility, mortality, migration, and other demographic factors. Population composition refers to a population's demographic features, such as its age structure, gender ratio, ethnic makeup, and other social and economic factors.

KEYWORDS:

Birth Rate, Demographic Analysis, Life Table, Live Birth, Population Composition.

INTRODUCTION

Demography is the statistical study of populations, particularly human populations. The demographic analysis investigates and quantifies the dimensions and dynamics of populations; it may apply to whole societies or to groups specified by characteristics such as education, nationality, religion, and ethnicity. Though there are a number of independent demography departments, educational institutions typically treat demography as a field of sociology. These methods were developed primarily to study human populations, but have been extended to a variety of areas where researchers want to know how populations of social actors can change over time through processes of birth, death, and migration (Figure.1) [1]–[3].

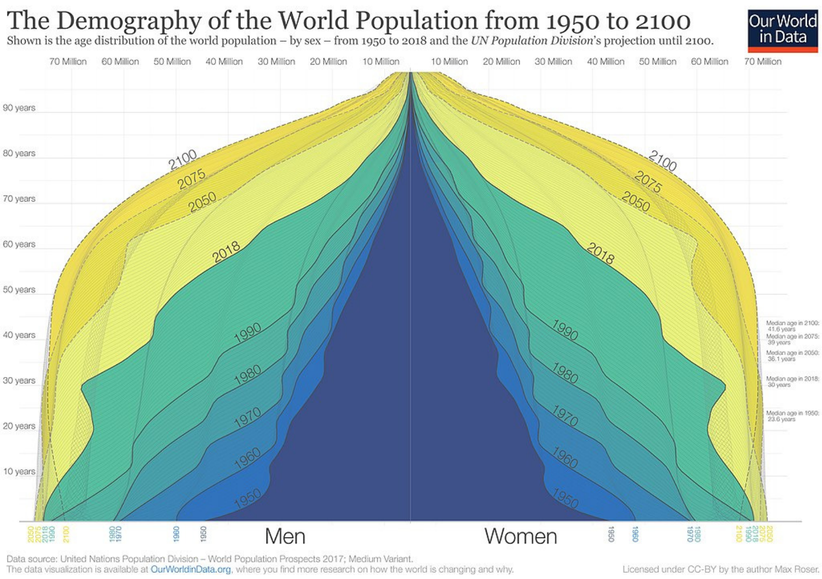

Figure 1: Diagram showing the overview of the Demography.

Demographic analysis in the context of human biological populations utilizes administrative data to create an independent estimate of the population.Demographic analysis estimates are often regarded as a credible criterion for measuring the quality of census information acquired at any time. Demographic analysis is used in the labor force to estimate the sizes and flows of worker populations; population ecology focuses on the birth, death, migration, and immigration of individuals in a population of living organisms; and social human sciences may involve movement of firms and institutional forms. Demographic analysis is utilized in a broad range of situations. For example, it is often used in business strategies to define the demographic associated with the firm's geographic location. Demographic analysis is sometimes abbreviated as DA. Census, The United States Census Bureau has increased its DA categories. As part of the 2010 U.S. Census, DA now contains a comparison of independent housing estimates with census address listings at many crucial time periods.

Patient demographics, such as patient and emergency contact information, and patient medical record data, are at the heart of every medical institution's data. They enable the identification of a patient and his classification into categories for statistical analysis. Date of birth, gender, date of death, postal code, ethnicity, blood type, emergency contact information, family doctor, insurance provider data, allergies, significant diagnoses, and major medical history are among the patient demographics.Formal demography focuses on the measurement of population activities, while social demography or population studies examines the links between economic, social, institutional, cultural, and biological variables impacting a population.

Demographic ideas may be traced back to antiquity and were present in numerous civilizations and civilizations, including Ancient Greece, Ancient Rome, China, and India.The word demography refers to the comprehensive study of population and is made up of the prefix demo- and the suffix -graphy.This is found in the writings of Herodotus, Thucydides, Hippocrates, Epicurus, Protagoras, Polus, Plato, and Aristotle in ancient Greece. In Rome, writers and philosophers such as Cicero, Seneca, Pliny the Elder, Marcus Aurelius, Epictetus, Cato, and Columella expressed important ideas on this subject.

Christian theologians spent a lot of work in the Middle Ages disputing Classical views about demography. William of Conches, Bartholomew of Lucca, William of Auvergne, William of Pagula, and Muslim sociologists like Ibn Khaldun were important additions to the topic. Natural and Political Observations Made upon the Bills of Mortality, by John Graunt, is a rudimentary type of life table and is one of the first demographic studies in the modern age. One-third of children in London died before reaching the age of sixteen, according to the study's results. The life table was established by mathematicians such as Edmond Halley as the foundation for life insurance mathematics. Richard Price is credited with publishing the first textbook on life contingencies in 1771, which was subsequently followed by Augustus De Morgan's On the Application of Probabilities to Life Contingencies.

In 1755, Benjamin Franklin published his essay Observations Concerning the Increase of Mankind, Peopling of Countries, etc., projecting exponential growth in British colonies. His work influenced Thomas Robert Malthus, who, writing at the end of the 18th century, feared that if population growth was unchecked, it would tend to outstrip food production, leading to ever-increasing famine and poverty (see Malthusian catastrophe). Malthus is regarded as the intellectual forefather of the concepts of overpopulation and development constraints. Later, Benjamin Gompertz and Verhulst produced more advanced and realistic models.

Demography is the statistical and mathematical study of human population size, composition, and geographical distribution, as well as how these characteristics change over time. Data are gathered through a population census and registers, which keep track of occurrences such as births, deaths, migrations, marriages, divorces, sicknesses, and employment. To do so, it is necessary to understand how they are computed and the issues they answer, which are encompassed in these four concepts: population change, population standardization, the demographic accounting equation, and population composition.There are two forms of data collection: direct and indirect, each having various ways.

Direct methods

Direct data comes from vital statistics registries, which keep account of all births and deaths, as well as legal status changes including marriage, divorce, and migration (registration of place of residence). Registry data are the best approach for calculating the number of births and deaths in industrialized nations with excellent registration systems (such as the United States and most of Europe).

The other popular direct way of obtaining demographic data is a census. A census is generally carried out by a national government in order to count every individual in a country. In contrast to vital statistics data, which is often gathered constantly and summarized on an annual basis, censuses occur only every 10 years or so and are therefore not always the greatest source of birth and death data. Following a census, analyses are performed to determine how much overcounting or undercounting occurred. These compare census sex ratios to those calculated from natural values and mortality data.

Censuses are used for more than merely counting individuals. They often gather information on families or households, as well as individual characteristics such as age, gender, marital status, literacy/education, job status, occupation, and geographic area. They may also gather information on migration (or birthplace or prior residence), language, religion, nationality (or ethnicity or race), and citizenship. Censuses are also used as a direct source of information about fertility and mortality in countries where the vital registration system is incomplete; for example, the People's Republic of China's censuses gather information on births and deaths that occurred in the 18 months preceding the census[4]–[6].

Indirect methods

In nations and times when complete data are unavailable, such as most of the developing world and much of historical demography, indirect techniques of data collection are necessary. The sister method is one of several strategies in modern demography, in which survey researchers ask women how many of their sisters have died or had children, and at what age. Researchers may then use these surveys to estimate birth and death rates for the whole population. Inquiring about siblings, parents, and offspring is another indirect strategy used in modern demography. In historical demography, more indirect approaches are required. Demographic approaches for modeling population dynamics are many. Models of mortality (including the life table, Gompertz models, hazards models, Cox proportional hazards models, multiple decrement life tables, Brass relational logits), fertility (Hermes model, Coale-Trussell models, parity progression ratios), marriage (Singulate Mean at Marriage, Page model), disability (Sullivan's method, multistate life tables), and population momentum (Keyfitz) are among them.

The United Kingdom has four national birth cohort studies, the first three of which are 12 years apart: the 1946 National Survey of Health and Development, the 1958 National Child Development Study, the 1970 British Cohort Study, and the Millennium Cohort Study, which began in 2000. For many years, they have tracked the lives of samples of individuals (usually starting with roughly 17,000 in each research) and are currently ongoing (Figure.2). Because the samples were collected in a nationally representative manner, conclusions regarding the variations between four separate generations of British people in terms of their health, education, attitudes, childbearing, and work patterns may be derived from these research. When a population is small enough that the number of occurrences (births, deaths, etc.) is likewise minimal, indirect standardization is applied. In this instance, procedures for calculating a standardized mortality rate (SMR) or standardized incidence rate (SIR) must be applied.

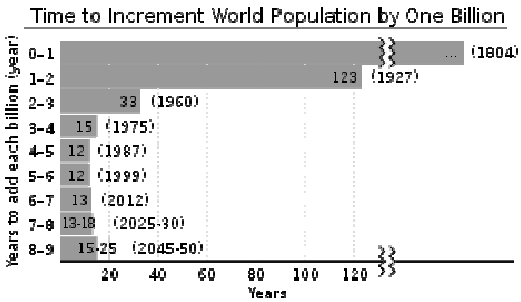

Figure 2: Diagram showing the rate of the human population growth projection.

Population distribution map of nations

In nations and times when complete data are unavailable, such as most of the developing world and much of historical demography, indirect techniques of data collection are necessary. The sister method is one of several strategies in modern demography, in which survey researchers ask women how many of their sisters have died or had children, and at what age. Researchers may then use these surveys to estimate birth and death rates for the whole population. Inquiring about siblings, parents, and offspring is another indirect strategy used in modern demography. In historical demography, further indirect approaches are required.

Demographic approaches for modeling population dynamics are many. Models of mortality (including the life table, Gompertz models, hazards models, Cox proportional hazards models, multiple decrement life tables, Brass relational logits), fertility, marriage, disability (Sullivan's method, multistate life tables), and population momentum are among them.The United Kingdom has four national birth cohort studies, the first three of which are 12 years apart: the 1946 National Survey of Health and Development, the 1958 National Child Development Study,the 1970 British Cohort Study,and the Millennium Cohort Study, which began in 2000. For many years, they have tracked the lives of samples of individuals (usually starting with roughly 17,000 in each research) and are currently ongoing. Because the samples were collected in a nationally representative manner, conclusions regarding the variations between four separate generations of British people in terms of their health, education, attitudes, childbearing, and work patterns may be derived from this research.When a population is small enough that the number of occurrences (births, deaths, etc.) is likewise minimal, indirect standardization is applied. Methods must be utilized in this instance to get a standardized mortality rate (SMR) or standardized incidence rate (SIR)[7]–[9].

DISCUSSION

The difference in population size between two populations is used to study population change. As the world's population continues to grow, demography must account for population change. This is computed by subtracting one population size from a previous census. The intercensal percentage change is the best method for evaluating population change. The intercensal percentage change is calculated by dividing the absolute change in population between censuses by the population size in the previous census. Then increase this by a hundred to get a percentage. When this figure is reached, the population growth of two or more countries of varying sizes may be precisely recorded and evaluated.

Population number standardization

To provide a meaningful comparison, figures must be adjusted to account for the size of the population under investigation. The fertility rate, for example, is computed as the ratio of births to women of reproductive age to the total number of women in this age group. We would not know whether a country with a greater rate of births or deaths had a population with more women of reproductive age or more births per eligible woman if these adjustments were not done.There are two basic ways to standardization: direct standardization and indirect standardization. Rates and ratios that are often used. The crude birth rate, or the number of live births per 1,000 people each year.The general fertility rate, defined as the yearly number of live births per 1,000 women of reproductive age (usually defined as 15 to 49 years old, although occasionally as 15 to 44).Age-specific fertility rates, or the yearly number of live births per 1,000 women in specified age groups (often 15-19, 20-24, and so on).

The crude mortality rate, or the number of deaths per 1,000 persons each year.The infant mortality rate, which is the yearly number of deaths among children under the age of one per 1,000 live births.Life expectancy (or expectation of life), the number of years a person of a particular age may anticipate to live at current mortality rates.The total fertility rate, which is the number of live births per woman who has completed her reproductive life if her childbearing at each age reflects current age-specific fertility rates.Replacement level fertility, defined as the average number of children a woman must have in order to replace the population for the following generation. In the United States, for example, the replacement level fertility is 2.11.

The gross reproduction rate, or the number of daughters a woman would have if she finished her reproductive life at current age-specific fertility rates.The net reproduction ratio is the estimated number of daughters per newborn prospective mother who may or may not live to reproductive age.A stable population is one that has maintained steady crude birth and death rates for such a long time that the proportion of persons in each age class stays constant, or the population pyramid has an unchanging structure.A stationary population, defined as one that is both constant and unchanging in size (the difference between the crude birth and crude death rates is zero).A stable population does not have to be set in size. It may be growing or contracting.

It is important to note that the crude mortality rate, as stated above and applied to the whole population, might offer a deceptive image. For example, despite improved health-care standards in industrialized countries, the number of fatalities per 1,000 persons in wealthy countries might be higher than in less-developed ones. Because industrialized nations have a greater number of elderly individuals who are more likely to die each year, the total mortality rate may be higher even if the death rate at any age is lower. A life table, which presents mortality individually at each age, provides a fuller view of mortality. A life table is required to provide an accurate estimate of life expectancy.

These fundamental equations may also be used to analyze subpopulations. The population size of ethnic groups or nationalities within a particular culture or country, for example, is affected by the same factors. However, when dealing with ethnic groups, "net migration" may need to be separated between physical migration and ethnic reidentification (assimilation). Individuals who alter their ethnic self-labels or whose ethnic categorization in official data changes over time may be considered to be migrating or relocating from one demographic subtype to another[10].

In general, although the fundamental demographic equation is true, the recording and counting of events (births, deaths, immigration, and emigration) as well as the enumeration of overall population number are vulnerable to inaccuracy. When accounting for population size or change, consideration must be made for mistake in the underlying data. The graph in this section depicts the most recent UN (United Nations) WHO forecasts of global population to the year 2150 (red = high, orange = medium, green = low). According to the UN's "medium" prediction, the global population will achieve an approximate equilibrium of 9 billion by 2075. Working independently, demographers from the International Institute for Applied Systems Analysis in Austria predict that the global population will peak at 9 billion by 2070.The average age of the population is expected to climb throughout the twenty-first century.

Population science

Populations may shift due to three factors: fertility, death, and migration. Fertility refers to the number of children a woman has, as opposed to fecundity (a woman's reproductive potential). Mortality is the study of the causes, effects, and measurement of processes that cause mortality among individuals of the population. Demographers typically examine mortality using the life table, a statistical instrument that offers information on the population's mortality circumstances. Migration is defined as the movement of people from one location to another across a recognized political border. Migration scholars do not call movements ‘migrations' unless they are semi-permanent. As a result, demographers do not believe tourists and travelers are moving. While demographers studying migration often use census data on place of residence, indirect data sources such as tax forms and labor force surveys are equally essential.

Demography is now extensively taught at many institutions throughout the globe, drawing students with backgrounds in social sciences, statistics, and health studies. Demography, which sits at the crossroads of several disciplines such as sociology, economics, epidemiology, geography, anthropology, and history, provides tools for addressing a wide range of population issues by combining a more technical quantitative approach that serves as the discipline's core with many other methods borrowed from social or other sciences. Demographic research is carried out at universities, research institutions, statistical offices, and various international organizations. Population institutions are members of the CICRED (International Committee for Coordination of Demographic Research) network, while most individual scientists engaged in demographic research are members of the International Union for the Scientific Study of Population, or a national association such as the Population Association of America in the United States, or affiliates of the Federation of Canadian Demographers in Canada.

Population composition

Population composition is a description of a population based on factors like age, ethnicity, gender, or marital status. These descriptions may be required to comprehend the social dynamics revealed by historical and comparative study. A population pyramid is often used to compare this data.The makeup of the population is also an essential aspect of historical study. Information spanning hundreds of years is not necessarily valuable since the quantity of persons for whom data is accessible may not offer the necessary information (such as population size). A lack of knowledge about the original data-collection processes may preclude an appropriate assessment of data quality.

Labor market demographic analysis may be used to demonstrate sluggish population growth, population aging, and the rising relevance of immigration. According to the United States Census Bureau, the United States will undergo some drastic demographic changes during the next 100 years. The population is predicted to expand more slowly and age more quickly than ever before, and the country will become a nation of immigrants. This migration is expected to increase over the next century, with new immigrants and their offspring accounting for more than half of the U.S. population. These demographic transitions have the potential to cause significant changes in the economy, particularly in labor markets.People leave organizations for a variety of reasons, including better careers, discontent, and family issues. The reasons of turnover may be divided into two categories: those related to organizational culture and those related to all other variables. People who may not completely embrace a culture may choose to leave. Alternatively, some people may quit since they do not fit in and do not change inside a certain company.

Organizational Population Ecology

Population ecology is defined as the study of the distribution and abundance of organisms. In terms of organizations and demographics, organizations face a variety of threats to their long-term existence. Hospitals, like all big and complex institutions, are influenced by the environment in which they operate. For example, research was conducted on the shutdown of acute care hospitals in Florida within a certain time period. The research looked at the impact size, age, and niche density of these specific hospitals. According to population theory, environmental variables mostly impact organizational results. Among the theory's various criteria, four pertain to the hospital shutdown example: size, age, density of niches in which organizations operate, and density of niches in which organizations are founded.

Demographers may be relied upon to aid commercial companies in evaluating the best potential site in an area for a branch shop or service outlet, estimating demand for a new product, and analyzing labor demographics. Choosing a new location for a bank branch, determining the area in which to start a new supermarket, consulting a bank loan officer that a particular location would be a beneficial site to start a car wash, and determining which shopping area would be best to buy and redevelop in a metropolitan area are all examples of problems that can be addressed by demographers.Standardization is a valuable demographic approach used in business research. It may be used to compare various markets as an interpretative and analytic tool.These organizations are concerned with the quantity and qualities of their customers in order to increase the sale of their goods, their perspective on their power, services, and useful works.

CONCLUSION

Demographic studies also investigate population socioeconomic aspects such as educational attainment, profession, income, and family structure. These variables are critical for understanding social and economic inequality, labor market dynamics, and population development in general. Censuses, surveys, vital registration systems, and administrative records are used to obtain demographic data. Demographic analysis studies population dynamics and informs policy-making in areas such as healthcare, education, labor markets, and social welfare by using statistical methodologies, mathematical models, and data visualization techniques.

REFERENCES

[1] J. B. Dowd *et al.*, "Demographic science aids in understanding the spread and fatality rates of COVID-19," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A.*, 2020, doi: 10.1073/pnas.2004911117.

[2] S. KC and W. Lutz, "The human core of the shared socioeconomic pathways: Population scenarios by age, sex and level of education for all countries to 2100," *Glob. Environ. Chang.*, 2017, doi: 10.1016/j.gloenvcha.2014.06.004.

[3] V. H. W. Rudolf and N. L. Rasmussen, "Population structure determines functional differences among species and ecosystem processes," *Nat. Commun.*, 2013, doi: 10.1038/ncomms3318.

[4] S. S. Strassberg and N. Creanza, "Cultural evolution and prehistoric demography: Cultural evolution and demography," *Philos. Trans. R. Soc. B Biol. Sci.*, 2021, doi: 10.1098/rstb.2019.0713.

[5] J. Ohlberger, E. J. Ward, D. E. Schindler, and B. Lewis, "Demographic changes in Chinook salmon across the Northeast Pacific Ocean," *Fish Fish.*, 2018, doi: 10.1111/faf.12272.

[6] T. Wilson, P. McDonald, J. Temple, B. Brijnath, and A. Utomo, "Past and projected growth of Australia's older migrant populations," *Genus*, 2020, doi: 10.1186/s41118-020-00091-6.

[7] F. T. Denton, "Demography and the Economy," *Can. Stud. Popul.*, 2014, doi: 10.25336/p6qk6n.

[8] N. K. Namboodiri, H. S. Shryock, and J. S. Siegel, "The Methods and Materials of Demography.," *Soc. Forces*, 1973, doi: 10.2307/2576436.

[9] S. T. Leu, P. Sah, E. Krzyszczyk, A. M. Jacoby, J. Mann, and S. Bansal, "Sex, synchrony, and skin contact: Integrating multiple behaviors to assess pathogen transmission risk," *Behav. Ecol.*, 2020, doi: 10.1093/beheco/araa002.

[10] T. Slack and L. Jensen, "The Changing Demography of Rural and Small-Town America," *Population Research and Policy Review*. 2020. doi: 10.1007/s11113-020-09608-5.

CHAPTER 20

DEVELOPMENT GEOGRAPHY AND ITS IMPORTANCE FOR HUMAN

Prof. Rita Arora, Director,
School of Education, Jaipur National University, Jaipur, India,
Email Id:ritaarora@jnujaipur.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Development Geography is concerned with regional development challenges. Poverty reduction and improved quality of life are important indicators. The "Differentiation-diffusion-convergence" model motivates development research. The primary point is the complicated interaction between humans and the environment.Geography has evolved in four stages: ancient, pre-modern, modern, and contemporary.

KEYWORDS:

Developing Nations, Economic Growth, Economics Developments, GNP Capita, Quality Life.

INTRODUCTION

Development geography is a field of geography that focuses on the human occupants' level of living and quality of life. In this sense, development refers to a process of change that has an impact on people's lives. It may imply an improvement in the perceived quality of life of those enduring change.However, progress is not necessarily a good thing. Gunder Frank addressed the global economic processes that contribute to the emergence of underdevelopment. His dependence theory addresses this.Geographers analyze geographical trends of development in development geography. They look at economic, political, and social aspects to determine what traits may be used to assess progress. They aim to comprehend both the geographical origins and implications of different levels of development. More Economically Developed Countries (MEDCs) are compared to Less Economically Developed Countries (LEDCs) in studies. Variations within nations are also examined, such as the disparities between northern and southern Italy, known as the Mezzogiorno.

Indicators Quantitative

Quantitative indicators are numerical measures of progress. GNP (Gross National Product) per capita, unemployment rates, energy consumption, and the share of GNP in basic industries are all economic indicators. GNP per capita is the most often used of these since it reflects the value of all products and services produced in a nation, excluding those produced by foreign corporations, and thereby gauges the country's economic and industrial progress. However, utilizing GNP per capita has a number of drawbacks[1]–[3].

GNP per capita, for example, does not account for the distribution of money, which might be exceedingly uneven, as in the UAE, where oil money has been gathered by a wealthy few but has not gone to most of the population.Second, GNP does not assess whether the money created truly improves people's lives, which is crucial since many MEDCs see substantial gains in income but only little improvements in happiness over time.

Third, the unofficial economy, which includes subsistence agriculture and cash-in-hand or unpaid labour and is typically large in LEDCs, is seldom included in the GNP calculation. In LEDCs, reliable data collection is sometimes prohibitively costly, and some governments purposefully or inadvertently disclose incorrect figures. Furthermore, the GNP statistic is normally presented in US dollars, which might misrepresent the money's genuine street worth owing to shifting currency exchange rates, therefore it is often transformed using purchasing power parity (PPP), which calculates the actual comparable buying power of the money in the nation.

Other indices

In general, social indicators include access to clean water and sanitation (which reflect the quality of infrastructure established in the nation) and the adult literacy rate, which measures the government's ability to address the demands of the people. The birth rate, mortality rate, and fertility rate are all demographic indices that represent the amount of industrialization.Nutrition (calories per day, calories from protein, and percentage of population malnourished), infant mortality, and population per doctor are health indicators (a sub-factor of demographic indicators) that reflect the availability of healthcare and sanitary services in a nation.The following table compares GDP per capita and HDI in three nations (Table.1). Gross domestic product (GDP) is utilized instead of Gross national product (GNP) in this case. The distinction between the two phrases is that GDP refers to all completed services and commodities produced physically inside a nation, while GNP refers to all finished services and goods possessed by people of a country, regardless of whether those items are created in that country.

Table 1: The table compares GDP per capita and HDI for three nations (Wikipedia).

HDI rank	Country	GDP per capita (PPP US$) 2008	Human development index (HDI) value 2006
4	Australia	35,677	0.965
70	Brazil	10,296	0.807
151	Zimbabwe	188	0.513

PQLI

Other composite metrics include the PQLI (Physical Quality of Life Index), which was a forerunner to the HDI and evaluated nations from 0 to 100 based on infant mortality rate rather than GNP per capita. It was obtained by giving a score of 0 to 100 to each indication and comparing it to other nations across the globe. The PQLI of a nation is calculated by taking the average of these three figures.

HPI

The HPI (Human Poverty Index) is used to assess the proportion of a country's population living in relative poverty. The HPI-1 is used in developing nations to better discern the number of individuals living in unusually low living circumstances, whereas the HPI-2 is utilized in industrialized countries. The HPI-1 is derived using the proportion of individuals who are not projected to live to the age of 40, the adult illiteracy rate, the percentage of people who do not have access to good water, health facilities, and the percentage of children under the age of five who are underweight. The HPI-2 is derived using the proportion of persons who do not live to the age of 60, the adult functional illiteracy rate, and the percentage of people who live on less than half of the median personal disposable income.

GDI

The Gender-related Development Index (GDI) assesses gender equality in a nation based on life expectancy, literacy rates, school attendance, and income.Descriptions of living circumstances and people's quality of life are examples of qualitative indicators. They are valuable in examining qualities that are difficult to compute or evaluate numerically, such as freedom, corruption, or security, which are mostly non-material advantages.Global wealth expanded in tangible terms as well, and from 1947 to 2000, average per capita income quadrupled while global GDP almost tenfolded (from $US3 trillion to $US30 trillion) Over a quarter of the 4.5 billion people living in LEDCs still have life expectancies of less than 40 years. In 2000, more than 80 nations had lower yearly per capita incomes than in 1990. The average income of the world's five wealthiest nations is 74 times that of the world's lowest five, the greatest disparity in history. Almost 1.3 billion people do not have access to safe drinking water. Malnutrition affects around 840 million people. The North-South split is the most well-known trend in development. The North-South split divides the wealthy North, sometimes known as the developed world, from the impoverished South. This line of separation is not as simple as it seems and divides the world into two major portions. The Brandt Line is another name for it.

North America, Europe, Russia, South Korea, Japan, Australia, and New Zealand are considered to be in the "North" of this split. This region's nations are typically more economically developed. As a result, the "South" includes the whole of the Southern Hemisphere, which is primarily made up of KFCs. With the exception of Australia and New Zealand, another probable dividing line is the Tropic of Cancer. It is crucial to recognize that country status is far from static, and the pattern is likely to become twisted as a result of the rapid growth of some southern nations, many of which are NICs, such as India, Thailand, Brazil, Malaysia, Mexico, and others. These nations are experiencing rapid growth as a result of expanding industrial sectors and exports.

Most nations are seeing considerable growth in income and living standards. There are, however, some sad exceptions to this rule. Notably, the shift to a market economy has resulted in significant disruption of industry in various former Soviet Union nations. Many African countries, including Angola, Congo, Sierra Leone, and others, have lately seen their GDPs fall as a result of conflicts and the AIDS pandemic. Arab oil producers depend significantly on oil exports to fund their GDPs, therefore any drop in the market price of oil may result in sharp drops in GNP. Countries that depend heavily on a few exports for the majority of their revenue are very sensitive to fluctuations in the market value of those commodities and are frequently derisively referred to as banana republics. Many developing nations depend heavily on exports of a few key items for a significant portion of their revenue (coffee and lumber, for example), which may cause chaos when the value of these commodities falls, leaving these countries unable to repay their obligations.

Within nations, wealth is more concentrated in urban regions than in rural ones. Wealth also gravitates toward locations rich in natural resources or those active in tertiary (service) sectors and commerce. This results in a concentration of wealth near mining and financial centers such as New York, London, and Tokyo.Geography may also have an impact on economic growth in a variety of ways. An examination of existing data sets reveals three key consequences of geography for emerging countries. First and foremost, access to sea routes is critical; Adam Smith recognized this. Sea travel is more cheaper and faster than land travel, resulting in a larger and faster distribution of resources and ideas, both of which are critical to economic stimulation. Disease prevalence is also determined by geography: for example, the World Health Organization estimates that 300-500 million new cases of malaria are diagnosed each year.

Malaria is often linked with countries that have failed to attain sustainable economic growth. sickness not only reduces labor productivity, but it also shifts the country's age structure, pushing the population to lean significantly toward children as adults die from sickness and the population experiences a rise in fertility to keep up with the high mortality rates. High fertility reduces the quality of life for each kid owing to a reduction in resources allotted to each of them, as well as women's work productivity. Agriculture production is the third way geography impacts development. Temperate locations produce the most main grains; places such as the African savanna provide far less value for the labor expense. Due to poor agricultural productivity, a higher proportion of the population must devote their energies to agriculture, resulting in slower urban growth. This, in turn, hinders technical progress, which is a critical source of development in the twenty-first century.

Effective governments may address numerous hurdles to economic and social progress, but this is often difficult owing to the path dependence that societies acquire on many of these concerns. Some development impediments, such as climate barriers, may be difficult to overcome. In these circumstances, communities must determine if such climatic impediments to growth need a certain community to be relocated in order to experience better economic development.

Many academics think that foreign assistance to developing countries is unproductive and, in many cases, counterproductive. This is because foreign help affects the incentives for production in a particular developing country, and foreign aid has a propensity to corrupt the governments in charge of its allocation and distribution.Cultural hurdles to growth, such as prejudice based on gender, ethnicity, religion, or sexual orientation, are difficult to eliminate in repressive civilizations, while some communities have made substantial progress[4]–[6].

While the aforementioned impediments to economic growth and development are more prominent in the world's less developed nations, even the most developed economies have specific development difficulties such as drug prohibition and wealth disparity.There are benefits to receiving assistance. Short-term or emergency relief is often used to assist people in LEDCs in surviving a natural (earthquake, tsunami, volcanic eruption, etc.) or human (civil war, etc.) catastrophe. Aid contributes to the development of the receiving nation (the country that receives aid).However, there are some drawbacks to assistance. Aid often does not reach the poorest populations. Often, assistance money is spent on infrastructure (bridges, roads, etc.) that only the wealthy can utilize. Furthermore, the receiving nation becomes increasingly reliant on help from a donor country (the country that provides aid).

While the above definition of assistance has been widely used in development geography, it is vital to recall that the aid landscape is significantly more complicated than one-way flows from 'developed' to 'poor' nations. Geographers of development have been in the forefront of research aimed at comprehending both the material exchanges and the language around 'South-South' development cooperation. 'Non-traditional' foreign assistance from Southern, Middle Eastern, and post-Socialist governments (those not part of the OECD's Development Assistance Committee (DAC)) offers alternate development discourses and methods to the mainstream Western model. Development geographers investigate the geopolitical motivations behind assistance donor programs for "LDCs," as well as the discursive symbolic repertoires of non-DAC donor nations. China, which has been active as an aid donor since the latter half of the twentieth century but only published its first report on foreign aid policy in 2011, and India, which is frequently cited as an aid recipient but has had donor programs in Nepal and Bhutan since the 1950s, are two illustrative examples of the complex aid landscape.

DISCUSSION

Other definitions emphasize technical change as an important criterion. Thus, development may be characterized as the transformation of a traditional civilization using conventional, unsophisticated ways into a contemporary, high-technology, high-income economy in which capital, labor skills, and scientific knowledge replace labor-intensive means of production. Clearly, the problems of attempting to include all potential criteria in a single definition of development are enormous, and one method to sidestep this difficulty is to simply characterize the features of less developed countries as separate from developed ones.

According to Todaro, less developed economies are characterized by low levels of living, as measured by indices such as low income, high inequalities, poor health, and inadequate education; low levels of productivity; high rates of population growth and dependency burdens; high and rising levels of unemployment and underemployment; substantial reliance on agricultural production and primary export products; and the prevalence of imperfect market conditions. Even with such a wide list of traits, it is simple to uncover exceptions; and although this descriptive definition is useful for giving a checklist, it does not get us any closer to a fully adequate definition of development. Other commentators emphasize the reality that many emerging nations were once colonial territory, with all of the inevitable economic, social, political, and psychological consequences of colonialism. Development may also have a political perspective: it should include freedom of action and speech, giving people more options.

Alternatively, the focus may be placed on three primary developmental goals: nourishment, self-esteem, and the capacity to choose. Perhaps it is preferable to conclude that a completely acceptable and universally applicable development theory is not conceivable nor desirable. According to one writer, "there are many reasons why it is important to know something about the various theories that have grown up around this whole subject of development." As these pages will demonstrate, anybody seeking to address the challenges of impoverished or affluent nations begins, albeit subconsciously, with a variety of assumptions and theoretical perspectives. Almost every remark on these pages may be argued to represent a specific viewpoint, attitude, or theoretical stance.

It is also important to recognize that clear theoretical positions are implied in a number of reports and conferences, including Limits to Growth, the Brandt Report , the Brundtland Report, the United Nations Conference on Environment and Development (UNCED) in Rio de Janeiro in 1992, and the recent rise in influence and criticism of non-governmental organizations (NGOs) and globalization. Furthermore, one goal of theory in our situation is to explain patterns of inequality: why one nation has risen swiftly and effectively while another remains impoverished. There is little doubt that no one or simple explanatory element, such as population size or density, climate, or natural resources, will suffice.

As a result, there is little evidence to support a relationship between climate and levels of development: although many impoverished nations are located in the humid tropics, many others are not. Similarly, although natural resources have undoubtedly aided the growth of certain nations, such as Brunei and Venezuela, they have not aided the development of others, such as Nigeria. Theory is also relevant in any consideration of the European effect on development in emerging nations, the majority of which have been exposed to European colonial control at some point. Indeed, some of the most significant theoretical work has emerged from various interpretations of the colonial and post-colonial experience in developing nations. The consequences of colonial rule have been profound and catastrophic. These have included the establishment of well-defined areas with well-defined geographical borders. Economic repercussions have included the disruption of primarily subsistence economies, the introduction and growth of cash crops, the emergence of monetary exchange economies, and the building of internal transportation and communication networks[7]–[9].

The most important economic legacy left by colonial powers to emerging nations, however, was that the economics of the different states were largely the invention of the colonial governments that had governed them. Many authors allude to the impact of European colonial rule on general health and education, as well as the formation of indigenous professional and administrative structures, when discussing the social and political repercussions of European colonial authority. Within fixed geographical bounds, Europeans also built a general peace and a rudimentary system of law, order, and administration. Furthermore, specialized forms of governance were established, including those modeled after Western systems of parliamentary democracy, and common languages were developed. However, such remarks may and have been read both favorably and adversely, and much of the theoretical discussion on development has been inspired by diametrically opposed evaluations of the colonial period.

On the one hand, some argue that Europeans performed a "civilizing" mission in the developing world, providing its peoples with a solid foundation for future social, economic, and political advancement in the modern world. On the other hand, others argue that the majority of Third World issues stem from the exploitative and destructive character of European colonialism; that Europe created the reliance weight that impoverished nations currently bear. Over the last fifty years or more, the development literature has been affected by a diverse set of ideas, many of which reflect varying interpretations of colonial effect as well as the political connections and biases of the individual writers. The progression has been expected, with ideas and models drawn from capitalism analysis giving way to a succession of Marxist or neo-Marxist theories. Although the substance and thrust of the theoretical argument has shifted in recent years, it is still feasible to find authors who strongly hold to older theoretical perspectives.

Some theoretical viewpoints are trendier than others now, but it is critical that every development student create his or her own working theoretical stance while being open to changing one's mind in the future. What is unacceptable is blindly following the trendy theoretical prescription of the day, or the profoundly and firmly held ideas of any single author or presenter. This is an area that is always changing, and all that is guaranteed is that the popular view of today may be rejected tomorrow. This is not the place to summarize all of the main development theories and their versions, but four basic categories should be mentioned.

There is a wide variety of early ideas, including Rostow's linear stages theory and Lewis's structural change conceptions. The European and American experiences, as well as the belief in regulated capitalism economic and social progress, spawned modernization ideologies. They also 'arose from a new spirit of optimism and anticommunism after 1945, as well as the ambition of impoverished nations to ensure economic growth'. They are founded on the idea that developed nations are differentiated by their economic, social, cultural, and political modernity, which stands in stark contrast to traditional values in emerging cultures. Economic growth includes social and cultural developments, as well as better manufacturing processes. Then, development is essentially a matter of modernization - mechanization, fast industrialization, and the transfer of the underemployed rural people to the productive urban-industrial sector.

These modernization ideas had considerable popularity until the end of the 1950s, arguing that industrialization may break the cycle of poverty and that diffusion, spread effects, and trickle-down effects would bring about progress. Dependency theories include a broad variety of perspectives and may be traced back to the work of Frank and Baran in Latin America. They have their foundations in neo-Marxist political philosophy. Amin and Wallerstein are two more names linked with dependence techniques, which were popular in the 1970s. The 'development of underdevelopment' school may also be classified under this topic[10].

As previously stated, dependence theory is historically because substantial areas of the developing world were formerly part of European empires, most notably those of Britain, France, Portugal, Spain, and the Netherlands. The theories of 'development of underdevelopment' assume that progress in the developing world has been and continues to be hampered by forces (international and/or domestic) bent on the ongoing exploitation of the developing world - the 'periphery,' its peoples, and its resources - by 'the core,' that is, the metropolitan areas of America and Europe . The emphasis of dependence theory, therefore, is not on the development process, but on the causes of underdevelopment.

The focus in this kind of study is on "the seemingly endless vision of the Western will to develop the world" - and to develop it in its own image. However, the dependence and underdevelopment schools have failed to considerably enhance our grasp of the intricacies of the developing world's current situation or to effectively track the dynamics of development processes in the 1980s and 1990s. While popular among academics, this collection of ideas has had little impact on real development initiatives in developing nations. On the practical level, those few countries, such as Benin and several other African countries, that have incorporated some form of neo-Marxist thinking into their economic strategies have fared poorly, whereas those countries, such as the East Asian NICs, have fared rather well.

In contrast to Latin America and Africa, East Asia has seen comparatively little severe ideological criticism of colonialism. Other objections of the dependency method include the belief that 'the dependency stance is vitiated by a changeable mix of circular reasoning, faulty inferences from empirical evidence, and a poor grounding in deductive theory'. Other neo-Marxist critics include Warren, who believes that post-imperialist capitalism fosters development in the developing world: 'Capitalism is active and evolved in terms of economic progress, even if its distribution of the rewards of this growth is illogical and unjust.'

CONCLUSION

Development geography examines development policies, initiatives, and tactics used by governments, international agencies, and non-governmental organizations (NGOs). It evaluates their effects on development outcomes such as poverty alleviation, economic growth, and social empowerment. Research methodologies used in development geography include quantitative and qualitative approaches, GIS (Geographic Information Systems), remote sensing, and fieldwork. To achieve a thorough knowledge of the complex processes and spatial dynamics of development, it relies on ideas and concepts from geography, economics, sociology, political science, and environmental studies.

REFERENCES

[1] V. Ramia, “Graphic Thought,” *Anthropol. Now*, 2017, doi: 10.1080/19428200.2017.1390888.

[2] R. Adanali, “How Geogames Can Support Geographical Education?,” *Rev. Int. Geogr. Educ. Online*, 2021, doi: 10.33403/rigeo.855550.

[3] S. M. Turton and A. M. Maude, “Australian geography: The next 10 years (and beyond)?,” *Geographical Research*. 2020. doi: 10.1111/1745-5871.12405.

[4] R. Kearns and C. Milligan, “Placing therapeutic landscape as theoretical development in Health & Place,” *Health and Place*. 2020. doi: 10.1016/j.healthplace.2019.102224.

[5] C. Feng *et al.*, “Development and innovations in the human geography discipline at Peking University,” *Dili Xuebao/Acta Geogr. Sin.*, 2017, doi: 10.11821/dlxb201711004.

[6] B. László,“Megállapítások az energiaföldrajz fejlődéséről,” *Földrajzi Közlemények*, 2020, doi: 10.32643/fk.144.2.3.

[7] H. Capel, “Philosophy and science in geography, XVI-XXI centuries,” *Investig. Geogr.*, 2016, doi: 10.14350/rig.51371.

[8] E. Brady and J. Prior, “Environmental aesthetics: A synthetic review,” *People and Nature*. 2020. doi: 10.1002/pan3.10089.

[9] C. Zowada, N. Belova, and I. Eilks, “Enhancing Education for Sustainable Development Through Geographical Perspectives in Chemistry Teaching,” *Int. J. Sci. Math. Educ.*, 2021, doi: 10.1007/s10763-019-10043-y.

[10] T. Cresswell, “Spatial Science and the Quantitative Revolution,” *Geogr. Thought A Crit. Introd.*, 2013.

CHAPTER 21

A BRIEF OVERVIEW OF THE TRANSPORTATION GEOGRAPHY

Mr. Hemant Ajmera, Assistant Professor,
School of Education, Jaipur National University, Jaipur, India,
Email Id:hemantajmera@jnujaipur.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Transportation geography is a vast subject that covers a wide range of subjects. For example, transportation geography may investigate the relationship between the existence of a railroad in a given location and the proportion of commuters who use rail to go to work in a developed area. The principal means of transportation include air, road, water, and train. Each shape has its own cost related to the speed of travel,' which is influenced by friction, origin, and destination. Ships are often used to transport big volumes of cargo.

KEYWORDS:

European Union, Earth Surface, Geographic Mobility, Labor Mobility, Transportation Geography.

INTRODUCTION

Transportation geography is a field of geography that studies the movement and linkages of people, products, and information on the Earth's surface.Transportation geography detects, defines, and interprets transportation areas on the Earth's surface in terms of location, substance, shape, function, and origin. It also looks at the impacts of transportation on land use, physical material patterns on the earth's surface known as 'cover patterns,' and other spatial processes such as environmental changes. It also helps with transportation, urban, and regional planning.Transportation is critical to the interchange of goods and services. As a result, transportation geography and economic geography are inextricably linked.

Humans move and thus interact with one another by walking at the most basic level, but transportation geography typically studies more complex regional or global transportation systems that include multiple interconnected modes such as public transportation, personal cars, bicycles, freight railroads, the Internet, airplanes, and more. Such systems are becoming more urban in nature. As a result, transportation and urban landscape are inextricably linked. The sorts of interchange and engagement made possible by mobility shape, if not create, cities. Since the nineteenth century, transportation has been seen as a means for cities, nations, or businesses to compete in a variety of areas and circumstances[1]–[3].

Modes of transportation

The principal means of transportation include air, road, water, and train. Each shape has its own cost related to'speed of travel,' which is influenced by friction, origin, and destination. Ships are often used to transport big volumes of cargo. Maritime transportation can transport more goods throughout the globe at a lower cost. Road and air travel are the most popular forms of transportation for consumers who want to decrease journey time while maximizing comfort and convenience. A railroad is often used to deliver products in places where there is no access to water. Railroads may also serve as a mode of transportation for humans.

“Transportation modes are an essential component of transportation systems because they support mobility." Geographers explore a wide variety of modes, which may be classified into three major groups depending on the medium used: land, water, and air. Each mode has its own set of criteria and characteristics, and is tailored to meet the unique needs of freight and passenger traffic. This results in significant variances in how the modes are deployed and utilized in various regions of the globe. Recently, there has been a tendency toward integrating modes via intramodality and tying modes more closely with production and distribution operations. At the same time, passenger and freight activity across most modalities is becoming more divided. Road transportation networks are linked by movements on established roadways, which convey people and products from one location to another using trucks, autos, and so on. Transportation may be further classified based on the vehicle utilized or the reason for which it is employed.

Water transportation is the slowest kind of transportation for goods and people. Strategic chokepoints have continued to play important roles in the marine sector all around the globe. Although it is the slowest mode of transportation when compared to road and rail, it is the most cost efficient.The movement of freight, products, and people on trains as a mode of transportation is known as rail transportation. Rail transit has long been seen as one of the safest ways of transportation. Mobility availability on existing streets, highways, and rail infrastructure no longer meet the mobility needs caused by following population expansion and changing geographical patterns of economic activity in Seattle. Aside from population growth, another issue is the overcrowding of roads and arterial streets. See Congestion in traffic, transportation network, and population density

Poor people's and individuals living in developing countries' well-being might be jeopardized by transportation networks that fail to link them to employment and medical care. Southern California, for example, has transit infrastructures that do not link the homeless to these essentials. Environmental Justice may be found here.Geographic mobility is the movement of people and products through time. A statistic that tracks movement within a population is known as geographic mobility, population mobility, or simply mobility. It is often employed in demography and human geography, but it may also be used to explain animal mobility across populations.

These movements may vary from large-scale worldwide migrations to small-scale regional commuting arrangements. Geographic mobility has a huge influence on many sociological characteristics in a society and is a current academic study topic. It varies among areas based on both formal legislation and existing social norms, and has various consequences and reactions in different civilizations. Population migration has ramifications ranging from administrative changes in government to effects on local economic development, housing markets, and regional service demand.

Census and public government records in the United States, the European Union, China, and many other nations provide national geographic mobility statistics. Tourism statistics and transportation carrier information provide international mobility data. The Global Transnational Mobility Dataset estimates the number of persons traveling from country to country on an annual basis based on these sources.

The United States Census Bureau's Current Population Survey (CPS) mobility estimates define mobility status by comparing everyone’s place of residence at the time of the March survey to the place of residence one year earlier. Non-movers are those who lived in the same home at the conclusion of the migration period and at the start of the migration period. All persons who lived in a different residence at the end of the period rather than the beginning are considered movers. They are further categorised based on whether they lived in the same or a different county, state, area, or were international migrants. Movers are also classified according to whether they relocated inside or between central cities, suburbs, or non-metropolitan regions of the United States.

The CPS offers information on the reasons for relocating. employment-related considerations include a job transfer, job loss or seeking for employment, and a desire to live closer to work. Housing reasons include a desire to buy a house rather than rent, a desire for a nicer home or community, and a desire for less expensive housing. Attending college, changing marital status, retiring, or moving for health reasons are all other mobility considerations.

The Eurobarometer survey examines mobility in the same way as the US census does. Direct comparison is difficult because of the societal limitations of traveling between European Union nations that are not met with interstate travel inside the United States. Language obstacles, cultural reluctance, and international labor rules are among the differences. Several research surveys have been done in China to assess spatial mobility, but there is no single comprehensive census accessible. The National Bureau of Statistics of China has included migrant worker estimates in their annual household survey since 2000.In 2010, the Chinese Development Research Center of the State Council also conducted a study characterizing the scope of migration for work and relevant statistics of that population. Age, education level, job type, income, costs, housing, and leisure activities were all assessed in the poll.

Population turnover is a related statistic that evaluates gross movements in relation to population size, such as residents moving into and out of a geographic place between census counts.Most theoretical models ascribe the motivation to migrate to the influence of wages, salary, and employment on personal projected earnings.The potential of profitable work in another location leads to mobility to capitalize on new possibilities and resources unavailable in the original town. Perceptions, gaps in prospective income, the availability of accurate information, and geographic distance all play a role in the decision to migrate. Studies have shown that unemployment rates statistically correlate to measured migrations in the EU (a relatively mobile society)[4]–[6].

According to surveys, potential movers are also concerned about finding a suitable job in their new location. The ability to migrate is dependent on current income or access to credit to support the move, and is always subject to chance. Economists have shown that the decline in home values in the United States in the late 2000s reduced state-to-state migration, with roughly 110,000 to 150,000 fewer individuals migrating across state lines in any given year.

Current international regulations make perfect geographic mobility difficult. Migrants must have a physical means of transportation (legal or illegal) to travel to a new country. An increase in individual income has been shown to increase access to long distance transportation and enable individuals more freedom of travel. Seeking a job in another country often requires sponsorship, visas, or may not even be possible in a given situation. Existing linguistic and cultural obstacles also substantially impede regional and national geographic mobility.

Personal preference variables, in addition to economic rationale, may have a significant impact on an individual's geographic mobility. Climate, the strength of regional housing markets, cultural comfort, family, and local social capital all factor into the decision to move or not.Individualization of the job market in industrializing countries has led to an increased preference among workers to follow market opportunities. Globalization has destabilized previously unchangeable social structures, moving cultural value away from ancient traditions and toward newer, more individualistic, and market-friendly ideals. This, paired with the privatization and individualization of work, has made fluidity more the rule than structure in many aspects.

The availability of geographic mobility may also have a direct impact on an individual's sense of self-empowerment. Many women in South Korea, Japan, and China are taking advantage of newly available travel opportunities, such as touring or studying abroad. While progressive educational reforms in South Korea have resulted in a large number of women receiving higher level degrees, structural inequality in the job market makes it difficult for them to obtain middle or upper class jobs. 93% of women graduate from high school and 63% from college, but only 46.7% of college graduates are employed.Furthermore, those employed women face a 76% wage differential compared to similarly qualified men. Japan faces similar structural issues, with half of employed women working part-time.

DISCUSSION

Individual geographic movement may also be aided by social influences. Community support may raise the likelihood of relocation—it has been demonstrated that the possibilities of migration in India increases when groups of homes from the same sub-caste all decide to migrate together. Global exposure can also boost one's predisposition to be mobile. Public health studies found that female sex workers who drank, experienced violence, worked for more than four years, and had a regular non-paying partner had higher geographic mobility than those who did not. American World War II veterans who had traveled to distant continents and then returned were more willing to relocate for jobs than the previous generation of Americans.According to research, one's level of education tends to correlate with higher mobility, particularly among university graduates.Youth and a lack of a family or children also correlate with increased mobility, with the peak in mobility occurring in the mid to late 20s for populations surveyed in Europe.

Labor mobility permits the labor supply to adjust to geographical inequalities, hence decreasing economic inefficiencies. Low labor mobility quickly leads to inequality between static economic regions and misallocation of labor resources. Geographic mobility can help alleviate asymmetric shocks between regions with diverse economies, such as the European Union. While more geographic mobility improves overall economic efficiency, increased competition for jobs at the local level in even rich areas may result in higher unemployment than before the migration.Female labor supply rates actually have a larger statistical effect on mobility than male rates. Because male jobs in the developing world have historically had much more inelastic demand than female jobs, variations in the female rate lead to more drastic changes in employment, which have a greater statistical effect on mobility.

Labor mobility, in theory, leads to a more balanced and economically effective overall allocation of employment and resources. Individual workers may better match their abilities to possible employment in the open job market. Instead of arbitrarily limiting themselves to their geographic locations, they can seek for perfect opportunities. For Asian women, the option to study abroad is a significant means of admission into Western nations. Moving to the West to study is a frequent professional path for Asian women in their twenties, enabling them to forego the conventional marriage path and pursue economic enterprises outside the house.On the other side, mobility might have a detrimental impact on an area experiencing substantial emigration. Brain drains and labor resource depletion make it more difficult for struggling areas to recover during an economic downturn. Adding people to a region may also put additional strain on existing social infrastructure for services such as healthcare, welfare, and unemployment. Geographic mobility enables remittances from distant relatives to meet local needs. Loans and transfers can flow back from migrated members of a community to sustain those who remain behind. Remittances are one of the primary benefits of migration to the country of origin, not only significantly increasing local family income but also spilling over into benefits of increased capital flow in the entire local economy.

With increased self-awareness, educated women hope to seize opportunities from moving, leading to increased female individualization and empowerment. Given access to travel, international education provides one of the few avenues for women in China to live non-traditional personally emancipated lives. Women in Japanese culture face enormous societal pressure to marry, yet many young women feel the desire to "escape" and establish their own identities in another context.However, many migrants opt to continue receiving benefits and relying on older family connections. These women cannot deviate too far from societal standards or risk being cut off.Studies suggest that distance from the ancestral home influences family decisions in India, particularly within the caste system.There are also new threats for women in new places. Female sex workers have greater incidence of sexually transmitted illnesses and HIV when they are more mobile. There is also the possibility of male reaction in a new location. Domestic violence may be triggered by power conflicts that occur when newly empowered women retake authority that was previously controlled by males[7]–[9].

Female labor involvement is critical to reducing regional differences in a competitive environment and will grow in value with time. Women's participation and creative energy are critical to the worldwide development of economies. Female work involvement may also serve as an alternative for more widespread labor mobility. With economic swings, women in the European Union offer a dynamic replacement for male work. This provides for more geographic stability while retaining the variety of a flexible labor economy. When families do travel, women are more likely to work initially and become the breadwinner for the family. Even if this just lasts a short time, the experience is powerful and helps change social interactions at home.

However, a migration is often prompted by a lack of better chances in their previous circumstances. Many women face the trial of moving and starting over due to economic and social circumstances beyond their control. Research also appears to indicate that women and minorities migrating into a new area frequently act as economic substitutes for local minorities rather than paving their own new ground. Women have historically had less access to better modes of personal transportation, resulting in less local mobility. In England, women were less likely than males to hold drivers licenses and took longer to travel to crucial places. When compared to males, women often choose employment closer to home, selecting occupations in a more geographically constrained region and depending more on non-automobile transportation. Access to personal transportation may enhance women's choice of possible locations and lower average journey time.

Increased geographic mobility may provide formerly isolated populations with new options. In India, increasing mobility gives families the opportunity to strengthen family ties by sending children to traditional homes or to expand educational opportunities by sending children to urban schools. Additional economic freedom, bolstered by additional capital from remittances, can allow children to stay in school longer without worrying about supporting the core family.Increased geographic mobility and long-distance moves put strains on the household and family.The loss of established strong ties reduces social support and can lower productivity, particularly among adolescents. Geographic isolation from previous relationships increases personal reliance on the nuclear family unit and can lead to power imbalances within the household. Migration for work allows migrants to develop new skills and receive new technical training abroad. Migrants in Australia and the United States have lower rates of continuous training than their native-born peers overall, but are more likely to continue gaining technical skills after establishing an initial technical aptitude. The attractiveness of new educational options to migrants diminishes with age; older movers find less reason to invest time in improving their present abilities. Increased global mobility has contributed to the destabilization of the prospects of young people seeking stable employment, as well as a greater assumption of risk on their part. Coping strategies push them to postpone long-term commitments, reducing family formation and birth rates. Because salaries cannot be depended on in the long run, labor market instability raises the risks of settling down. Women in the workplace have additional disincentives to having children since they are more readily replaceable if they are forced to quit their job temporarily[10].

Travel and collaboration bring people together across cultural differences and enable the interchange of cultures and ideas. New community members bring unique talents and skills that can improve overall services and bring additional opportunity to an area. Additional population "churn" can also increase diversity and lower tensions that would otherwise arise with large concentrations of particular demographic groups However, accelerated cultural exchange can dilute existing customs and cause social friction between competing immigrant populations.

Long-distance connections take longer to visit and reduce the frequency of spontaneous social contact. Increased mobility might reduce a person's commitment to a community and diminish local support networks. They often use information technology to retain connections over long distances, boosting long-distance relationships and enabling them to pursue job prospects while being geographically separated from a spouse.

CONCLUSION

Transportation geography is the discipline of geography that studies spatial interactions of people, freight, and information.Transportation geography is an interdisciplinary subject that combines geography, urban planning, transportation engineering, economics, environmental science, and sociology. It contributes to a better understanding of how transportation networks impact the spatial structure of society, economies, and the environment, as well as how they may be controlled to ensure sustainable and efficient mobility.

REFERENCES

[1] F. Jin *et al.*, "Progress of research on transportation geography in China," *J. Geogr. Sci.*, 2016, doi: 10.1007/s11442-016-1316-x.

[2] K. Attoh, "Imagining a 'cultural turn' in transportation geography," *J. Cult. Geogr.*, 2014, doi: 10.1080/08873631.2014.906847.

[3] V. N. Bugromenko, "Modern transportation geography and transportation accessibility," *Reg. Res. Russ.*, 2011, doi: 10.1134/S2079970511010047.

[4] E. J. Taaffe and H. L. Gauthier, "Transportation geography and geographic thought in the United States: an overview," *J. Transp. Geogr.*, 1994, doi: 10.1016/0966-6923(94)90001-9.

[5] G. Giuliano, S. Chakrabarti, and M. Rhoads, "Transportation Geography," in *International Encyclopedia of the Social & Behavioral Sciences: Second Edition*, 2015. doi: 10.1016/B978-0-08-097086-8.72071-X.

[6] G. Giuliano, S. Chakrabarti, and M. Rhoads, "Transportation Geography Understanding Flows," *Int. Encycl. Soc. Behav. Sci.*, 2015.

[7] K. M. Lho, "The influence of railway formation and development on land spatial structure in Northeast China(1898-1945)-Comparing the colonial transportation geography model and the railway transportation system of chinese eastern railway southern line-," *J. Archit. Inst. Korea*, 2021, doi: 10.5659/JAIK.2021.37.1.95.

[8] W. Li, "Research on the application of 'O2O' teaching mode based on mobile communication platform in the course of air transportation geography," in *IOP Conference Series: Materials Science and Engineering*, 2020. doi: 10.1088/1757-899X/750/1/012009.

[9] G. Brancaccio, M. Kalouptsidi, and T. Papageorgiou, "Geography, Transportation, and Endogenous Trade Costs," *Econometrica*, 2020, doi: 10.3982/ecta15455.

[10] S. Hanson, "Off the road? Reflections on transportation geography in the information age," *J. Transp. Geogr.*, 1998, doi: 10.1016/S0966-6923(98)00023-4.

CHAPTER 22

INTERNATIONAL TRADE USED FOR THE EXCHANGE OF CAPITAL, PRODUCTS AND SERVICES

Prof. Rita Arora, Director,
School of Education, Jaipur National University, Jaipur, India,
Email Id:ritaarora@jnujaipur.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

The exchange of goods and services from one country to another is referred to as international trade. Cost differences are the foundation of commerce. Cost differences may be of two kinds: absolute cost differences and comparative cost differences.It is the exchange of products and services between nations. International commerce is fueled by differences in factor endowments, resources, desires, technical breakthroughs, labor, and entrepreneurial abilities.The balance of trade of a country is defined by its net exports (exports minus imports) and is consequently impacted by all variables affecting international commerce. Factor endowments and productivity, trade policy, exchange rates, foreign currency reserves, inflation, and demand are all examples.

KEYWORDS:

Exchange Capital, Food Production, Foreign Commerce, International Trade, Products Service.

INTRODUCTION

International commerce is defined as the exchange of capital, products, and services across international boundaries or territories when goods or services are required or desired. In most nations, such commerce accounts for a sizable portion of gross domestic product (GDP). While international commerce has existed throughout history (for example, the Uttarapatha, Silk Road, Amber Road, the rush for Africa, the Atlantic slave trade, and salt highways), its economic, social, and political significance has grown in recent decades.

When compared to domestic commerce, foreign trade is a more complicated process. Currency, government policies, the economy, the legal system, laws, and markets all have an impact on commerce between two or more states.Some international economic organizations, such as the World commerce Organization, were founded in the modern age to facilitate and legitimize the process of commerce between nations of varying economic status. These organizations strive to facilitate and expand international commerce. Intergovernmental and supranational statistical services, as well as state statistical agencies, produce official data on international commerce.

Global trade characteristics

A product transported or sold from one nation to another is an export from the originating country and an import into the country receiving the goods. In the balance of payments, imports and exports are accounted for in a country's current account.Trading on a global scale may expose consumers and nations to new markets and goods. The worldwide market contains almost every kind of goods, including food, clothing, spare parts, oil, jewelry, wine, stocks, currencies, and water. Services, such as tourism, banking, consultancy, and transportation, are also exchanged.The old Silk Road trading networks that stretched throughout Eurasia. Globalization, industrialization, outsourcing, and multinational firms have all had a significant influence on international trade systems[1]–[3].

Ports are critical in promoting international commerce. The Port of New York and New Jersey evolved from the original port at the confluence of the Hudson and East rivers in Upper New York Bay.International commerce is not fundamentally different from domestic trade in that the motive and conduct of the parties engaged in a transaction do not alter fundamentally whether the trade occurs across a border or not.However, conducting foreign commerce is often a more involved procedure than doing local trade. The fundamental distinction is that foreign commerce is usually more expensive than local trade. This is because cross-border commerce often incurs extra expenses such as explicit tariffs as well as non-tariff obstacles such as time costs (due to border delays), linguistic and cultural differences, product safety, the legal system, and so on.

Another distinction between domestic and international commerce is that production inputs such as capital and labor are often more movable inside a country than across borders. As a result, international commerce is primarily limited to trade in products and services, with only a little amount of exchange in capital, labor, or other inputs of production. Trade in commodities and services may be used to replace trade in factors of production. Instead of importing a component of production, a nation might import commodities that utilise that element of production extensively and so embody it. One example is the United States' import of labor-intensive commodities from China. Instead of importing Chinese labor, the United States purchases commodities manufactured in China. According to one 2010 analysis, when a country hosts a network of immigrants, international commerce increases, but the trade impact diminishes as the immigrants get absorbed into their new country.

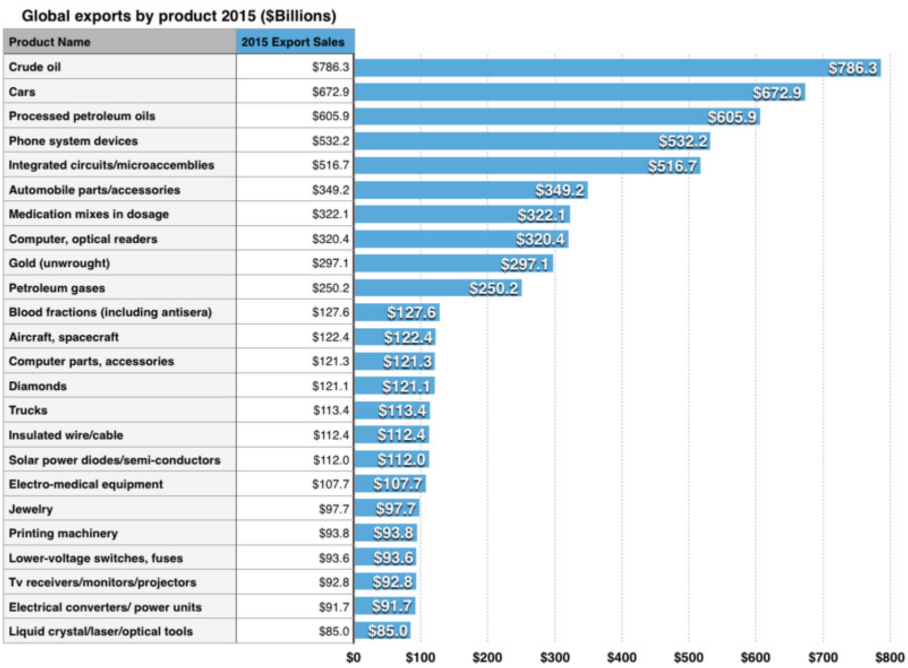

Figure 1: Global trade: Diagram showing the overview of the global export product by 2015 (Wikipedia)

Food production trade-offs in the form of local food vs distant food production are contentious, with few research comparing environmental effect and experts warning that locally unique environmental implications should be addressed. The effects of local food on greenhouse gas emissions may differ depending on the origin and target location of production. According to the IPCC's 2021 climate change report, that in international commerce net Between 2006 and 2016, carbon emissions fell. According to a 2020 research, "current production and consumption patterns" and the locations of food production at the time of the study for 72-89% of the world population in 100-km radiuses as of early 2020 cannot supply the demand for most food crops. According to studies, food miles are a tiny contributor to carbon emissions; nevertheless, increasing food localization may allow other, more important environmental advantages such as recycling of energy, water, and nutrients. For some goods, geographical variances in harvest seasons may make importing from distant locations more ecologically benign than greater local production and storage or local production in greenhouses.

Qualitative differences between substitutive products from different production regions may exist as a result of different legal requirements and quality standards, or different levels of controllability by local production- and governance-systems, which may have security implications beyond resource security, environmental protection, product quality, product design, and health. The process of changing supply and labor rights may also vary. In several circumstances, local manufacturing has been shown to enhance local employment. According to a 2018 research, foreign commerce may boost local jobs. According to a 2016 research, increased import exposure harmed local employment and overall labor income in both manufacturing and nonmanufacturing.Local manufacturing in high-income nations, rather than remote places, may need greater worker pay. Higher salaries promote automation, which may enable society and its economic systems to reallocate or transform the time of automated employees into leisure-like time.

Local manufacturing may need knowledge and technology transfer, and it may initially be unable to compete in efficiency with specialized, established industries and firms, or in customer demand, in the absence of regulatory measures such as eco-tariffs. Due to regional variations, particular places may be better favorable for a specific production, enhancing the benefits of specialized trade over specific local manufacturing. In terms of efficiency, including environmental effect, highly localized forms of local goods may fall short of the efficiency of more large-scale, highly centralized manufacturing[4]–[6].

A systematic, and possibly the first large-scale, cross-sectoral analysis of water, energy, and land security in 189 countries that links total and sectoral consumption to sources revealed that countries and sectors are highly vulnerable to over-exploited, insecure, and degraded such resources, with economic globalization reducing the security of global supply chains (Figure.1). According to the 2020 research, most nations are more exposed to resource risks via international commerce, mostly from distant production sources, and diversifying trading partners is unlikely to assist countries and sectors mitigate these risks or increase resource self-sufficiency

A lot of individuals in Africa, including children, were producing gold in an informal or "artisanal" manner. While millions of people make a living from small-scale mining, governments in Ghana, Tanzania, and Zambia are concerned about an increase in unlawful production and gold smuggling. At times, the method included illegal actions as well as human and environmental costs. According to investigative investigations based on African export statistics, substantial amounts of gold are smuggled out of the nation through the United Arab Emirates, with no taxes paid to the producing countries. The analysis also revealed disparities between the quantity exported from Africa and the overall amount imported into the UAE.

According to a Swissaid investigation published in July 2020, Dubai-based precious metal refining companies such as Kaloti Jewellery International Group and Trust One Financial Services (T1FS) obtained most of its gold from impoverished African countries such as Sudan. Sudan's gold mines were seldom controlled by militias implicated in war crimes and human rights violations. The Swissaid research also said that the unlawful gold entering Dubai from Africa is imported in significant amounts by Valcambi, the world's biggest refinery in Switzerland. Another investigation, released in March 2021, indicated a conflict between West African nations' wealthy gold trade and criminal deals. Mali's gold output and trade with Dubai, UAE differed from Sudan, the Democratic Republic of the Congo (DRC), Ghana, and other nations. Mali, Africa's third biggest gold exporter, levied taxes solely on the first 50kg of gold shipments every month, allowing some small-scale miners to enjoy tax breaks and smuggle gold worth millions. Mali produced 45.8 tonnes of gold in 2014, whereas the UAE imported 59.9 tonnes of gold.

DISCUSSION

International commerce was critical to the global economy's growth. Global events both influence and are influenced by supply and demand, and consequently prices, in the global economy. Political upheaval in Asia, for example, might lead to a rise in labor costs. This might raise the production expenses for an American shoe firm operating in Malaysia, resulting in a price rise for a pair of sneakers purchased by an American customer at their local mall. An export is a product that is sold to the worldwide market, whereas an import is a product that is purchased from the global market. The current account part of a country's balance of payments accounts for imports and exports.

Global commerce enables wealthier nations to make better use of their resources, such as labor, technology, and money. Distinct nations have distinct assets and natural resources, such as land, labor, money, technology, and so on. This enables certain nations to manufacture the same commodity more efficiently; that is, faster and at a cheaper cost. As a result, they may be able to offer it at a lower price than other nations. If a nation cannot manufacture an item effectively, it may get it by trading with another country that can. In international commerce, this is known as specialization.

For example, England and Portugal have traditionally been used to demonstrate how two nations may mutually gain by specializing and trading according to their individual comparative advantages, dating back to Adam Smith's The Wealth of Nations.1 In such cases, Portugal is considered to have many vineyards and can produce wine at a low cost, but England can produce fabric more cheaply due to its abundant sheep pastures.

According to the idea of comparative advantage, each nation would ultimately understand these realities and abandon efforts to produce the more expensive product domestically in favor of participating in trade. Indeed, England would most likely cease producing wine and Portugal would stop making fabric over time. Both nations would understand that it was in their best interests to refocus their efforts into producing what they were comparatively better at at home and instead trade with each other in order to obtain the other. These two nations recognized that they might increase output by concentrating on items in which they had a competitive advantage. In such a circumstance, the Portuguese would produce just wine, while the English would create only cotton.

Each nation may now produce 20 units of specialized production each year and trade equal parts of both items. As a result, each nation now has cheaper access to both items. We can see that the potential cost of manufacturing two items is larger than the expense of specializing in both nations. Absolute advantage may be contrasted with comparative advantage. Only when each producer has an absolute advantage in producing a product does absolute advantage lead to unambiguous profits from specialization and commerce.

If a producer did not have an absolute edge, they would never export anything. However, we can see that nations who do not have a clear absolute advantage benefit from trade since they have a comparative advantage. According to international trade theory, a country may profit from specialization even if it has an absolute advantage over another. China's comparative advantage over the United States in the form of cheap labor is a more recent example of comparative advantage. Simple consumer items are produced by Chinese employees at a substantially lower opportunity cost. The United States has a competitive edge in specialized, capital-intensive labor. American employees provide sophisticated items or chances for investment at reduced opportunity costs. Each nation benefits from specialization and trade along these lines[7]–[9]. The principle of comparative advantage helps to explain why protectionism has historically failed. If a country withdraws from an international trade agreement or imposes tariffs, it may result in an immediate local advantage in the form of additional employment; nevertheless, this is seldom a long-term solution to a trade crisis. Eventually, the nation will find itself at a disadvantage in comparison to its neighbors, who are already better equipped to create these things at a lower opportunity cost.

Why isn't there free trade between nations throughout the world? Why do certain nations stay impoverished at the cost of others when there is free trade? There are several reasons for this, but the most powerful is what economist term has rent seeking. Rent seeking happens when a single group organizes and lobby’s the government to defend its own interests. For example, suppose American shoe manufacturers understand and agree with the free-trade concept but are also aware that cheaper imported shoes will harm their limited interests. Even if employees would be more productive moving from shoemaking to computer making, no one in the shoe business wants to lose their jobs or see revenues fall in the near run. This ambition may cause shoemakers to campaign for special tax exemptions or more levies (or even outright bans) on imported footwear. Appeals to defend American employment and a time-honored American craft abound, despite the fact that, in the long term, such protectionist policies would make American employees less productive and American customers poorer.

International commerce not only increases efficiency, but it also enables nations to engage in a global economy, which encourages foreign direct investment (FDI). In principle, economies may therefore expand more efficiently and more quickly become competitive economic actors. For the recipient government, FDI is a method of bringing in foreign funds and experience. It increases employment and, in theory, leads to an increase in the gross domestic product (GDP). For the investor, FDI implies increased income from corporate development and growth.

The free trade theory is the easier of the two. This philosophy is also known as laissez-faire economics. There are no trade constraints under a laissez-faire attitude. The basic concept is that global supply and demand variables will guarantee that manufacturing occurs effectively. As a result, nothing has to be done to safeguard or encourage commerce and development since market forces will do it on their own. Protectionism believes that international trade regulation is necessary to guarantee that markets run correctly. Adherents of this theory think that market inefficiencies may undermine the advantages of international commerce, and they seek to direct the market appropriately. Tariffs, subsidies, and quotas are three of the most prevalent kinds of protectionism. These techniques seek to remedy any inefficiencies in the global market. Because international commerce allows for specialization and hence more effective resource usage, it has the potential to increase a country's ability to create and acquire products. However, opponents of global free trade have claimed that international commerce still allows for inefficiencies that put poor countries at risk. What is known is that the global economy is constantly changing. As a result, as it evolves, so must its players[10].

For a firm, the advantages of international commerce include a wider potential client base, which means higher earnings and revenues, maybe less rivalry in a foreign market that has not yet been tapped, diversification, and potential benefits from foreign currency rates. International trade is caused by disparities in some sectors of each country. Differences in technology, education, demand, government regulations, labor laws, natural resources, wages, and financing options often stimulate international commerce.

International trade barriers are measures put in place by countries to hinder international commerce and safeguard home markets. Subsidies, taxes, quotas, import and export permits, and standardization are examples. Globalization has made the world economy increasingly linked, and international commerce is an important aspect of most economies. It gives customers more alternatives and fosters competition, forcing firms to develop more cost-effective and high-quality items, which benefits these consumers.Nations profit from international commerce as well, concentrating on manufacturing items in which they have a competitive advantage. Though some governments use tariffs and quotas to safeguard home industries, international trade has been proved to benefit economies as a whole.

CONCLUSION

International commerce refers to economic exchanges between nations. Consumer products, such as television sets and apparel, are often exchanged, as are capital goods, such as equipment, and raw resources and food.Tariffs, quotas, and other non-tariff barriers are the three primary forms of international trade obstacles to be aware of.Tariffs raise the cost of imported products. As a consequence, domestic manufacturers are not pushed to lower their prices as a result of increasing competition, and domestic consumers pay higher prices as a result.Approximately 1500. Vasco da Gama, the first European to sail to India, arrived at Calicut (modern-day Kozhikode in Kerala) in 1498. The enormous profit gained during this journey piqued the Portuguese interest in greater trading with India and drew other European navigators and traders.

REFERENCES

[1] P. Laosutsan, G. P. Shivakoti, and P. Soni, "Comparative advantage and export potential of Thai vegetable products following the integration into the ASEAN Economic Community," *Int. Food Agribus. Manag. Rev.*, 2017, doi: 10.22434/IFAMR2016.0029.

[2] M. Tripoli and J. Schmidhuber, "Emerging Opportunities for the Application of Blockchain in the Agri-food Industry Agriculture," *Food Agric. Organ. United Nations*, 2018.

[3] G. G. G. P. Damayanthi, M.G.S. and Sandamali, "The Relationship between Economic Growth and International Trade in Sri Lanka□ : A Review," *Econ. J.*, 2016.

[4] A. R. Oladele, "Foreign Exchange Market and the Nigerian Economy," *core.ac.uk*, 2015.

[5] K. L. Edgeweblime, "The Mechanism of the Links between Growth and Volatility," *J. Econ. Manag. Trade*, 2019, doi: 10.9734/jemt/2019/v22i530102.

[6] D. C. Kotlewski and A. Dudzińska-Jarmolińska, "Artificial islands as a manifestation of glocalisation," *Kwart. Nauk o Przedsiębiorstwie*, 2017, doi: 10.5604/01.3001.0010.0146.

[7] J. Doukas and S. Lifland, "Exchange Rates and the Role of the Trade Balance Account," *Manag. Financ.*, 1994, doi: 10.1108/eb018476.

[8] T. M. Karimo, W. S. Krokeyi, and S. Z. Ekainsai, "Factors Influencing Nigeria ' s Trade," *Dev. Ctry. Stud.*, 2016.

[9] D. B. Humphrey, R. H. Keppler, and F. Montes-Negret, "Cost Recovery and Pricing of Payment Services," *Policy Res. Work. Pap. World Bank Wps*, 1997.

[10] P. R. Newswire, "World 3D Printing Market," *UK-Reportbuyer*, 2014.

CHAPTER 23

IMPORTANCE OF THE URBAN GEOGRAPHY

Mr. Hemant Ajmera, Assistant Professor,
School of Education, Jaipur National University, Jaipur, India,
Email Id:hemnatajmera@jnujaipur.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

The study of cities is known as urban geography. Geographers investigate the variables that influence the location and size of cities, as well as the complex processes that define the structure of specific urban regions. Urban geography may help us comprehend, evaluate, and interpret the landscapes and communities of cities and metropolitan regions all over the globe. Indeed, urban geography is perhaps one of the most significant subdisciplines of geography, particularly human geography.

KEYWORDS:

City System, Development Urban, Green Infrastructure, Negative Environment, Urban Planning.

INTRODUCTION

Urban geography is a sub-discipline of geography that studies cities and urban dynamics. Urban geographers and urbanists study many elements of city life and the built environment. Scholars, activists, and the general public have participated in, studied, and critiqued flows of economic and natural resources, human and non-human bodies, development and infrastructure patterns, political and institutional activities, governance, decay and renewal, and notions of socio-spatial inclusions, exclusions, and everyday life. Other disciplines of geography that are included in urban geography include the physical, social, and economic elements of urban geography.

The physical geography of urban settings is critical for understanding why a town is established in a given region and how environmental circumstances influence whether or not the city grows effectively. Social geography investigates socioeconomic and cultural values, diversity, and other urban-related issues. Economic geography is necessary to investigate the economic and employment movement within the metropolitan population. These numerous components of urban geography are required to better comprehend the layout and planning involved in the development of urban settings across the globe[1]–[3].

The EPA's "Soak Up the Rain with Green Infrastructure" poster displays different green infrastructure that may be beneficial in flood prevention.A place's development pattern, such as a city or neighborhood, deals with how buildings and human activities are ordered and structured on the terrain. Hard infrastructure, such as roads and bridges, and soft infrastructure, such as health and social services, comprise urban settings. Urban planning and architecture aid in the building of urban environments. Many cities have adopted green infrastructure such as community gardens and parks, sewage and waste systems, and the use of solar energy to mitigate the negative environmental consequences of urban expansion. Green infrastructure has been demonstrated to not only enhance air quality but also increase mental well-being.Based on World Bank statistics from 2013, this map depicts global energy usage per capita.

Because of globalization and urbanization, the development of urban settings has accelerated throughout time. According to the UN, the world's urban population is expected to rise from 55% to 68% by 2050.This growth in urban development leads to an increase in economic flow and natural resource usage. As the urban population grows, so does the usage of direct energy and transportation energy, and this trend is expected to continue.According to a research done by Creutzig et al.current energy consumption is expected to rise from 240 EJ in 2005 to 730 EJ in 2050 if global urbanization continues. As more individuals relocate to cities in pursuit of jobs, business follows behind. As a result, communities will need additional infrastructure such as schools, hospitals, and other public services. The construction of such soft infrastructure may have a favorable influence on inhabitants. Soft infrastructure, for example, may encourage economic development by enabling inhabitants to specialize in various areas of expertise. Diversification of occupations among the urban population may boost economic flow within the city.

Human Interactions in Urban Settings

Soft infrastructure development in metropolitan areas provides individuals with means to connect with one another as a community as well as seek support services. Community infrastructure encompasses locations and services that enable humans to engage with one another. Health services, educational institutions, outreach centers, and community organizations may all help to encourage such contacts. Interactions between humans and their urban settings may have both beneficial and harmful consequences. Humans rely on their environment for critical resources such as clean air, food, and shelter. This inherent environmental reliance may lead to over-exploitation of natural resources as the demand for them grows. Humans may also change their surroundings to achieve their objectives. Humans, for example, may remove land or farmland in order to create urbanized structures such as commercial skyscrapers and public housing. Clearing land to make room for development may have severe environmental consequences such as deforestation, reduced air quality, and wildlife relocation.

The Flow of Social and Political Information Within Urban Environments

As city populations expanded throughout time, the necessity for new kinds of municipal governance arose. Politicians are elected to solve environmental and sociological challenges among the population in order to preserve order in growing cities. For example, the effect of local and state political dynamics has a significant impact on how climate change and housing concerns are addressed.The notion of urbanization affects the atmosphere of urban regions. The move from rural town-structured communities to urban city-structured communities is known as urbanization. This change is caused by people being drawn to cities for employment and even assistance. Environmental deterioration will be an issue in cities. As the world's population grows, so will the quality and availability of water. The increased usage of energy due to urbanization may cause air pollution and have an influence on human health. Another environmental threat caused by urban growth is flash floods. The idea of urbanization is essential in the study of urban geography since it entails the construction of urban facilities such as sanitation, sewage systems, and electricity and gas distribution.

Impact on Society

The need for work, education, and social welfare drives people to migrate from rural to urban regions. There are urbanization tendencies that are impacted by push and pull influences. One of the push reasons is the rising expansion of rural regions, which drives many people to move to cities in pursuit of better job prospects, a better quality of life, and a higher standard of living. People are driven to leave their rural areas and relocate to cities due to a variety of circumstances including poor agricultural output, poverty, and food insecurity. There are also pull forces, which "pull" people to cities for better chances, higher education, adequate public health facilities, and entertainment that provides job prospects. Gentrification of urban regions increases economic disparities, racial inequality, and displacement within metropolitan areas. The negative environmental consequences of urbanization disproportionately affect minority and low-income populations more than higher-income ones.

Climate Change

Because of the high energy consumption in densely populated cities, the rising need for new construction infrastructure has resulted in a rise in air pollution. Increased energy consumption causes an increase in heat emissions, which causes global warming. Cities are a significant contributor to climate change because urban activities are a major source of greenhouse gas emissions. It is estimated that cities account for approximately 75% of global carbon dioxide emissions, with transportation and buildings being the largest contributors. To combat the negative environmental impacts of urbanization, many modern cities develop environmentally conscious infrastructure. For example, the development of public transportation systems such as rail and bus networks helps to reduce the usage of automobiles inside cities. Solar energy is also used in many business and residential structures, which helps to reduce dependency on nonrenewable energy sources.

Impact of Biodiversity

The effect of urbanization on biodiversity is significant. As cities grow, essential ecosystems are destroyed or split into pieces, leaving them too small to sustain complex biological populations. Species may become endangered or locally extinct in cities. Human population growth is the primary driver of urbanization. As cities expand due to increased human population and migration, deforestation, habitat loss, and freshwater extraction from the environment may reduce biodiversity and change species ranges and interactions. Other cause-and-effect linkages between urban geography and ecosystems include habitat loss, which reduces species populations, ranges, and inter-organism interaction, life cycles, and characteristics, which may help species survive and reproduce in disturbed environments. Paving ground with concrete may increase water flow, cause erosion, and reduce soil quality[4]–[6].

Research interests

Urban geographers are particularly interested in how cities and towns are built, controlled, and experienced. Along with surrounding fields such as urban anthropology, urban planning, and urban sociology, urban geography primarily explores the influence of urban activities on the social and physical structures of the earth's surface. Human geography and physical geography may both benefit from urban geographical studies. Geographical distribution and the intricate patterns of movement, fluxes, and links that bind them in space. Urban structure (also known as "cities as systems") is the study of distribution and interaction patterns within cities from quantitative, qualitative, structural, and behavioral viewpoints.

Cities vary in their economic composition, social and demographic traits, and functions within the city system. These differences can be traced back to regional variations in the local resources on which growth was based during the early development of the urban pattern, as well as subsequent shifts in regional competitive advantage caused by changing locational forces affecting regional specialization within the framework of a market economy. Recognizing distinct city types is crucial for city categorization in urban geography. The focus for such categorization is on functional town classification and the essential underlying aspects of the city system.

The classification of cities serves two purposes. On the one hand, it is attempted to look for hypotheses in reality. In this context, distinguishing distinct kinds of cities based on, say, functional specialization may allow for the detection of spatial regularities in the distribution and structure of urban functions, as well as the formation of hypotheses regarding the resultant patterns. Classification, on the other hand, is used to organize reality in order to evaluate previously defined theories. To test the hypothesis that cities with varied economies expand faster than cities with more specialized economies, cities must first be categorized such that diversified and specialized cities can be distinguished. The most basic approach to categorize cities is to determine the unique function they perform in the city system. Three separate roles existprominent locations that serve largely as service hubs for the local hinterlands. Transportation cities that provide break-of-bulk and related services to bigger areas. Towns with specific functions, such as mining, industry, or entertainment, that serve national and international markets.

The makeup of a city's labor force has long been seen as the greatest predictor of functional specialization, and distinct city types have most commonly been found using employment profile research. When employment in a specific activity hits a certain threshold, it is considered to be specialized.The link between the city system and the growth of industry has become quite clear. The rapid growth and spread of cities within the heartland-hinterland framework after 1870 was largely conditioned by industrial developments, and the recent decentralization of population within the urban system is related in large part to the movement of manufacturing employment away from traditional industrial centers. Manufacturing can be present in almost every city, but its significance is evaluated by the share of total wages earned by city inhabitants. When manufacturing accounts for 25% or more of overall profits in an urban area, the location is arbitrarily defined as a manufacturing center.

Manufacturing site is influenced by a variety of economic and non-economic variables, including the type of the material inputs, the factors of production, the market, and transportation costs. Other significant factors are agglomeration and foreign economies, government policy, and personal preferences. Although it is difficult to quantify the impact of the market on the location of industrial activity, two factors must be consideredthe nature of the product and its demand. transportation expenses.

Urban geography emerged as a critical sub-discipline with the 1973 publication of David Harvey's Social Justice and the City, which was heavily influenced by previous work by Anne Buttimer. Prior to its emergence as its own discipline, urban geography served as the academic extension of what was otherwise a professional development and planning practice.Marcel

Aurousseau remarked in a 1924 study of urban geography that urban geography cannot be regarded a subset of geography since it plays such an essential role. However, following World War II, with more urban planning and a move away from the importance of physical topography in the study of geography, urban geography emerged as a specialized field. Its early proponents were Chauncy Harris and Edward Ullman.By the 1930s, urban geography had emerged in the Soviet Union as an academic supplement to active urbanization and communist urban planning, focused on the economic functions and possibilities of cities.Spatial analysis, behavioral analysis, Marxism, humanism, social theory, feminism, and postmodernism have emerged as overlapping perspectives utilized in the study of urban geography in the West (roughly in this sequence).Geographic information science, which employs the computerized processing of enormous data sets, has grown in popularity since the 1980s, with substantial applications in urban geography[7]–[9].

DISCUSSION

The study of urban areas in relation to their geographical surroundings is known as urban geography. The topic matter broadly speaking encompasses the origins of towns, their growth and development, and their roles in and around their surroundings.After World War II, urban geography increasingly gained a particular position among the numerous areas of geography at various foreign and Indian institutions and colleges. With worldwide population growth, towns and cities have become economic, social, and political magnets.

In the instance of a single phenomenon, namely, the city in a spatial setting, the changes brought about by these processes have become informative as well as entertaining. Under these conditions, the study of towns and cities has become an integral component of the subject of Human Geography. One of the most pressing and urgent issues is determining 'what is urban?' How does it vary from its rural counterpart? We are all aware that the distinction between rural and urban life is based on the nature of their job, with the former engaged in agricultural operations and the latter in non-agricultural activities.

However, it is difficult to translate the above-mentioned connotation between the two types of settlements into exact and academic terminology. This is due to the fact that various researchers and authorities have defined 'an urban location' differently. Even the United Nations Demographic Year Book (UN, 1990) included a diverse selection of samples spanning the different nations' demographic definitions. However, the United Nations Demographic Year Book states that "there is no point in the continuum from large agglomerations to small clusters or scattered dwellings where urbanity disappears and rurality begins; the division between urban and rural populations is necessarily arbitrary." An analysis of the difficulties of rural and urban centers as indicated by many nations' Census Reports finds a few basis for classifying a location as urban.

Before embracing the definitions of urban and rural, two key facts must be remembered. One is that it is increasingly difficult to distinguish between rural and urban areas, with the two merging to form a type of diffusion and portray a landscape that is neither totally agricultural nor entirely involved in tertiary industries. Industrialization has resulted in the formation of a huge number of communities that are not necessarily villages, but rather nucleated settlements of agricultural inhabitants. Another issue is the definition of what constitutes urbanity, which is fluid and liable to change through time and geography.

The most useful indicator is the percentage of the population engaged in agricultural activities. However, contemporary agricultural capitalization and rural depopulation due to commuting urban labor have rendered the percentage criteria obsolete. To summarize the issue, the changing character of both rurality and urbanity has resulted in functional overlap between the two. As a result, the boundary between urban and rural has lost importance in practice.

The study of urban centers in the context of geographical elements is known as urban geography. The elements work geographically to explain processes that are economic, socio-cultural, and political. However, the topic of urban geography is restricted in that it deals with these processes in connection to just one phenomena, namely, town or city. The subject-matter includes some of the fundamental ideas upon which a town is built. In most cases, it begins with an examination of the genesis of an urban site. The origins of a town are generally linked to its history. Who is responsible for its genesis? What causes a town to take root where it does, and why is it there? The town site or the land on which it is built has certain unique and geographical characteristics. These need explanation in order to reveal a town's individuality[10].

According to Raymond E. Murphy, the dual role of an urban geographer is to (i) analyze cities as entities in terms of locations, characters, growth, and relationships to the surrounding countryside, and (ii) discuss patterns of the city's interior - land use, social and cultural patterns, patterns of circulation, and, most importantly, natural patterns of environment - all as they exist in interrelation and interaction in the urban area. According to Harold Carter, "the populations and buildings agglomerated together to make up towns constitute the special interest of the urban geographer" since the geographer is concerned with the study of the varied nature of the earth's surface. Because a significant portion of the world's population lives in cities and the challenges of the urban environment are vital, the study of urban geography is critical, and its significance to applied geography cannot be overstated.

Cities and towns have a significant effect on human life and activities. Over the previous two to three decades, the overall growth rate of city population has been quicker. Only after WWII did the discipline of urban geography get proper respect in Indian and international colleges. Prior to that time, it was taught as a topic in human geography, with the scope limited to the description of town site-situations, including their depiction as a component of settlements. Since the release of Doxiadis' seminal book, urban geography has made significant progress both in and outside of India. Brian J.L. Berry promoted urban studies by introducing urban systems as a result of economic growth. Under the current conditions, the scope of urban studies has expanded beyond its site-situation structural approach.

The ICSSR Report of the Fourth Survey of Research in Geography, covering the years 1976-1982 in India, highlighted numerous issues of urban phenomena, highlighting the subject's breadth. These include urbanization trends and patterns, rural-urban migration, urban systems and hierarchical orders, morphology, economic base, land use, functional housing classification, slums and squatter settlements, rural-urban fringe, surrounding areas of influence, umland, and interaction between a city and surrounding settlements, urban environment, pollution, poverty, crime and quality of life, urban services and amenities, urban politics and administration, and tourism.

According to N. Baransky, the pioneer of Soviet economic geography, the study of cities has a broad reach in the sense that it is currently the topic of historians, geographers, statisticians, economists, and sociologists. Similarly, planners and plan designers, as well as architects, finance professionals, and representatives from a variety of particular professions, engage with cities in their own unique ways. He also believes that city studies may differ in terms of spatial extent, and that they can be examined in a global context, a national context, or a specific area. Comparative studies of cities in a certain category might be conducted.

Finally, one might do a geographical study of a specific city that will be the topic of a monograph. Baransky emphasizes that, from an economic-geographic standpoint, a city and its road network form the skeleton upon which everything else hangs, defining and endowing the relevant terrain with a distinctive structure. In terms of planning, Baransky believes that cities may be understood as applied urban micro-geography. Taylor's various classes and types of cities are the result of their natural surroundings, such as hills; cuestas; mountain-corridors; passes; plateaux; eroded domes; ports, including fiords, rias, river-estuaries, and roadsteads; rivers, falls, meanders, terraces, deltas, fans, valleys, islands; lakes, and so on. All of these are essentially 'controlled' by site topography. Dickinson's perspective on cities is one of natural beginnings. However, as time passes, the natural environment of the town changes due to its use of available resources and adaptation to the locale and surrounding region. Its development and extension may occasionally dilute a natural place to the point of becoming unrecognizable. There was limited room for the creation of a meaningful urban geography in this situation.

The goal was narrow, and it was difficult to describe a complicated economic function and social structure. Crowe, writing on technique, described the portrayal of towns as "indicative of geographers' inability to penetrate beyond the superficial." He went on to say that using the'site and circumstance' formula was pointless "where site had nothing but historical interest and situation was viewed in terms of routes rather than currents of movement." This condition of circumstances contradicted the stereotypical understanding of "site and situation."

During the two World Wars, plant ecology emerged to impact geographical phenomena. According to Robert Park, the expansion in population and city region caused a shift in the biological processes of a city. The interaction between a city and its surroundings was shaped by urban ecology, which held control over the people and their environment. Park wrote The City in 1925, in which he described the normal pattern of city growth. Burgess finest exemplified the process of growth for a lot of American cities in general, and Chicago in particular. He made it evident that over time, city-land usage tended to exhibit a zonal pattern concentrically organized around the city center.

Around the downtown area, there is usually a transition region that is being invaded by business and light manufacturing, and a third area is populated by employees in industries who have left the area of degradation but want to live close to their job. Beyond this zone is the high-end residential sector, and beyond the city boundaries is the commuter zone - suburban communities or satellite cities.

Burgess' proposal, of course, launched specialized spatial patterns in which residential zones of varying ecology made their way forward, marked by consecutive regions with distinct land uses. Nonetheless, it is a model in the appropriate sense, although it has been critiqued for being archaic and confined to major Western industrial towns by the late twentieth century. True, geographical, economic, industrial, and transportation variables influence urban ecological and social patterns; nevertheless, these elements do not have an equal effect everywhere and at all times on the socioeconomic life of cities.

CONCLUSION

This evolved from the man-land geography tradition, which concentrated on the effect of nature on people and vice versa. Carl Sauer was prominent in urban geography in the 1920s because he encouraged geographers to investigate a city's demographic and economic elements concerning its physical location. The scope of urban geography has expanded over time and now primarily includes the areal association of activities within urban places; the economic base of cities; patterns of distribution of cities over the earth's surface; and distribution of various geographical phenomena within the city. Commerce, cultural and recreational activities, transportation and communication, manufacturing, and administration are the primary roles of metropolitan areas.

REFERENCES

[1] B. Miller and W. Nicholls, "Social movements in urban society: The city as a space of politicization," *Urban Geogr.*, 2013, doi: 10.1080/02723638.2013.786904.

[2] R. Kiaka, S. Chikulo, S. Slootheer, and P. Hebinck, "'The street is ours'. A comparative analysis of street trading, Covid-19 and new street geographies in Harare, Zimbabwe and Kisumu, Kenya," *Food Secur.*, 2021, doi: 10.1007/s12571-021-01162-y.

[3] M. Percoco, "Geography, institutions and urban development: Italian cities, 1300-1861," *Ann. Reg. Sci.*, 2013, doi: 10.1007/s00168-011-0482-0.

[4] N. R. Fyfe and J. T. Kenny, *The urban geography reader*. 2020. doi: 10.4324/9780203543047.

[5] M. van Meeteren and A. Poorthuis, "Christaller and 'big data': recalibrating central place theory via the geoweb," *Urban Geogr.*, 2018, doi: 10.1080/02723638.2017.1298017.

[6] V. I. W. Nalle, "Pendekatan Geografi Hukum Kritis Dalam Kajian Hukum Tata Ruang Indonesia: Sebuah Wacana Filsafat Hukum Dan Interdisiplin," *Justitia Pax*, 2021, doi: 10.24002/jep.v37i1.4175.

[7] C. Tuholske *et al.*, "Global urban population exposure to extreme heat," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U. S. A.*, 2021, doi: 10.1073/pnas.2024792118.

[8] J. Nijman and Y. D. Wei, "Urban inequalities in the 21st century economy," *Applied Geography*. 2020. doi: 10.1016/j.apgeog.2020.102188.

[9] L. R. Cirolia and G. Robbins, "Transfers, taxes and tariffs: fiscal instruments and urban statecraft in Cape Town, South Africa," *Area Dev. Policy*, 2021, doi: 10.1080/23792949.2021.1921599.

[10] A. Latham and D. P. McCormack, "Moving cities: Rethinking the materialities of urban geographies," *Prog. Hum. Geogr.*, 2004, doi: 10.1191/0309132504ph515oa.

CHAPTER 24

FEATURES OF THE INDIA GEOGRAPHY

Prof. Rita Arora, Director,
School of Education, Jaipur National University, Jaipur, India,
Email Id:ritaarora@jnujaipur.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

India is located on the Asian continent. The majority of India is a peninsula, which means it is bordered on three sides by sea. The Himalaya, the world's tallest mountain range, rises in the north. The Bay of Bengal borders the southeast, while the Arabian Sea borders the southwest.India's physical characteristics may be classified into six groups based on their geological aspects: Himalayan range, Great Plains, Indian Deser, coastal plains, Islands and Plateau of the Peninsular.

KEYWORDS:

Arabian Sea, Andaman Nicobar, Bay Bengal, Nicobar Islands, Western Ghats.

INTRODUCTION

India is located north of the equator between 8°4' north (the mainland) and 37°6' north latitude and 68°7' east to 97°25' east longitude. It is the seventh-largest country in the world, with a total area of 3,287,263 square kilometers (1,269,219 sq mi). It has a land border of 15,200 kilometers (9,445 miles) and a coastline of 7,516.6 kilometers (4,671 miles).India extends into and is limited by the Indian Ocean on the south, namely by the Arabian Sea on the west, the Lakshadweep Sea on the southwest, the Bay of Bengal on the east, and the Indian Ocean proper on the south. The Palk Strait and Gulf of Mannar divide India from Sri Lanka to the southeast, while the Maldives are 125 kilometers (78 miles) south of India's Lakshadweep Islands across the Eight Degree Channel.

The Andaman and Nicobar Islands of India, located around 1,200 kilometers (750 miles) southeast of the mainland, have marine boundaries with Myanmar, Thailand, and Indonesia. The southernmost point on the Indian mainland (8°4′38″N, 77°31′56″E) lies immediately south of Kanyakumari, but Indira Point on Great Nicobar Island is the southernmost point in India. Indira Col, Siachen Glacier, is the northernmost point under Indian administration. India's territorial waters extend into the sea to a distance of 12 nautical miles (13.8 mi; 22.2 km) from the coast baseline.India has the 18th largest Exclusive Economic Zone of 2,305,143 km2 (890,021 sq mi).India's northern boundaries are mostly defined by the Himalayan mountain range, which borders China, Bhutan, and Nepal. The Karakoram and Western Himalayan peaks, the Punjab Plains, the Thar Desert, and the Rann of Kutch salt marshes form its western boundary with Pakistan. The Chin Hills and Kachin Hills, thickly wooded hilly mountains in the extreme northeast, divide India from Burma. The Khasi Hills and Mizo Hills, as well as the watershed area of the Indo-Gangetic Plain, form the majority of its eastern boundary with Bangladesh[1]–[3].

The Ganges is the world's longest river that originates in India. The Ganges-Brahmaputra system covers the majority of northern, central, and eastern India, whereas the Deccan Plateau covers the majority of southern India. Kangchenjunga, located in the Indian state of Sikkim, is the highest point in India and the world's third highest mountain at 8,586 m (28,169 ft). The climate in India varies from tropical in the deep south to alpine and tundra in the Himalayan peaks. India is located on the Indian Plate, which is part of the Indo-Australian Plate.

Geological evolution

India is fully located on the Indian Plate, a significant tectonic plate that originated when the ancient continent Gondwanaland (old landmass consisting of the southern section of the supercontinent Pangea) broke apart. The Indo-Australian plate is separated into two parts: the Indian plate and the Australian plate (Figure.1). The Indian Plate began moving north about 90 million years ago, during the late Cretaceous Period, at about 15 cm/year (6 in/yr). About 50 to 55 million years ago, during the Eocene Epoch of the Cenozoic Era, the plate collided with Asia after covering a distance of 2,000 to 3,000 km (1,243 to 1,864 mi), having moved faster than any other known plate. German geologists determined in 2007 that the Indian Plate could move so quickly because it is only half as thick as the other plates that once made-up Gondwanaland. The collision with the Eurasian Plate along the modern border between India and Nepal formed the orogenic belt that gave rise to the Tibetan Plateau and the Himalayas. The Indian Plate is migrating northeast at a rate of 5 cm/yr (2 in/yr) as of 2009, whereas the Eurasian Plate is moving north at just 2 cm/yr (0.8 in/yr). As a result, India is dubbed the "fastest continent." This causes the Eurasian Plate to deform and the Indian Plate to compress at a rate of 4 cm/yr (1.6 in/yr).

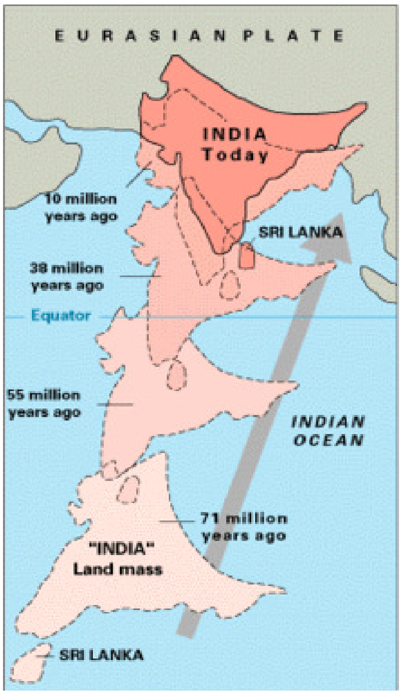

Figure 1: Diagram showing the overview of the Indian plate.

Geographical politics

India is split into 28 states (further broken into districts) and 8 union territories, one of which being the National Capital Territory (i.e., Delhi). The length of India's boundaries is 15,200 kilometres (9, kilometers (2,065 miles), dividing the Punjab region and running along the borders of the Thar Desert and the Rann of Kutch. This border runs along the Indian states and union territories of Ladakh, Jammu and Kashmir, Punjab, Rajasthan, and Gujarat. India claims the whole erstwhile princely state of Jammu and Kashmir, including parts presently managed by Pakistan and China, which India considers to be unlawfully occupied.400 mi).Its boundaries with Pakistan and Bangladesh were drawn using the Radcliffe Line, which was established following India's partition in 1947. Its western border with Pakistan stretches for 3,323

West Bengal, Assam, Meghalaya, Tripura, and Mizoram share the border with Bangladesh. Prior to 2015, there were 92 enclaves of Bangladesh on Indian soil and 106 enclaves of India on Bangladeshi soil. These enclaves were eventually exchanged in order to simplify the border. After the exchange, India lost approximately 40 km2 (10,000 acres) to Bangladesh.The Line of Actual Control (LAC) is India's effective boundary with the People's Republic of China. It runs for 4,057 kilometers across the Indian states and union territories of Ladakh, Himachal Pradesh, Uttarakhand, Sikkim, and Arunachal Pradesh. The border with Burma (Myanmar) runs for 1,643 kilometers (1,021 miles) along the eastern borders of India's northeastern provinces, viz. Arunachal Pradesh, Nagaland, Manipur, and Mizoram. Located amidst the Himalayan range, India's border with Bhutan runs 699 km (434 mi). Sikkim, West Bengal, Assam, and Arunachal Pradesh are the states that share the border with Bhutan. The border with Nepal runs 1,751 km (1,088 mi) along the foothills of the Himalayas in northern India.

Physiographic zones

Cratons are a kind of continental crust that consists of a top layer called the platform and an older layer called the basement. A shield is the portion of a craton where basement rock emerges from the earth; it is the oldest and more stable component of the craton, undisturbed by plate tectonics.The Aravalli Craton (also known as the Marwar-Mewar Craton or the Western Indian Craton) encompasses Rajasthan as well as western and southern Haryana. It is made up of the Mewar Craton in the east and the Marwar Craton in the west. It is bounded in the east by the Great Boundary Fault, in the west by the sandy Thar Desert, in the north by Indo-ganetic alluvium, and in the south by Son-Narmada-Tapti. The Aravalli-Delhi Orogen is mostly composed of quartzite, marble, pelite, greywacke, and extinct volcanoes. The Malani Igneous Suite is the biggest in India and the third largest in the world.

The Bundelkand Craton, which spans 26,00 km2 in Uttar Pradesh and Madhya Pradesh, is the foundation of the Malwa Plateau. It is bounded on the west by the Aravalli range, on the south by the Narmada River and the Satpura range, and on the north by the Indo-Gantetic alluvium. It is analogous to the Aravali Craton, which was formerly a single craton before being split in two by the formation of the Hindoli and Mahakoshal belts at the cratonic borders.Dharwar Craton (Karnataka Craton), 3.4 - 2.6 Ga, granite-greenstone terrain that spans Karnataka and sections of eastern and southern Maharashtra, and serves as the foundation of the Deccan Plateau's southern end. It was split into two tectonic blocks in 1886, the Eastern Dharwar Craton (EDC) and the Western Dharwar Craton (WDC)[4]–[6].

Singhbhum Craton, a 4,000-square-kilometer region that includes sections of Jharkhand, Odisha, northern Andhra Pradesh, northern Telangana, and eastern Maharashtra. It is bounded to the north by the Chhota Nagpur Plateau, to the southeast by the Eastern Ghats, to the southwest by the Bastar Craton, and to the east by the alluvium plain(Figure. 2).The Bastar Craton (Bastar-Bhandara Craton) is largely located in Chhattisgarh and serves as the foundation for the Chhota Nagpur Plateau. It is a 3.4-3.0 Ga ancient TTG gneisses of five kinds remain. It is separated into two parts: the Kotri-Dongagarh Orogen and the Rest of the Bastar Craton. It is bounded by three rifts: the Godavari rift in the southwest, the Narmada rift in the northwest, and the Mahanadi rift in the northeast.

Figure 2: Diagram showing the physical map of India with various divisions.

The northern limits of the Indian subcontinent are defined by an arc of mountains made up of the Himalayas, Hindu Kush, and Patkai ranges, which were produced by the continuing collision of the Indian and Eurasian plates. These ranges include some of the world's highest mountains, which function as a barrier to freezing arctic winds. They also help the monsoon winds, which impact the climate in India. Rivers flowing across the rich Indo-Gangetic plains originate in these mountains. These mountains separate two biogeographic realms: the temperate Palearctic realm, which encompasses most of Eurasia, and the tropical and subtropical Indomalayan realm, which includes South Asia, Southeast Asia, and Indonesia.

DISCUSSION

In India, the Himalayas stretch from the Indian-administered territory of Ladakh in the north to the state of Arunachal Pradesh in the east. Several Himalayan peaks in India exceed 7,000 meters (23,000 feet), notably Kanchenjunga (8,598 meters (28,209 feet)) on the Sikkim-Nepal border and Nanda Devi (7,816 meters (25,643 feet)) in Uttarakhand's Garhwal Himalayas. The snow line in Sikkim spans from 6,000 m (20,000 ft) to roughly 3,000 m (9,800 ft) in Ladakh. The Himalayas operate as a barrier against the cold katabatic winds that blow down from Central Asia. During the winter, northern India is maintained warm or just gently chilled; during the summer, the same phenomena renders India very hot.

Ladakh is traversed by the Karakoram Mountain range. The range is nearly 500 km (310 mi) long and is the world's most glaciated area outside of the polar regions. The Siachen Glacier, at 76 km (47 mi), is the world's second longest glacier outside of the polar regions.The Indus and

Shyok rivers define the southern limit of the Karakoram, separating the range from the northern end of the Himalayas.The Patkai, also known as Purvanchal, are located near India's eastern border with Myanmar. They were formed by the same tectonic forces that generated the Himalayas. The Patkai mountains are distinguished by conical summits, steep slopes, and deep valleys. The Patkai mountains are neither as high or as rough as the Himalayas. The Patkai includes three hill ranges: the Patkai-Bum, the Garo-Khasi-Jaintia, and the Lushai hills. Meghalaya is home to the Garo-Khasi range. Mawsynram, a hamlet in Cherrapunji located on the windward side of these hills, is the wettest spot in the world, receiving the most yearly rainfall.

The Aravali Range is India's oldest mountain range, stretching 800 kilometers (500 miles) from northeast to southwest over Rajasthan. The northern end of the range continues as solitary hills and stony ridges into Haryana, finishing near Delhi. The highest peak in this range is Guru Shikhar at Mount Abu, which rises to 1,722 m (5,650 ft) and is located near the border with Gujarat. The Aravali Range is an eroded stub of an ancient fold mountain system that emerged during the Precambrian event known as the Aravali-Delhi orogen. The range connects two ancient portions of the Indian craton, the Marwar segment to the northwest and the Bundelkhand segment to the southeast.

The Vindhya range, which lies north of the Satpura range and east of the Aravali range, runs across most of central India, extending 1,050 km (650 mi).[28] The average elevation of these hills ranges from 300 to 600 m (980 to 1,970 ft) and rarely exceeds 700 metres (2,300 ft). They are thought to have been formed by the wastes created by the weathering of the ancient Aravali mountains. The western end of the range is in eastern Gujarat, near the Madhya Pradesh border, and it goes east and north, practically touching the Ganges at Mirzapur.

Satpura Range originates in eastern Gujarat along the Arabian Sea coast and goes east through Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh, and Chhattisgarh. It is triangular in shape, with its apex at Ratnapuri and the two sides parallel to the Tapti and Narmada rivers. It runs parallel to the Vindhya Range, which lies to the north, and these two east-west ranges divide the Indo-Gangetic plain from the Deccan Plateau located north of River Narmada.

The Malwa Plateau is in Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, and Gujarat. The Malwa plateau has an average height of 500 meters with a typically northerly slope. The Chambal River and its tributaries drain the majority of the area, while the upper parts of the Mahi River drain the western portion.The Chhota Nagpur Plateau is in eastern India and encompasses most of Jharkhand as well as nearby sections of Odisha, Bihar, and Chhattisgarh. It covers around 65,000 km2 (25,000 sq mi) and is composed of three smaller plateaus: Ranchi, Hazaribagh, and Kodarma. With an average height of 700 m (2,300 ft), the Ranchi plateau is the biggest. The Chhota Nagpur dry deciduous woods comprise a large portion of the plateau. The Chota Nagpur plateau has large quantities of metal ores and coal. The Gulfs of Kutch and Khambat surround the Kathiawar peninsula in western Gujarat. The majority of the peninsula's natural vegetation is xeric scrub, which is part of the Northwestern thorn scrub forests ecoregion.

The Deccan Plateau, sometimes known as the Deccan Trapps, is a huge triangle plateau bordered to the north by the Vindhyas and flanked by the Eastern and Western Ghats. The Deccan has an area of 1.9 million km2 (750,000 miles2). It is largely flat, with altitudes varying between 300 and 600 meters (980 and 1,970 feet). The plateau's average elevation is 2,000 feet (610 meters) above sea level. The surface slopes from 3,000 feet (910 m) in the west to 1,500 feet (460 m) in the east. It gives origin to various peninsular rivers, including the Godavari, Krishna, Kaveri, and Mahanadi, which flow into the Bay of Bengal. Because it is located on the Western Ghats, this area is generally semi-arid.

The Western Ghats, also known as the Sahyadri mountains, lie along the western border of India's Deccan Plateau, separating it from a narrow coastal plain that runs along the Arabian Sea. The range stretches around 1,600 km (990 mi) from the Tapti River at the Gujarat-Maharashtra border south to the southern point of the Deccan peninsula, passing through Maharashtra, Goa, Karnataka, Kerala, and Tamil Nadu. The average height is roughly 1,000 m (3,300 ft). The highest peak in the Western Ghats is Anai Mudi in the Anaimalai Hills, 2,695 m (8,842 ft) in Kerala.

o The Eastern Ghats are a discontinuous range of mountains that have been eroded and quadrupled by southern India's four major rivers, the Godavari, Mahanadi, Krishna, and Kaveri. These mountains extend from West Bengal to Odisha, Andhra Pradesh, and Tamil Nadu, along the coast and parallel to the Bay of Bengal. Though not as tall as the Western Ghats, several of its summits rise beyond 1,000 m (3,300 ft). The Nilgiri Hills in Tamil Nadu are located at the confluence of the Eastern and Western Ghats. The highest mountain in the Eastern Ghats is Arma Konda (1,690 m (5,540 ft) in Andhra Pradesh.

The Indo-Gangetic plains, also known as the Great Plains, are vast alluvial plains dominated by three major rivers: the Indus, the Ganges, and the Brahmaputra. They flow parallel to the Himalayas from Jammu and Kashmir in the west to Assam in the east, draining the majority of northern and eastern India. The plains cover an area of 700,000 km2 (270,000 square miles). The Ganges, Indus, and Brahmaputra rivers, as well as its principal tributaries the Yamuna, Chambal, Gomti, Ghaghara, Kosi, Sutlej, Ravi, Beas, Chenab, and Tista as well as the rivers of the Ganges Delta, such as the Meghna run through this area[7]–[9].

The Bhabar belt is located near to the Himalayan foothills and is made up of rocks and pebbles transported down by streams. Because of the great porosity of this region, the streams flow underground. The Bhabar is relatively narrow, with widths ranging from 6 to 15 kilometers (3.7 to 9.3 miles).The Tarai belt is formed of younger alluvium and is located south of the neighboring Bhabar area. In this area, subsurface streams resurface. The area is quite humid and densely wooded. It also gets considerable rains all year and is home to a diversity of species.The Bangar belt is made up of earlier alluvium and creates the flood plains' alluvial terrace. It has a modest upland covered with laterite deposits in the Gangetic plains.The Khadar belt follows the Bangar belt into the lowlands. It is composed of recent alluvium deposited by rivers flowing down the plain.

The Indo-Gangetic belt is the world's largest continuous area of alluvium created by the deposition of sediment by multiple rivers. Because the plains are flat, canal irrigation is possible. The location also has a lot of ground water. The plains are one of the most intensively cultivated places on the planet. Rice and wheat are the principal crops farmed, and they are planted in rotation. Maize, sugarcane, and cotton are among key crops farmed in the area. The Indo-Gangetic plains are among the most densely inhabited places on the planet.

The Thar Desert (also known as the deserts) is the world's seventh largest desert, according to some, and the tenth according to others.It covers a significant portion of western India and covers an area of 200,000 to 238,700 km2 (77,200 to 92,200 sq mi). Rajasthan is home to the majority of the Thar Desert, accounting for 61% of its total area.Sand dunes make up around 10% of this region, with the other 90% made up of jagged rock formations, compacted salt-lake bottoms, and interdunal and fixed dune sections. Annual temperatures may vary from 0 degrees Celsius (32 degrees Fahrenheit) in the winter to more than 50 degrees Celsius (122 degrees Fahrenheit) in the summer. The majority of the rainfall in this area is due to the brief July-September southwest monsoon, which produces 100 to 500 mm (3.9 to 19.7 in) of precipitation. Water is sparse and exists at vast depths, ranging from 30 to 120 meters (98 to 394 feet) below ground level. Rainfall is sporadic, ranging from less than 120 mm (4.7 in) in the extreme west to 375 mm (14.8 in) eastward. Luni is the sole river in this area. The desert region's soils are mainly sandy to sandy-loam in nature. The consistency and depth vary depending on the topography. Lower-lying loams may contain a hard pan of clay, calcium carbonate, or gypsum.

The Kutch area in Gujarat and Koyna in Maharashtra are classed as Zone IV (high risk) earthquake zones in western India. The 2001 Gujarat earthquake killed more than 1,337 people and injured 166,836 while destroying or damaging nearly a million homes in the Kutch city of Bhuj.The 1993 Latur earthquake in Maharashtra killed 7,928 people and injured 30,000. Other areas have a moderate to low risk of an earthquake occurring.The Eastern Coastal Plain is a large area of land located between the Eastern Ghats and India's maritime limit. It runs from the southern state of Tamil Nadu to the eastern state of West Bengal. These plains are drained by the Mahanadi, Godavari, Kaveri, and Krishna rivers. The temperature in coastal areas often surpasses 30 °C (86 °F) and is accompanied by excessive humidity.

Rain falls in the area during both the northeast and southwest monsoons. The southwest monsoon divides into two branches, one in the Bay of Bengal and one in the Arabian Sea. In early June, the Bay of Bengal branch flows northward, reaching northeast India. The Arabian Sea branch goes north and dumps majority of its rain on the windward side of the Western Ghats. The annual rainfall in this area ranges from 1,000 to 3,000 mm (39 to 118 in). The plains range in breadth from 100 to 130 kilometers (62 to 81 miles). The plains are separated into six regions: the Mahanadi delta, the southern Andhra Pradesh plain, the Krishna-Godavari deltas, the Kanyakumari coast, the Coromandel Coast, and sandy coastline[10].

The Western Coastal Plain is a thin strip of land that stretches from 50 to 100 kilometers (31 to 62 miles) in breadth between the Western Ghats and the Arabian Sea. It runs from Gujarat in the north to Maharashtra, Goa, Karnataka, and Kerala in the south. The area is inundated by several rivers and backwaters. The rivers, which mostly originate in the Western Ghats, are fast-flowing, perennial, and discharge into estuaries. The Tapti, Narmada, Mandovi, and Zuari rivers all run into the sea. The vegetation is predominantly deciduous, although the Malabar Coast wet woods are a distinct ecoregion. The Western Coastal Plain is separated into two sections: Konkan and Malabar Coast. The union territories of Lakshadweep and Andaman and Nicobar Islands are India's two largest island formations.The Lakshadweep Islands, which have an area of 32 km2 (12 sq mi), are located 200 to 440 km (120 to 270 mi) off the coast of Kerala in the Arabian Sea. They are made up of twelve atolls, three reefs, and five submerged banks, as well as around 35 islands and islets.

The Andaman and Nicobar Islands are situated between 6° and 14° north latitude and 92° and 94° east longitude. They are made up of 572 islands that run along a north-south axis for roughly 910 kilometers in the Bay of Bengal near the Myanmar coast. They are 1,255 kilometers (780 miles) from Kolkata (Calcutta) and 193 kilometers (120 miles) from Cape Negrais in Burma.

The area is divided into two island groups: the Andaman Islands and the Nicobar Islands. The Andaman and Nicobar Islands are made up of 572 islands that run along a north-south axis for around 910 kilometers. The Andaman group includes 325 islands totaling 6,170 km2 (2,382 sq mi), whereas the Nicobar group has just 247 islands totaling 1,765 km2 (681 sq mi). Barren Island, India's only active volcano, is located here.

It erupted last in 2017. The Narcondum is a dormant volcano, while Baratang is a mud volcano. Indira Point, India's southernmost land point, is located in the Nicobar Islands at 6°45'10″N and 93°49'36″E, and is just 189 kilometers (117 miles) southeast of the Indonesian island of Sumatra. Mount Thullier, at 642 m (2,106 ft), is the highest peak.Other notable Indian islands include Diu, a historic Portuguese colony; Majuli, a Brahmaputra River Island; Elephanta in Bombay Harbour; and Sriharikota, a barrier island in Andhra Pradesh. Salsette Island is India's most populated island, and it is home to the metropolis of Mumbai (Bombay). The Marine National Park consists of 42 islands in the Gulf of Kutch.

India has around 14,500 km of navigable inland waterways. There are twelve major rivers, with a combined catchment area of 2,528,000 km2 (976,000 sq mi).The Himalayan River networks are snow-fed and offer a year-round supply of water. The other two river systems are monsoon-dependent and become rivulets during the dry season. The Indus, Jhelum, Chenab, Ravi, Beas, and Sutlej rivers flow westward into Punjab from the Himalayas.The Ganges-Brahmaputra-Meghana system has the largest catchment area of approximately 1,600,000 km2 (620,000 sq mi). The Ganges Basin alone has a catchment area of approximately 1,100,000 km2 (420,000 sq mi).The Ganges originates from the Gangotri Glacier in Uttarakhand.It flows southeast, draining into the Bay of Bengal. It enters India in the extreme east of Arunachal Pradesh and flows west into Assam. In Bangladesh, the Brahmaputra joins the Ganges and is known as the Jamuna River.

The Chambal, another Ganges tributary that flows into the Yamuna, rises in the Vindhya-Satpura watershed. The river runs to the east. The Narmada and Tapi rivers run west from this watershed and discharge into the Arabian Sea in Gujarat. The east-west river network accounts for 10% of total discharge. Heavy southwest monsoon rains lead the Brahmaputra and other rivers to overflow their banks, often drowning nearby communities. Despite the fact that they offer rice paddy farmers with a mostly reliable supply of natural irrigation and fertilization, such floods have killed thousands of people and have caused mass displacements in such places.

The Gulf of Cambay, the Gulf of Kutch, and the Gulf of Mannar are all major gulfs. The Palk Strait connects India and Sri Lanka; the Ten Degree Channel connects the Andamans to the Nicobar Islands; and the Eight Degree Channel connects the Laccadive and Amindivi Islands to the Minicoy Island to the south. Kanyakumari (previously known as Cape Comorin), the southernmost extremity of mainland India; Indira Point, the southernmost point in India (on Great Nicobar Island); Rama's Bridge, and Point Calimere are also significant capes. The Arabian Sea borders India to the west, while the Bay of Bengal and Indian Ocean border it to the east and south, respectively. The Laccadive Sea and the Andaman Sea are two smaller seas. India has four coral reefs: the Andaman and Nicobar Islands, the Gulf of Mannar, Lakshadweep, and the Gulf of Kutch. Important lakes include Sambhar Lake in Rajasthan, Vembanad Lake in Kerala, Kolleru Lake in Andhra Pradesh, Loktak Lake in Manipur, Dal Lake in Kashmir, Chilka Lake (lagoon lake) in Odisha, and Sasthamkotta Lake in Kerala.

The wetland ecology of India is widely scattered, ranging from the cold and dry Ladakh area of Jammu and Kashmir to the rainy and humid climate of peninsular India. The majority of the wetlands are connected to river networks, either directly or indirectly. The Indian government has designated 71 wetlands as sanctuaries or national parks. Mangrove forests may be found all along the Indian coastline in protected estuaries, streams, backwaters, salt marshes, and mudflats. The mangrove area is 4,461 km2 (1,722 sq mi), accounting for 7% of the world's total mangrove cover. The Andaman and Nicobar Islands, the Sundarbans delta, the Gulf of Kutch, and the deltas of the Mahanadi, Godavari, and Krishna rivers all have significant mangrove cover. Mangrove forests may also be found in parts of Maharashtra, Karnataka, and Kerala.

The Sundarbans delta is home to the world's biggest mangrove forest. It is located near the mouth of the Ganges and extends through Bangladesh and West Bengal. The Sundarbans are a UNESCO World Heritage Site, however they are known as the Sundarbans (Bangladesh) and the Sundarbans National Park (India). A complex network of tidal rivers, mudflats, and tiny islands of salt-tolerant mangrove trees intersects the Sundarbans. The region is notable for its unique biodiversity, which includes a wide range of bird species, spotted deer, crocodiles, and snakes. The Bengal tiger is its most renowned resident. There are currently 400 Bengal tigers and 30,000 spotted deer in the region, according to estimates.

The Rann of Kutch is a marshy area in northern Gujarat that borders Pakistan's Sindh province. It has a total size of 27,900 km2 (10,800 sq mi).It was once part of the Arabian Sea. Geologic factors such as earthquakes caused the area to be dammed, transforming it into a vast saltwater lagoon. This region progressively accumulated silt, transforming it into a seasonal salt marsh. During the monsoon season, the land transforms into a shallow marsh, often flooding to knee-depth. After the monsoons, the land becomes parched and dry. India's total renewable water resources are estimated to be 1,907.8 km3 per year.Its annual supply of usable and replenishable groundwater is 350 billion cubic metres. Only 35% of groundwater resources are used. About 44 million tonnes of cargo is moved annually through the country's major rivers and waterways. Agriculture is practiced on 56% of the land. Black soils retain moisture and are ideal for dry farming for producing cotton, linseed, and other crops. Tea and coffee farms utilise forest soils. The iron concentration in red soils is widely distributed.

The majority of India's estimated 5.4 billion barrels (860,000,000 m3) of oil reserves are located in the Mumbai High, upper Assam, Cambay, Krishna-Godavari, and Cauvery basins. India has approximately seventeen trillion cubic feet of natural gas in Andhra Pradesh, Gujarat, and Odisha. The Himalayas, Sohana, Cambay, the Narmada-Tapti delta, the Godavari delta, and the Andaman and Nicobar Islands (particularly the volcanic Barren Island) have 400 medium-to-high enthalpy thermal springs for generating geothermal energy in seven "provinces" in India.

India is the world's greatest producer of mica blocks and mica splitting. India is the world's second largest producer of barite and chromite. The Pleistocene system is mineral-rich. India is the world's third-largest coal producer and ranks fourth in iron ore production. It is the fifth-largest producer of bauxite, the second-largest producer of crude steel as of February 2018 replacing Japan, the seventh-largest producer of manganese ore, and the eighth-largest producer of aluminum.India has significant sources of titanium ore, diamonds, and limestone.

According to the Köppen climate classification, India has six primary climatic subtypes, ranging from dry desert in the west to alpine tundra and glaciers in the north, and wet tropical areas sustaining rainforests in the southwest and island territories. There are four seasons in the country: winter (January-February), summer (March-May), a monsoon (rainy) season (June-September), and a post-monsoon period (October-December). The Himalayas operate as a barrier against the cold katabatic winds that blow down from Central Asia. During the winter, northern India is maintained warm or just gently chilled; in the summer, the same phenomena renders India comparatively hot. Despite the fact that the Tropic of Cancer the border between the tropics and subtropics—runs through the center of India, the whole nation is considered tropical.

Summer in most regions of India lasts from March to June. During the day, temperatures may reach 40 °C (104 °F). The coastal parts are hotter than 30 degrees Celsius (86 degrees Fahrenheit), with considerable humidity. Temperatures in the Thar desert region may reach 45 °C (113 °F). The rain-bearing monsoon clouds are drawn to the Thar Desert's low-pressure system. The southwest monsoon divides into two arms, one in the Bay of Bengal and one in the Arabian Sea. In early June, the Bay of Bengal arm travels northward, reaching northeast India. The Arabian Sea arm travels north, depositing majority of its rain on the windward side of the Western Ghats. Peninsula India has pleasant to warm days and cold nights throughout the winter.

The temperature drops farther north. Temperatures in certain areas of the Indian plains may drop below freezing. During this season, fog blankets much of northern India. The hottest temperature ever recorded in India was 51 degrees Celsius (124 degrees Fahrenheit) at Phalodi, Rajasthan. The lowest temperature recorded was 60 °C (76 °F) at Dras, Jammu and Kashmir.The geological characteristics of India are categorised according to their creation era. The Precambrian formations of the Cudappah and Vindhyan systems are distributed over the eastern and southern states. The Paleozoic formations from the Cambrian, Ordovician, Silurian, and Devonian systems are found in the Western Himalaya region in Kashmir and Himachal Pradesh. The Mesozoic Deccan Traps formation is seen over most of the northern Deccan; it is thought to be the result of sub-aerial volcanic activity. The Trap soil is black in color and conducive to agriculture. The western Himalayas are home to the Carboniferous, Permian, and Triassic systems. In the western Himalayas and Rajasthan, the Jurassic system may be observed.

Tertiary impressions may be found in Manipur, Nagaland, Arunachal Pradesh, and across the Himalayan zone. The Cretaceous system may be found in the Vindhyas and parts of the Indo-Gangetic plains in central India. The Gondwana system can be found in the Narmada River basin in the Vindhyas and Satpuras. The western Himalayas and Assam have Eocene systems. Oligocene formations may be found in Kutch and Assam, whereas the Pleistocene system can be found across central India. Volcanoes are considered to have produced the Andaman and Nicobar Islands during this time period The Himalayas were formed by the convergence and distortion of the Indo-Australian and Eurasian Plates. Each year, their persistent convergence boosts the height of the Himalayas by one cm.

Soils in India are classified into eight types: alluvial, black, red, laterite, forest, arid and desert, saline and alkaline, and peaty and organic soils. Alluvial soil constitutes the largest soil group in India, accounting for 80% of total land surface.It is derived from the deposition of silt carried by rivers and is found in the Great Northern plains from Punjab to Assam valley.Black soils are well developed in the Deccan lava region of Maharashtra, Gujarat, and Madhya Pradesh. These contain a high percentage of clay and are moisture retentive.

Red soils are found in Tamil Nadu, Karnataka plateau, Andhra plateau, Chota Nagpur plateau, and the Aravallis. These are nitrogen, phosphorus, and humus deficient. Heavy rainfall causes the top layer of soil to soak off all soluble substances. These are often found in the Western and Eastern Ghats, as well as hilly parts of northeastern states that get a lot of rain. Forest soils are found on mountain and hill slopes in the Himalayas, Western Ghats, and Eastern Ghats. These are often made up of enormous volumes of decaying leaves and other organic debris known as humus.

CONCLUSION

Eventually, between 75,000 and 35,000 years ago, numerous bands arrived in India. Although this interpretation is controversial, archaeological evidence suggests the appearance of anatomically modern humans in the Indian subcontinent 78,000-74,000 years ago. India is split into five primary geographic regions: the northern mountainous area, the north Indian plain, the peninsular plateau, the islands, and the coastal plain.This category includes two climatic subtypes in India: tropical monsoon climate and tropical wet and dry climate.The tropical wet climate, also known as the tropical monsoon climate, spans a strip of southwestern lowlands bordered by the Malabar Coast, the Western Ghats, and southern Assam.

REFERENCES

[1] A. Sahasranaman and L. M. A. Bettencourt, "Life between the city and the village: Scaling analysis of service access in Indian urban slums," *World Dev.*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.worlddev.2021.105435.

[2] A. K. Dubey *et al.*, "LogMPIE, pan-India profiling of the human gut microbiome using 16S rRNA sequencing," *Sci. Data*, 2018, doi: 10.1038/sdata.2018.232.

[3] N. P, A. Kamath, and A. M. Paul, "Everyday Place Making Through Social Capital Among Street Vendors at Manek Chowk, Gujarat, India," *Sp. Cult.*, 2021, doi: 10.1177/1206331219830079.

[4] A. Mezzadri, "A Value Theory of Inclusion: Informal Labour, the Homeworker, and the Social Reproduction of Value," *Antipode*, 2021, doi: 10.1111/anti.12701.

[5] K. C. NG, "The Physiography Of India: An Overview," *Quantum J. Soc. Sci. Humanit.*, 2021, doi: 10.55197/qjssh.v2i5.95.

[6] M. Fromhold-Eisebith and G. Eisebith, "What can Smart City policies in emerging economies actually achieve? Conceptual considerations and empirical insights from India," *World Dev.*, 2019, doi: 10.1016/j.worlddev.2019.104614.

[7] D. A. Ghertner, "India's urban revolution: Geographies of displacement beyond gentrification," *Environ. Plan. A*, 2014, doi: 10.1068/a46288.

[8] D. Joseph, "A study on financial inclusion and financial literacy," *Int. J. Bus. Adm. Res. Rev.*, 2014.

[9] N. R. Sharma, S. Sharma, and D. Sharma, "Towards a mobile app technology-enabled sustainable agriculture in India," *Plant Arch.*, 2020.

[10] A. Nandakumar, P. C. Gupta, P. Gangadharan, R. N. Visweswara, and D. M. Parkin, "Geographic pathology revisited: Development of an atlas of cancer in India," *Int. J. Cancer*, 2005, doi: 10.1002/ijc.21109.

CHAPTER 25

MINERALS RESOURCES AND ENERGY DEVELOPMENT IN INDIA

Prof. Grishma Shukla, Professor,
School of Education, Jaipur National University, Jaipur, India,
Email Id:grishmashukla@jnujaipur.ac.in

ABSTRACT:

Mineral resources, as the name implies, are resources derived from minerals. Energy resources, on the other hand, include all types of energy, renewable and non-renewable. India's primary mineral resources are Uranium, Coal, Gold, Ore of iron, Lead, zinc, and magnesium.Mineral resources are significant because they provide raw construction materials (clay, steel from iron), electronics (copper, gold, rare earth elements), and tools. We get energy from fossil fuels and uranium, and phosphates help agriculture.Iron ore deposits are quite rich in India. Hematite and magnetite are the two most common forms of ore discovered in our nation.In terms of mineral wealth, Jharkhand is India's wealthiest state.

KEYWORDS:

Energy Sources, Fossil Fuels, Nuclear Power, Natural Gas, Renewable Energy.

INTRODUCTION

The projected maximal potential for energy production given all available resources on Earth is referred to as world energy resources. They are classified as fossil fuel, nuclear fuel, and renewable resources. These are verified energy reserves; true reserves might be four or more times bigger. These figures are very speculative. Estimating the remaining fossil fuel reserves on the world requires a thorough study of the Earth's crust. We can drill wells in up to 3 km of water using present drilling equipment to verify the specific composition of the geology; nevertheless, half of the ocean is deeper than 3 km, leaving nearly a third of the world beyond the reach of scientific investigation.

For technological, economic, and political reasons, such as the accessibility of fossil deposits, the levels of sulfur and other pollutants in oil and coal, transportation costs, and societal instability in producing regions, there is uncertainty not only in the total amount of reserves, but also in how much of these can be recovered profitably. In general, the deposits that are simplest to access are the first to be exploited. Coal is the most common and widely used fossil fuel. This was the fuel that sparked the industrial revolution and has since grown in popularity; China, which already has many of the world's most polluted cities, was building about two coal-fired power plants every week in 2007.Coal's large reserves would make it a popular candidate to meet the global community's energy demand while avoiding global warming concerns and other pollutants[1]–[3].

Natural gas is a widely accessible fossil fuel, with an estimated 850 000 km3 in exploitable reserves and at least that much more employing improved shale gas extraction technologies. As shale fracturing procedures were created, technological advancements and widespread exploration resulted in a significant increase in recoverable natural gas reserves. Natural gas might provide most the world's energy requirements for the next 100 to 250 years at current consumption rates, depending on demand growth over time.

There may be 57 zettajoule (ZJ) of oil reserves on Earth (though estimates range from a low of 8 ZJ consisting of currently proven and recoverable reserves, to a maximum of 110 ZJ, consisting of available but not necessarily recoverable reserves, and including optimistic estimates for unconventional sources such as oil sands and oil shale). The current agreement among the 18 acknowledged supply profile projections is that peak extraction will occur in 2020 at a rate of 93 million barrels per day (mbd). The current rate of oil consumption is 0.18 ZJ per year (31.1 billion barrels) or 85 mbd.

There is growing concern that peak oil production will be reached in the near future, resulting in severe oil price increases. A 2005 French Economics, Industry, and Finance Ministry report suggested a worst-case scenario that could occur as early as 2013. According to the ASPO, the peak year will be in 2010. According to several other beliefs, it already happened in 2005. According to US EIA data, world crude oil production (including lease condensates) fell from a peak of 73.720 mbd in 2005 to 73.437 in 2006, 72.981 in 2007, and 73.697 in 2008. According to peak oil theory, increasing production will lead to a faster decline in the future, while decreasing production will lead to a slower decrease, as the bell-shaped curve will be spread out over more years. With the stated objective of raising oil prices to $75/barrel, which had plummeted from a high of $147 to a low of $40, OPEC announced a 2.2 mbd reduction in output starting January 1, 2009.

Political worries about supply security, environmental concerns about global warming, and concerns about sustainability are predicted to shift the world's energy use away from fossil fuels. Peak oil theory states that about half of the available petroleum resources have been produced and forecasts a drop in output. A government transitioning away from fossil fuels would almost certainly put economic pressure on the economy via carbon emissions and green levies. As a consequence of the Kyoto Protocol, several nations are taking action, and further measures in this direction are being suggested. For example, the European Commission has recommended that the European Union's energy policy establish a binding aim of increasing the proportion of renewable energy in the EU's total mix from less than 7% in 2007 to 20% by 2020.

The antithesis of sustainability is a disregard for limits, also known as the Easter Island Effect, which is the concept of being unable to develop sustainability, resulting in the depletion of natural resources. Some estimate that current oil reserves could be completely depleted by 2050, assuming current consumption rates. The remaining uranium resources are estimated by the International Atomic Energy Agency to be 2500 ZJ. This presupposes the utilization of breeder reactors, which may produce more fissile material than they consume. The IPCC calculated that the present proven commercially recoverable uranium resources for once-through fuel cycle reactors are only 2 ZJ. The amount of uranium that can be recovered is expected to be 17 ZJ for once-through reactors and 1000 ZJ for reprocessing and fast breeder reactors.

Nuclear power's ability to contribute to addressing the energy demands of the twenty-first century is not limited by resources or technology. However, around the close of the past century, political and environmental worries about nuclear safety and radioactive waste began to restrict the expansion of this energy source, owing in part to a series of nuclear mishaps. Concerns regarding nuclear proliferation (particularly with regard to plutonium generated by breeder reactors) imply that the international community actively discourages nations such as Iran and Syria from developing nuclear power.Although uranium is the principal nuclear fuel in the world at the beginning of the twenty-first century, other elements such as thorium and hydrogen have been studied since the mid-twentieth century.

Thorium deposits far outnumber uranium reserves, and hydrogen is plentiful. Many people believe it is also simpler to get than uranium. While uranium mines are underground and hence very risky for workers, thorium is extracted from open pits and is thought to be nearly three times as prevalent in the Earth's crust as uranium. Thorium has been burnt at several facilities across the globe since the 1960s.Alternatives for hydrogen fusion energy generation have been researched since the 1950s. Because no materials can sustain the temperatures necessary to ignite the fuel, it must be contained through non-material ways. The primary options are magnetic and inertial confinement (Cadarache, Inertial confinement fusion), both of which are active research subjects in the early years of the twenty-first century.

The mechanism that powers the sun and other stars is known as fusion power. It produces a substantial amount of heat by fusing the nuclei of hydrogen or helium isotopes obtained from saltwater. In theory, heat may be used to create electricity. Because of the temperatures and pressures required to maintain fusion, it is a challenging process to regulate. Although both the United States and the European Union, as well as other countries, are supporting fusion research (such as investing in the ITER facility), inadequate research has stalled progress in fusion research for the past 20 years, according to one report.

Renewable resources are accessible year after year, unlike nonrenewable resources, which are reduced with time. A coal mine and a forest are two basic examples. While the forest may be drained, if it is maintained properly, it provides a constant source of energy, as opposed to the coal mine, which once emptied is no longer available. The majority of the world's accessible energy resources are renewable. Renewable resources make for more than 93 percent of overall energy reserves in the United States. To compare renewable and non-renewable resources, annual renewable resources were multiplied by thirty years. In other words, if all possible renewable resources were created, if all non-renewable resources were evenly consumed in 30 years, they would only account for 7% of available resources each year.

Biomass and biofuel production are expanding sectors as interest in sustainable fuel sources grows. Using waste products eliminates the need to choose between food and fuel, and burning methane gas minimizes greenhouse gas emissions because, although it emits carbon dioxide, carbon dioxide is 23 times less of a greenhouse gas than methane. Biofuels are a long-term partial substitute for fossil fuels, but their net effect on greenhouse gas emissions is determined by the agricultural techniques employed to cultivate the plants used as feedstock for the fuels. While it is widely assumed that biofuels can be carbon neutral, evidence suggests that biofuels produced using current farming methods are significant net carbon emitters. Geothermal and biomass are the only two renewable energy sources that require careful management to avoid local depletion.

Hydropower

Renewable energy sources are even more abundant than conventional fossil fuels, and in principle, they can easily meet the world's energy demands. The surface of the planet receives 89 PW of solar power. While it is not feasible to catch all, or even most, of this energy, less than

0.02% would be sufficient to fulfill present energy demands. The high cost of manufacturing solar cells, as well as dependency on weather patterns to create power, are barriers to future solar generating. Furthermore, existing solar generating does not generate power at night, which is a particular issue in nations with high northern and southern latitudes; energy demand is greatest in winter, while solar energy availability is lowest. This might be solved by purchasing electricity from nations closer to the equator during the winter months, and it could also be handled by technical advancements such as the development of affordable energy storage. Solar power is the fastest increasing source of energy globally, with an annual average growth rate of 35% over the last several years. China, Europe, India, Japan, and the United States are the fastest expanding solar energy investors. At the end of 2014, solar power has a 1% proportion of global energy demand.

Tidal power generated 0.3 GW of energy at the end of 2005. There are varying tides due to the tidal pressures caused by the Moon (68%) and the Sun (32%), as well as the Earth's relative rotation with regard to the Moon and Sun. These tidal oscillations cause dissipation at a rate of roughly 3.7 TW on average. Another physical constraint is the energy available in ocean tidal variations, which is roughly 0.6 EJ (exajoule). Keep in mind that this is just a small proportion of Earth's overall rotational energy. This energy would be squandered if not forced(with a rate of dissipation of 3.7 TW) across four semi-diurnal tide intervals. As a result, dissipation is important in ocean tidal dynamics. As a result, in order to avoid disrupting the tidal dynamics too much, the available tidal energy is limited to roughly 0.8 TW (20% of the dissipation rate).Waves are created from wind, which is derived from solar energy, and each conversion results in a loss in available energy of around two orders of magnitude. The total force of waves washing against Earth's coasts is 3 TW[4]–[6].

Estimates of accessible wind energy vary from 300 TW to 870 TW. Using the lower estimate, just 5% of available wind energy would meet current global energy demands. Most of this wind energy is accessible over open water. Because there are fewer impediments in the seas, wind tends to blow more fiercely across open water.Energy development is the realm of activities concerned with acquiring energy sources from natural resources. These operations include the generation of renewable, nuclear, and fossil-fuel-derived energy, as well as the recovery and reuse of otherwise wasted energy. Energy conservation and efficiency strategies minimize the need for energy development while also benefiting society via environmental improvements.

For industrial, commercial, and household uses, societies utilize energy for transportation, manufacturing, lighting, heating and air conditioning, and communication. Energy resources are categorized as either primary resources, which may be utilized in practically their original form, or secondary resources, which must be changed into a more readily useable form. Human usage severely depletes non-renewable resources, but renewable resources are created by continuing processes that may support endless human exploitation. The energy business employs thousands of people. The petroleum industry, natural gas industry, electrical power industry, and nuclear industry are all part of the conventional industry. The renewable energy sector, which includes the alternative and sustainable creation, distribution, and sale of alternative fuels, is one of the new energy industries.

Energy resources are categorized as either primary resources, which may be used directly without conversion, or secondary resources, which need significant conversion from a main source. Wind power, solar power, wood fuel, fossil fuels such as coal, oil, and natural gas, and uranium are examples of primary energy resources. Secondary resources include things like electricity, hydrogen, and other synthetic fuels. Another significant categorization is based on the amount of time it takes to replenish an energy supply. "Renewable" resources are those that regain their capability in response to human requirements. Examples include hydroelectric power and wind power, which may be used when natural occurrences that constitute the major source of energy are continuing and are not exhausted by human needs. Non-renewable resources are those that have been considerably depleted by human use and will not recover appreciably in human lifetimes. Coal is an example of a nonrenewable energy source since it does not produce naturally at a pace suitable for human usage.

Fossil fuel (primary non-renewable fossil) sources burn coal or hydrocarbon fuels, which are the byproducts of plant and animal breakdown. Coal, petroleum, and natural gas are the three basic forms of fossil fuels. Another fossil fuel, liquefied petroleum gas (LPG), is mostly obtained from natural gas extraction. Heat generated by the combustion of fossil fuels is utilized directly for space heating and process heating, or it is transformed to mechanical energy for automobiles, industrial operations, or the creation of electrical power. These fossil fuels contribute to the carbon cycle by releasing solar energy trapped in the fuel.

In the 18th and 19th centuries, the usage of fossil fuels laid the groundwork for the Industrial Revolution. The majority of the world's current principal energy sources are fossil fuels. In 2005, fossil fuels provided 81% of the world's energy needs. The technology and infrastructure for using fossil fuels already exist. When compared to lesser energy density sources such as batteries, liquid fuels generated from petroleum provide substantially more useful energy per unit of weight or volume. For decentralized energy consumption, fossil fuels are presently cost-effective.

Fossil fuels are nonrenewable resources that will ultimately fall in output and run out. While the processes that produced fossil fuels are still happening, fuels are being used at a pace significantly faster than the natural rate of replenishment. As civilization utilizes the most accessible fuel reserves, extracting fuels becomes more expensive. Extraction of fossil fuels causes environmental destruction, such as strip mining and mountaintop removal for coal.

Fuel efficiency is a kind of thermal efficiency that refers to the effectiveness of a process that transfers the chemical potential energy in a carrier fuel into kinetic energy or work. The fuel economy of a vehicle is its energy efficiency, expressed as a ratio of distance traveled per unit of gasoline spent. For freight, weight-specific efficiency (efficiency per unit weight) and passenger-specific efficiency (vehicle efficiency) per passenger might be expressed. The inefficient combustion of fossil fuels in automobiles, buildings, and power plants adds to urban heat islands.

The burning of fossil fuels causes pollutants to be released into the atmosphere. The majority of fossil fuels are carbon molecules. Carbon dioxide, nitrogen oxides, soot, and other fine particles are all produced during burning. Other emissions from fossil fuel power plants include sulphur dioxide, carbon monoxide (CO), hydrocarbons, volatile organic compounds (VOC), mercury, arsenic, lead, cadmium, and other heavy metals, including traces of uranium.

The utilization of nuclear fission to create usable heat and electricity is known as nuclear power. Uranium fission generates practically all commercially important nuclear electricity. Radioisotope thermoelectric generators are a minor component of energy production, used mostly in specialist applications such as deep space missions. Nuclear power facilities, excluding naval reactors, produced around 5.7% of global energy and 13% of global electricity in 2012. The International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA) reported in 2013 that there are 437 operational nuclear power reactors in 31 countries, though not every reactor is producing electricity. Additionally, there are approximately 140 naval vessels using nuclear propulsion in operation, powered by approximately 180 reactors. As of 2013, achieving a net energy gain from sustained nuclear fusion reactions, excluding natural fusion power sources such as the Sun, remains an ongoing area of international research. Commercial fusion power generation appears improbable until 2050, more than 60 years after the initial efforts. Nuclear power is the subject of an ongoing debate. Proponents, such as the World Nuclear Association, the IAEA, and Environmentalists for Nuclear Energy, argue that nuclear power is a safe, sustainable energy source that reduces carbon emissions. Opponents argue that nuclear power poses numerous risks to people and the environment.

There have been some nuclear submarine accidents, as well as the Chernobyl disaster, the Fukushima Daiichi nuclear disaster, and the Three Mile Island accident. In terms of lives lost per unit of energy generated, analysis has determined that nuclear power has caused fewer fatalities than the other major sources of energy generation. Due to air pollution and energy accident effects, energy production from coal, petroleum, natural gas, and hydropower has resulted in a higher number of fatalities per unit of energy generated. However, the economic costs of nuclear power accidents are high, and meltdowns can take decades to clean up. The human costs of evacuating impacted communities and losing livelihoods are enormous as well[7]–[9].

When nuclear's latent disease mortality, such as cancer, are compared to other energy sources' instantaneous deaths per unit of energy produced (GWeyr). In its "severe accident" categorization, which would be an accident with more than 5 fatalities, this research excludes fossil fuel-related cancer and other indirect mortality caused by the usage of fossil fuel use. According to the International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA), there were 68 civil nuclear power reactors under construction in 15 countries as of 2012, approximately 28 of which were in the People's Republic of China (PRC), with the most recent nuclear power reactor, as of May 2013, to be connected to the electrical grid, occurring on February 17, 2013, in the PRC's Hongyanhe Nuclear Power Plant. Officials in the United States' nuclear sector predict five new reactors to enter operation by 2020, all at existing plants.In 2013, four elderly, uncompetitive reactors were permanently shuttered.

Recent uranium extraction studies have used polymer ropes coated with a material that specifically collects uranium from saltwater. This method might make the large amount of uranium dissolved in saltwater usable for energy generation. Because continuous geologic processes transport uranium to the sea in numbers similar to the quantity removed by this procedure, sea-borne uranium becomes a sustainable resource in certain ways.

Nuclear power is a low-carbon power generation method of producing electricity, with a review of the literature on its total life cycle emission intensity revealing that it is comparable to renewable sources in terms of greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions per unit of energy generated. Since the 1970s, nuclear fuel has displaced approximately 64 gigatonnes of carbon dioxide equivalent ($GtCO_2$-eq) greenhouse gases that would have otherwise resulted from the combustion of oil, coal, and natural gas.

The 2011 Fukushima Daiichi nuclear disaster in Japan prompted a rethinking of nuclear safety and nuclear energy policy in many countries. Germany decided to close all of its reactors by

2021, and Italy has banned nuclear power. Following Fukushima, the International Energy Agency cut its estimate of additional nuclear generating capacity to be built by 2035 in half. Following the 2011 Fukushima Daiichi nuclear disaster - the second worst nuclear incident, which displaced 50,000 households after radioactive material leaked into the air, soil, and sea and with subsequent radiation checks leading to bans on some shipments of vegetables and fish, Ipsos published a global public support survey for energy sources, and nuclear fission was found to be the least popular.

The economics of new nuclear power facilities is a contentious issue since there are differing viewpoints on the matter, and multibillion-dollar investments are at stake. Nuclear power facilities have high capital costs for construction but low direct fuel costs. In recent years, there has been a slowing of electricity demand growth, and financing has become more difficult, affecting large projects such as nuclear reactors, which have very large upfront costs and long project cycles that carry a wide range of risks. In Eastern Europe, a number of long-established projects, notably Belene in Bulgaria and the additional reactors at Cernavoda in Romania, are struggling to find finance, and some potential backers have pulled out.

The economics of nuclear power must consider who bears the risks of future uncertainty. To far, all operational nuclear power plants have been built by state-owned or regulated utility monopolies, with customers bearing much of the risks associated with building costs, operating performance, fuel price, and other variables. Many countries have now liberalized the electricity market to the point where these risks, as well as the risk of cheaper competitors emerging before capital costs are recovered, are borne by plant suppliers and operators rather than consumers, resulting in a significantly different assessment of the economics of new nuclear power plants[10].

Due to increased requirements for on-site spent fuel management and elevated design basis threats, costs for currently operating and new nuclear power plants are likely to rise. While first-of-their-kind designs, such as the EPRs under construction, are behind schedule and over-budget, of the seven South Korean APR-1400s currently under construction worldwide, two are in S.Korea at the Hanul Nuclear Power Plant and four are at the largest nuclear station construction site. The first reactor, Barakah-1, is 85% complete and on pace for grid connection in 2017. Two of the four EPRs now under construction (in Finland and France) are badly behind time and significantly over budget.

Renewable energy is defined broadly as energy derived from resources that are replenished naturally on a human timescale, such as sunlight, wind, rain, tides, waves, and geothermal heat.Renewable energy replaces conventional fuels in four distinct areas: electricity generation, hot water/space heating, motor fuels, and rural (off-grid) energy services.

Currently, renewable resources account for around 16% of worldwide final energy consumption[contradictory], with conventional biomass accounting for 10% of total energy, mostly used for heating, and hydroelectricity accounting for 3.4%. New renewables (small hydro, modern biomass, wind, solar, geothermal, and biofuels) account for another 3% and are fast expanding. At the national level, at least 30 countries worldwide now have renewable energy providing more than 20% of energy supply. National renewable energy markets are expected to develop rapidly over the next decade and beyond. Wind power, for example, is increasing at a 30% annual pace, with a global installed capacity of 282,482 megawatts (MW) by the end of 2012.

In contrast to traditional energy sources, which are concentrated in a small number of nations, renewable energy resources occur throughout large geographical regions. Rapid deployment of renewable energy and energy efficiency is bringing in major energy security, climate change mitigation, and economic advantages. While many renewable energy projects are large-scale, renewable technologies are also well-suited to rural and remote areas, as well as developing countries, where energy is often critical in human development. According to United Nations Secretary-General Ban Ki-moon, renewable energy has the potential to lift the poorest nations to new levels of prosperity.

Hydropower is generated in 150 nations, with Asia-Pacific producing 32% of worldwide hydropower in 2010. China is the world's greatest hydroelectricity generator, with 721 terawatt-hours produced in 2010, accounting for around 17 percent of domestic energy demand. There are presently three hydroelectricity facilities greater than 10 GW: the Three Gorges Dam in China, the Itaipu Dam across the border between Brazil and Paraguay, and the Guri Dam in Venezuela.

Because hydroelectricity is very inexpensive, it is a viable source of renewable energy. The typical cost of power generated by a hydro plant greater than 10 megawatts is 3 to 5 US cents per kilowatt-hour. Hydro is also a flexible source of electricity since facilities can be ramped up and down fast to meet changing energy needs. Damming, on the other hand, disrupts the flow of rivers and can harm local ecosystems, and building large dams and reservoirs frequently involves displacing people and wildlife.Once built, a hydroelectric complex produces no direct waste and emits significantly less carbon dioxide than fossil fuel powered energy plants.

Wind power uses the power of the wind to push wind turbine blades. These turbines generate power by causing magnets to rotate. Wind turbines are often constructed in clusters on wind farms. Offshore and onshore wind farms exist. Global wind power capacity increased swiftly to 336 GW in June 2014, and wind energy output reached roughly 4% of total global electricity demand in June 2014, and it is still expanding rapidly.

DISCUSSION

Solar energy is the radiant light and heat from the Sun that is captured and distributed using a variety of technologies such as solar power to generate electricity, solar thermal energy (including solar water heating), and solar architecture. To capture the energy, active solar approaches such as photovoltaic systems, concentrated solar power, and solar water heating are used. Orienting a structure to the Sun, choosing materials with favorable thermal mass or light-dispersing qualities, and creating rooms that naturally circulate air are all examples of passive solar approaches. The International Energy Agency stated in 2011 that "the development of affordable, inexhaustible, and clean solar energy technologies will have huge long-term benefits, increasing countries' energy security through reliance on an indigenous, inexhaustible, and mostly import-independent resource, enhancing sustainability, reducing pollution, lowering the costs of mitigating global warming these benefits are global."

A biofuel is a fuel derived from geologically recent carbon fixation. These fuels are generated by living creatures. Plants and microalgae are examples of carbon fixation. These fuels are created by the conversion of biomass (biomass refers to recently lived creatures, most often plants or plant-derived materials). This biomass may be turned into useful energy-containing compounds using one of three methods: thermal conversion, chemical conversion, or biological conversion. This biomass conversion may produce fuel in the form of a solid, liquid, or gas. This fresh biomass can be converted into biofuels. Because of growing oil costs and the need for energy security, biofuels have grown in favor.

Bioethanol is a kind of alcohol created by fermentation, primarily from carbohydrates found in sugar or starch crops such as maize or sugarcane. Cellulosic biomass is being explored as a feedstock for ethanol production from non-food sources such as trees and grasses. In its pure form, ethanol may be used as a car fuel, but it is most often employed as a gasoline addition to raise octane and reduce vehicle emissions. Bioethanol is extensively utilized in the United States and Brazil. The current plant design does not allow for the fermentation of the lignin part of plant raw materials into fuel components.

Biodiesel is created by combining vegetable oils with animal fats. In its pure form, biodiesel may be used as a vehicle fuel, but it is most often employed as a diesel additive to lower levels of particles, carbon monoxide, and hydrocarbons in diesel-powered cars. Biodiesel is the most prevalent biofuel in Europe and is made from oils or fats by transesterification. However, research towards the production of renewable fuels by decarboxylation is now underway.

In 2010, global biofuel production reached 105 billion liters (28 billion gallons US), up 17% from 2009, and biofuels provided 2.7% of the world's fuels for road transport, primarily ethanol and biodiesel. Global ethanol fuel production reached 86 billion liters (23 billion gallons US) in 2010, with the United States and Brazil accounting for 90% of global production. The European Union is the world's largest biodiesel producer, accounting for 53% of total biodiesel production in 2010. As of 2011, mandates for blending biofuels exist at the national level in 31 countries and in 29 states or provinces. The International Energy Agency has set a goal for biofuels to meet more than a quarter of global transportation fuel demand by 2050 in order to reduce reliance on petroleum and coal.

Thermal energy created and stored in the Earth is referred to as geothermal energy. Thermal energy is the energy that influences matter's temperature. The geothermal energy of the Earth's crust is derived from the planet's original formation (20%) and from radioactive decay of minerals (80%). The geothermal gradient, defined as the temperature difference between the planet's core and its surface, drives a continuous conduction of thermal energy in the form of heat from the core to the surface. The term geothermal is derived from the Greek words for earth and o (thermos) for hot.

Internal heat of the Earth is thermal energy created by radioactive decay and continuous heat loss from the Earth's creation. The tremendous temperature and pressure in Earth's center lead some rock to melt and solid mantle to act plastically, resulting in parts of mantle convecting upward because it is lighter than the surrounding rock. In the crust, rock and water are heated to temperatures of up to 370 °C (700 °F). Geothermal energy, derived from hot springs, has been utilized for bathing since Paleolithic times and for space heating since ancient Roman times, although it is now better recognized for power production. In 2012, 11,400 megawatts (MW) of geothermal power were operational in 24 countries worldwide. In 2010, an additional 28 gigatonnes of direct geothermal heating capacity was added for district heating, space heating, spas, industrial operations, desalination, and agricultural uses.

Geothermal energy is inexpensive, dependable, sustainable, and ecologically friendly, but it has generally been confined to places near tectonic plate borders. Recent technology developments have substantially increased the range and amount of exploitable resources, particularly for uses like as home heating, allowing for broad utilization. Geothermal wells emit greenhouse gases trapped deep beneath the ground, although their emissions per energy unit are substantially lower than those of fossil fuels. As a consequence, if extensively implemented in lieu of fossil fuels, geothermal power has the potential to help moderate global warming.

Although the Earth's geothermal resources are potentially more than sufficient to meet humanity's energy demands, only a tiny portion of them can be successfully mined. Drilling and exploration for deep resources is very costly. Geothermal power forecasts are based on assumptions about technology, energy costs, subsidies, and interest rates. Customers are ready to pay a little extra for a sustainable energy source like geothermal, according to pilot projects like EWEB's consumer opt-in Green Power Program. However, because of government-funded research and business experience, the cost of producing geothermal energy has fallen by 25% over the last two decades. In 2001, geothermal energy cost between two and ten US cents per kWh.

The energy carried by ocean waves, tides, salinity, and temperature changes is referred to as marine energy or marine power (also known as ocean energy, ocean power, or marine and hydrokinetic energy). Water flow in the world's seas generates a massive amount of kinetic energy, or energy in motion. This energy may be used to create electricity, which can then be used to power homes, transportation, and industry.

The word marine energy refers to both surface wave power and tidal power, which is derived from the kinetic energy of enormous quantities of flowing water. Offshore wind power is not a kind of marine energy since wind power is obtained from the wind, even if the wind turbines are located on the ocean. The seas contain enormous amounts of energy and are located near many, if not the most densely populated areas. Ocean energy has the potential to provide a significant quantity of new renewable energy globally.

Energy efficiency minimizes the amount of energy necessary to supply goods and services. Insulating a dwelling, for example, permits a structure to consume less heating and cooling energy to maintain a suitable temperature. When compared to incandescent light bulbs, installing fluorescent lamps or natural skylights minimizes the amount of energy needed for lighting. Compact fluorescent lights use two-thirds less energy and may last six to ten times longer than incandescent bulbs. Adopting a more efficient technology or manufacturing process is the most common way to improve energy efficiency.

Reduced energy consumption may save customers money if the energy savings exceed the cost of an energy-efficient equipment. Reducing energy use lowers emissions. According to the International Energy Agency, improved energy efficiency in buildings, industrial processes, and transportation could reduce global energy demand in 2050 to around 8% of what it is today while serving a more than twice as large economy and a population of about 2 billion more people.

Energy efficiency and renewable energy are said to be the twin pillars of sustainable energy policy.Energy efficiency is also seen as having a national security benefit in many countries because it can be used to reduce the level of energy imports from foreign countries and may slow the rate at which domestic energy resources are depleted. It has been determined that "wind, geothermal, hydro, and nuclear have the lowest hazard rates among energy sources in production for OECD countries."

While new sources of energy are rarely discovered or made possible by new technology, distribution technology is constantly evolving. For example, the use of fuel cells in automobiles is an anticipated delivery technology. They all depend on the energy sources indicated in the preceding section in some manner. Coal, petroleum, and their byproducts are transported by boat, train, or road. Pipelines may also transport petroleum and natural gas, as well as coal through a Slurry pipeline. Aircraft may also transport fuels such as gasoline and LPG. To work properly, natural gas pipelines must maintain a particular minimum pressure. The increased shipping and storage expenses of ethanol are sometimes prohibitive.

Electricity grids are networks that carry and distribute electricity from a power source to an end customer, even if the two are hundreds of kilometers apart. Electrical generating facilities, such as a nuclear reactor or a coal-burning power plant, are examples of sources.

To ensure a consistent supply of power, a combination of substations and transmission lines is utilized. Grids may experience temporary blackouts and brownouts, which are often caused by weather damage. Solar wind may interfere with communications during some severe space weather occurrences. Grids have a carrying capacity or load that cannot be safely surpassed. Failures are unavoidable when power demand exceed what is available. Power is then rationed to avoid difficulties.

Industrialized nations such as Canada, the United States, and Australia have among the highest per capita energy consumption rates in the world, which is made feasible by a vast electrical distribution network. Although the US grid is one of the most modern, infrastructure upkeep is becoming an issue.

Current Energy gives a real-time perspective of power supply and demand in California, Texas, and the United States' Northeast. African nations with small-scale electrical systems have similarly low yearly per capita power consumption. Queensland, Australia, is served by one of the most powerful power systems in the world.

Wireless power transfer is the technique of transmitting electrical energy without the need of interconnecting cables from a power source to an electrical load that does not have a built-in power source. The current technology is restricted to short distances and a low power output. Orbiting solar power collectors would need wireless power delivery to Earth. The suggested approach entails producing a broad beam of microwave-frequency radio waves and directing them to a collecting antenna point on Earth. To assure the safety and profitability of such a program, formidable technological difficulties exist.

Thermal storage technologies allow heat or cold to be stored for periods ranging from hours or overnight to intersessional, and can involve the storage of either sensible energy (i.e., by changing the temperature of a medium) or latent energy (i.e., by changing the phase of a medium, such as water and slush or ice). Short-term thermal storage may be employed in district heating or electrical distribution systems to reduce peak demand. Natural energy (e.g., collected via solar-thermal collectors or dry cooling towers used to collect winter cold), waste energy (e.g., from HVAC equipment, industrial processes, or power plants), and surplus energy (e.g., seasonally from hydropower projects or intermittently from wind farms) are examples of renewable or alternative energy sources that can be enabled.

The Drake Landing Solar Community in Alberta, Canada, is one example. Borehole thermal energy storage enables the community to get 97% of its year-round heat from solar collectors on garage roofs, with the majority of the heat collected in summer. Types of sensible energy storage include insulated tanks, borehole clusters in substrates ranging from gravel to bedrock, deep aquifers, or shallow lined pits that are insulated on top. Some forms of storage may store heat or cold between seasons (especially if extremely big), and some storage applications necessitate the use of a heat pump. Latent heat is often stored in ice tanks or phase-change materials (PCMs). Because of its diversified geological structure, India is blessed with a great diversity of minerals and energy resources. The vast alluvial plain area in north India is devoid of economically useful minerals. Mineral resources provide the nation with the foundation it needs for industrial growth. A mineral is a naturally occurring organic or inorganic material having distinct chemical and physical characteristics. Metallic minerals are metal-producing minerals. It comprises iron ore, copper, and gold metal production (Figure.1). Metallic minerals are further classified as follows Ferrous: All minerals with iron content, such as iron ore, are ferrous. Non-ferrous: Those that do not include iron, such as copper, bauxite, and so on.

They are either biological in origin, such as fossil fuels, also known as mineral fuels, or inorganic in origin, such as coal and petroleum, which are generated from buried animal and plant life. Other non-metallic minerals are inorganic in nature, such as mica, limestone, and graphite. These are spread unevenly over space. There is an inverse connection between mineral quality and quantity, which means that excellent grade minerals are less abundant than poor quality minerals. All minerals are depleted over time since they require a long time to form geologically and cannot be supplied instantly when needed.

Mineral Resource Distribution in India

The majority of metallic minerals in India are found in the ancient crystalline rocks of the Peninsular Plateau area. Over 97% of coal deposits are found in the Damodar, Sone, Mahanadi, and Godavari basins. Petroleum deposits are found in the sedimentary basins of Assam, Gujarat, and Mumbai High, which are situated offshore in the Arabian Sea. The Krishna-Godavari and Kaveri basins have both discovered new deposits. The majority of the important mineral deposits are located to the east of a line connecting Mangalore and Kanpur. Mineral concentration in three broad belts in India. The Plateau Region in the North-East. Chotanagpur (Jharkhand), the Odisha Plateau, West Bengal, and sections of Chhattisgarh are also covered. It contains diversity of minerals viz. Iron ore, coal, manganese, bauxite, and mica are all minerals. This belt stretches through Karnataka, Goa, and the uplands of Tamil Nadu and Kerala.

. This belt is abundant in ferrous metals and bauxite, as well as high-quality iron ore, manganese, and limestone Except for Neyveli lignite, this area is devoid of coal reserves. This belt lacks the diversity of mineral deposits seen in the north-eastern area. Kerala contains monazite and thorium resources, as well as bauxite clay, while Goa has iron ore deposits. This belt runs across Rajasthan and parts of Gujarat, and the minerals are connected with the Dharwar system of rocks. Copper and zinc are the most abundant minerals. Rajasthan is abundant in construction stones such as sandstone, granite, and marble. Deposits of gypsum and fuller's earth are also plentiful. Dolomite and limestone are raw materials used in the cement industry. Gujarat is well-known for its petroleum reserves. Gujarat and Rajasthan are both rich in salt.

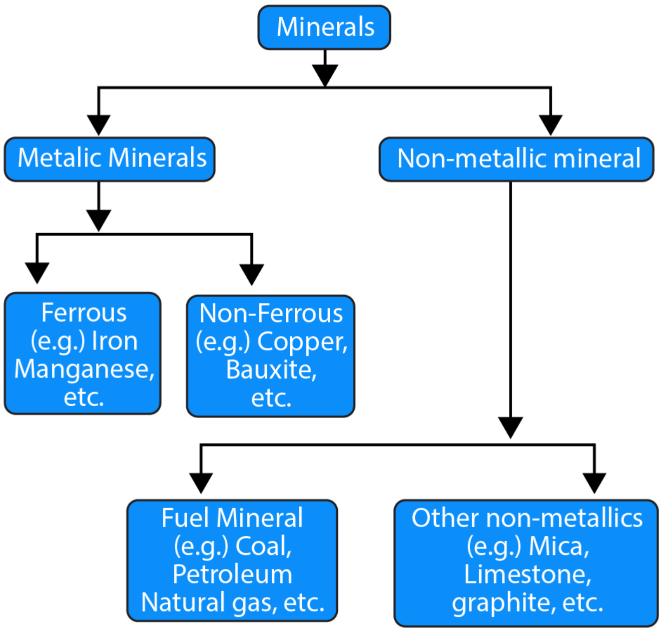

Figure 1: Diagram showing the types of minerals (Prepladder.com)

Another mineral belt known to include copper, lead, zinc, cobalt, and tungsten is the Himalayan belt. They may be found on both the eastern and western sides. Mineral oil resources may be found in the Assam valley. Oil deposits are also discovered off-shore along the Mumbai coast (Mumbai High). Iron ore, manganese, chromite, and other ferrous minerals offer a solid foundation for the growth of metallurgical enterprises. The two primary forms of ore found in India are haematite and magnetite, both of which are in high demand on the worldwide market owing to their high quality. The iron ore mines are located near coal deposits in India's North-Eastern plateau area, which gives them an edge. Odisha, Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh, Karnataka, Goa, Telangana, Andhra Pradesh, and Tamil Nadu account for about 95% of total iron ore deposits. Iron ore may be found in the hill ranges of Sundergarh, Mayurbhanj, and Jhar. Gurumahisani, Sulaipet, Badampahar (Mayurbhaj), Kiruburu (Kendujhar), and Bonai (Sundergarh) are all important mines. It is home to some of the oldest iron ore mines, as well as the majority of the iron and steel mills. Noamundi and Gua are important mines in the districts of Poorbi and Pashchimi Singhbhum, respectively. This belt continues to Durg, Dantewara, and Bailadila. The main iron ore mines in India are Dalli and Rajhara near Durg. Iron ore resources may be found in the Ballari district's Sandur-Hospet region, the Chikkamagaluru district's Baba Budan hills and Kudremukh area, and sections of the Shivamogga, Chitradurg, and Tumakuru districts.

Iron mining districts include Chandrapur, Bhandara, and Ratnagiri. Telangana's Karimnagar and Warangal districts are iron mining regions. Iron Mining Districts: Kurnool, Cuddapah, and Anantapur. Salem and Nilgiris districts are in the iron mining region. Manganese is an essential raw ingredient in the smelting of iron ore and is also utilized in the production of ferro alloys. Manganese deposits may be found in practically all geological formations, however they are most often connected with the Dharwar system. Major mines are concentrated in India's central iron ore region, notably in Bonai, Kendujhar, Sundergarh, Gangpur, Koraput, Kalahandi, and Bolangir. Dharwar, Ballari, Belagavi, North Canara, Chikkmagaluru, Shivamogga, Chitradurg, and Tumakuru have mines. They are mined in the districts of Nagpur, Bhandara, and Ratnagiri. These mines have the drawback of being positioned distant from steel factories.

Madhya Pradesh's manganese belt include the districts of Balaghat, Chhindwara, Nimar-Mandla, and Jhabua. Other small manganese producers are Telangana, Goa, and Jharkhand. Except for bauxite, India is deficient in nonferrous metallic minerals. Bauxite is a resource that is used in the production of aluminum. It is found mostly in tertiary deposits and is linked with laterite rocks that are widespread on the plateaus and hill ranges of peninsular India, as well as along India's coast.

Odisha is the world's biggest producer of bauxite. The major producers are Kalahandi and Sambalpur. Bolangir and Koraput are the other two locations that have seen an increase in output. Lohardaga patlands in Jharkhand contain abundant minerals. Other important producers are Gujarat, Chhattisgarh, Madhya Pradesh (M.P.), and Maharashtra. Gujarat's main deposits are at Bhavanagar and Jamnagar. The Amarkantak plateau in Chhattisgarh contains bauxite resources. M.P.'s Katni-Jabalpur region and Balaghat. Bauxite deposits are abundant. Maharashtra's Kolaba, Thane, Ratnagiri, Satara, Pune, and Kolhapur are notable producers. Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, and Goa are small bauxite producers. Copper is used in the electrical sector to make cables, electric motors, transformers, and generators.

Copper deposits may be found in Jharkhand's Singhbhum district, Madhya Pradesh's Balaghat district, and Rajasthan's Jhunjhunu and Alwar districts.Agnigundala in Guntur District (Andhra Pradesh), Chitradurg and Hasan Districts (Karnataka), and South Arcot District (Tamil Nadu) are minor copper producers. Mica is one of India's most significant non-metallic minerals. Limestone, dolomite, and phosphate are the additional minerals exploited for local usage.

High grade mica is mined in Jharkhand in a belt that stretches for around 150 kilometers in length and 22 kilometers in breadth on the lower Hazaribagh plateau. Nellore district in Andhra Pradesh provides the highest grade mica. The mica belt in Rajasthan stretches for around 320 kilometers from Jaipur to Bhilwara and surrounds Udaipur. Mica deposits may also be found in Karanataka's Mysuru and Hasan districts, Tamil Nadu's Coimbatore, Tiruchirapalli, Madurai, and Kanniyakumari, Kerala's Alleppey, Maharashtra's Ratnagiri, and West Bengal's Purulia and Bankura.

Mineral fuels are necessary for the production of electricity, which is needed by agriculture, industry, transportation, and other sectors of the economy. The traditional energy sources include mineral fuels such as coal, petroleum, and natural gas (known as fossil fuels), as well as nuclear energy materials. Coal is an important material that is primarily utilized in the creation of thermal power and the smelting of iron ore. Coal is found mostly in rock sequences of two geological periods, namely Gondwana and tertiary deposits. Approximately 80% of India's coal reserves are bituminous and of non-coking quality. Damodar Valley is home to India's most major Gondwana coal deposits. They are located in the Jharkhand-Bengal coal belt, with major coal fields at Raniganj, Jharia, Bokaro, Giridih, and Karanpura. Raniganj is the biggest coal field, followed by Jharia. Godavari, Mahanadi, and Sone rivers are also related to coal. Singrauli in Madhya Pradesh (part of the Singrauli coal field is in Uttar Pradesh), Korba in Chhattisgarh, Talcher and Rampur in Odisha, Chanda-Wardha, Kamptee and Bander in Maharashtra, Singareni in Telangana, and Pandur in Andhra Pradesh are important coal mining centers.

CONCLUSION

The many minerals present on the earth's surface contribute to a variety of activities that entail developmental features such as the construction of houses, buildings, transportation services, automobiles, and other business-related operations.Iron ore (usually of excellent quality) and ferroalloys especially manganese and chromite are particularly rich among mineral resources and are extensively spread over peninsular India. Copper, bauxite (the primary source of aluminum), zinc, lead, gold, and silver are among the other metallic minerals that may be mined. Economic minerals are employed in a variety of applications including building, industry, agriculture, and energy production. Energy minerals are used to generate power, fuel for transportation, heating for homes and workplaces, and in the production of polymers.Many non-metallic minerals are found in Rajasthan. Mineral richness is lacking in Jammu and Kashmir, Punjab, Haryana, Uttar Pradesh, Himachal Pradesh, Tripura, Nagaland, and West Bengal. Rajasthan, Tamil Nadu, Karnataka, Kerala, and Meghalaya are also mineral-rich states.

REFERENCES

[1] D. Madan, P. Mallesham, S. Sagadevan, and C. Veeramani, "Renewable energy scenario in Telangana," *Int. J. Ambient Energy*, 2020, doi: 10.1080/01430750.2018.1501737.

[2] R. Wu, Y. Geng, and W. Liu, "Trends of natural resource footprints in the BRIC (Brazil, Russia, India and China) countries," *J. Clean. Prod.*, 2017, doi: 10.1016/j.jclepro.2016.03.130.

[3] S. Bansal and B. N. Agrawal, "Conventional and renewable energy scenario of India: present and future," *Invertis J. Renew. Energy*, 2017, doi: 10.5958/2454-7611.2017.00004.2.

[4] K. Devi and M. Phil, "Challenges to Sustainable Development in Context to India," *Ilkogr. Online -Elementary Educ.*, 2021.

[5] S. Nayak, "Towards Blue Economy: A Perspective," *Indian J. Geosci.*, 2020.

[6] A. Chel and G. Kaushik, "Renewable energy for sustainable agriculture," *Agronomy for Sustainable Development*. 2011. doi: 10.1051/agro/2010029.

[7] M. W. Alam, X. Xiangmin, R. Ahamed, M. M. H. Mozumder, and P. Schneider, "Ocean governance in Bangladesh: Necessities to implement structure, policy guidelines, and actions for ocean and coastal management," *Reg. Stud. Mar. Sci.*, 2021, doi: 10.1016/j.rsma.2021.101822.

[8] S. Gmünder, R. Singh, S. Pfister, A. Adheloya, and R. Zah, "Environmental impacts of Jatropha curcas biodiesel in India," *J. Biomed. Biotechnol.*, 2012, doi: 10.1155/2012/623070.

[9] S. Journal and N. Approach, "Review Article," *Changes*, 2009.

[10] R. M. M. P. and S. Yadav, "Constitution, Supreme Court and Regulation of Coal Sector in India," *SSRN Electron. J.*, 2020, doi: 10.2139/ssrn.3287023.